

REVISED

Mastering Use of English

B2 Exams Edition

GEORGIA GRAHAM
WITH ANNA JOHNSON

 Burlington Books

REVISED

Mastering Use of English B2 Exams Edition

by Georgia Graham
with Anna Johnson

Burlington Books
P.O. Box 54411
3721 Limassol
Cyprus
Burlington Books is an imprint of Danos Books Ltd.

Acknowledgements

The publisher gratefully acknowledges the following for permission to use photographic material:

Associated Press: page 75; Getty Images / Photodisc: pages 112, 124, 132, 136, 148, 159, 172; Image 100: page 76;
IMS Communications Ltd.: page 82; Nova Dev. Co. and Licensors: page 147; The Peace Corps: page 63; Reuters: pages 108
and 120; Royal National Lifeboat Institution: page 23; www.bigfoto.com: page 98.

The publisher has made every effort to contact the owners of copyright material which appears in this book, and will be pleased to hear from any copyright holder who could not be located.

All rights reserved by the publisher. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means – electronic, mechanical, photocopying or otherwise – without permission in writing from the publisher.

ISBN 978-9963-47-891-0

Copyright © 2008 Burlington Books

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2
17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 09

INTRODUCTION

REVISED **Mastering Use of English B2 Exams Edition** is designed to consolidate and extend students' knowledge of grammar and vocabulary for the B2-level examinations. The book has been revised to reflect the changes in the FCE exam.

This book is comprised of 28 alternating grammar and vocabulary units, 14 reviews, a glossary and four appendices. There is a variety of exercise types leading up to exam practice for the FCE, ECCE and State (KPG) exams. To help students, words and structures of special importance are highlighted, indicating that these words should be learned carefully. Useful examination strategy tips are given throughout the book.

Each unit opens with a diagnostic test page which is intended to help students assess their strengths and weaknesses.

In the grammar units, the diagnostic test is followed by two pages of detailed grammar rules and a *Common Mistakes* feature. The units follow a comprehensive grammar syllabus, covering the structures tested in the B2-level examinations.

The vocabulary units are all based on topics which commonly appear on exams at this level. The units practise topic vocabulary, easily confused words, useful collocations and phrasal verbs.

After every two units, there is a review with exercises in B2-level examination format.

The following can be found at the back of the book:

- glossary of the vocabulary units containing English and Greek definitions with example sentences to show typical usage. The definitions provided in the glossary reflect the context in which the words and phrases are used in the book.
- four appendices:
 - a list of irregular verbs
 - a comparison of British and American English
 - common prefixes and suffixes
 - a list of prepositions and prepositional phrases

We hope students and teachers enjoy using this book and wish students good luck in their examinations.

CONTENTS

PAGE

UNIT 1	Grammar	Present Tenses (active and passive): Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect Simple, Present Perfect Continuous	7
UNIT 2	Vocabulary	Language and Communication	13
REVIEW 1			17
UNIT 3	Grammar	Past Tenses (active and passive): Past Simple, Past Continuous, Past Perfect Simple, Past Perfect Continuous; <i>used to / would</i>	19
UNIT 4	Vocabulary	People and Relationships	25
REVIEW 2			29
UNIT 5	Grammar	Future Tenses (active and passive): Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future Perfect Simple, Future Perfect Continuous; <i>be going to</i> , Present Simple, Present Continuous	31
UNIT 6	Vocabulary	Living Conditions, Services and Places	37
REVIEW 3			41
UNIT 7	Grammar	Prepositions of Time, Prepositions of Place	43
UNIT 8	Vocabulary	Work and Employment	49
REVIEW 4			53
UNIT 9	Grammar	Modals, Semi-modals, Modal Perfects (active and passive)	55
UNIT 10	Vocabulary	Education	61
REVIEW 5			65
UNIT 11	Grammar	The Passive: Review of all Tenses; The Causative	67
UNIT 12	Vocabulary	Sports and Other Free-time Activities	73
REVIEW 6			77
UNIT 13	Grammar	Relative Clauses	79
UNIT 14	Vocabulary	Entertainment and the Arts	85
REVIEW 7			89
UNIT 15	Grammar	Conditionals, Temporals, <i>wish</i>	91
UNIT 16	Vocabulary	Travel, Tourism and Transport	97
REVIEW 8			101

			PAGE
UNIT 17	Grammar	Countable and Uncountable Nouns; Articles; Quantifiers	103
UNIT 18	Vocabulary	Shopping, Consumer Goods and Money	109
REVIEW 9			113
UNIT 19	Grammar	Demonstratives; <i>it is / there is</i> ; Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives; Determiners: <i>each / every, all / whole, both, either / neither</i>	115
UNIT 20	Vocabulary	Food and Drink	121
REVIEW 10			125
UNIT 21	Grammar	Adjectives and Adverbs: Comparatives and Superlatives; <i>so / such</i>	127
UNIT 22	Vocabulary	The Media and the News	133
REVIEW 11			137
UNIT 23	Grammar	Indirect Speech	139
UNIT 24	Vocabulary	The Weather and the Environment	145
REVIEW 12			149
UNIT 25	Grammar	Gerunds, Infinitives and Bare Infinitives; <i>be / get used to, would rather, it's time</i>	151
UNIT 26	Vocabulary	Science and Technology	157
REVIEW 13			161
UNIT 27	Grammar	Connectors, Inversion	163
UNIT 28	Vocabulary	Health and Fitness	169
REVIEW 14			173
GLOSSARY			176
APPENDICES			
		Irregular Verbs	206
		British and American English	208
		Prefixes and Suffixes	209
		Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases	210

1

Present Tenses (active and passive): Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect Simple, Present Perfect Continuous



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A Water is boiling at 100°C.

B Water boils at 100°C.

- 1 A I am always meeting my friends after school.
B I always meet my friends after school.
- 2 A I have been studying English for five years.
B I am studying English for five years.
- 3 A Are you thinking of buying a new car?
B Do you think of buying a new car?
- 4 A John hasn't come home already.
B John hasn't come home yet.
- 5 A The house is painting at the moment.
B The house is being painted at the moment.
- 6 A I believe that he is working abroad.
B I am believing that he is working abroad.
- 7 A It's the first time I've seen her since she got married.
B It's the first time I see her since she got married.
- 8 A Dad's exhausted. He is working hard in the garden all day.
B Dad's exhausted. He has been working hard in the garden all day.
- 9 A He can't speak to you just now – he has a shower.
B He can't speak to you just now – he's having a shower.
- 10 A I have not seen them since they bought their new house.
B I have not seen them since they have bought their new house.
- 11 A Have you been waiting here long?
B Are you waiting here long?
- 12 A My sister has always been borrowing my clothes without asking.
B My sister is always borrowing my clothes without asking.
- 13 A Does this watch belong to Irene?
B Is this watch belonging to Irene?
- 14 A Do you want to speak to him now?
B You want to speak to him now?
- 15 A This is the first time I've gone to London.
B This is the first time I've been to London.
- 16 A I know my best friend since 1995.
B I have known my best friend since 1995.
- 17 A My brother and I are going to the cinema next Friday night.
B My brother and I will go to the cinema next Friday night.
- 18 A They have been owning a house by the sea for several years.
B They have owned a house by the sea for several years.
- 19 A This summer we have gone to Paris.
B This summer we are going to Paris.
- 20 A So far today, I have written three letters.
B So far today, I have been writing three letters.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Present Simple, Present Continuous

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
PRESENT SIMPLE		
Active bare infinitive + s / es in 3rd person singular I work. He works. Do you work? Does she work? We don't work. He doesn't work.	a. a habitual action or a fact b. a general truth c. with stative verbs (listed below) d. future (timetables / schedules) e. narratives, sports commentaries, jokes	<i>I go to school every morning.</i> <i>The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.</i> <i>I don't like strawberries.</i> <i>School ends on 14th June this year.</i> <i>My plane leaves at 8.00 a.m.</i> <i>A boy walks into class and says to the teacher ...</i> <i>He kicks the ball ... it's a goal!</i>
Passive am / is / are + past participle	to stress the action rather than the agent <i>Here / There</i>	<i>The letters are delivered every week.</i> <i>eg. Here comes the bride</i> <i>-!- There he is</i>
PRESENT CONTINUOUS		
Active am / is / are + verb+ing We are working. He is working. Are you working? Is she working? I'm not working. It isn't working.	a. an action in progress at the time of speaking b. an incomplete action still in progress, usually temporary c. an arrangement or plan for the near future d. action which happens very often, can be used to criticise or complain (with <i>always, forever, constantly</i>)	<i>Right now, he is writing a novel.</i> <i>I'm living with my sister at the moment.</i> <i>She is going on holiday next week.</i> <i>Tom is always dropping things.</i>
Passive am / is / are being + past participle	to stress the action rather than the agent	<i>Lunch is being served now.</i>

TIME EXPRESSIONS

Present Simple: *always, often, usually, occasionally, sometimes, rarely, hardly ever, scarcely, never, every week, twice a year*

Present Continuous: *now, right now, at the moment, today, tonight*

With a future meaning: *this week, next week, tomorrow, soon, on Monday, next Saturday*

STATIVE VERBS

1 **Stative verbs refer to a state rather than an action and are usually not used in the continuous form. These verbs express:**

senses: *feel, hear, notice, see, smell, sound, taste*

mental activities: *appear, believe, consider, depend, doubt, expect, feel, forget, guess, hope, imagine, know, mean, mind, prefer, realise, recognise, remember, seem, suppose, think, understand*

possession: *belong to, have, own, owe, possess*

emotions: *adore, desire, dislike, fear, forgive, hate, like, love, need, want, wish*

amounts: *cost, equal, measure, weigh*

2 **Some of these verbs have more than one meaning and can be used in the continuous form when the meaning changes from a state to an activity in progress.**

We have a small dog. (possess)

This soup tastes delicious. (fact)

I'm having lunch. (doing that activity)

I'm tasting the soup to see if it's ready. (doing that activity)

I think he's a terrible dancer. (my opinion)

Now I see what you mean. (understand)

I'm thinking of going out tonight. (considering)

She's seeing her doctor this afternoon. (meeting)

Present Perfect Simple, Present Perfect Continuous

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
<p>PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE</p> <p>Active has / have + past participle I have worked. She has worked. Have you worked? Has he worked? I haven't worked. She hasn't worked.</p> <p>Passive have / has been + past participle</p>	<p>a. an action that took place at an unstated time in the past, but is still relevant in the present</p> <p>b. an action that began in the past and continues up to the present (usually with <i>for</i> and <i>since</i>)</p> <p>c. for unfinished time periods</p> <p>d. for an action that happened several times or repeatedly in the past</p> <p>e. with <i>This / It is the first / second that ...</i> and superlatives</p> <p>to stress the action rather than the agent</p>	<p><i>We have seen that film.</i> <i>She has already brought the food.</i></p> <p><i>They have worked here since 1997.</i> <i>He has owned a car for two years.</i></p> <p><i>I haven't eaten anything all day.</i> <i>I have heard that joke several times.</i></p> <p><i>It's one of the best films (that) I've ever seen.</i></p> <p><i>The house has been sold.</i></p>
<p>PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS</p> <p>Active have / has been + verb+ing I have been working. He has been working. Have you been working? Has he been working? I haven't been working. She hasn't been working.</p> <p>Passive No passive form</p>	<p>a. an action that began in the past and continues into the present with an emphasis on the duration of that action (usually with <i>for</i> and <i>since</i>)</p> <p>b. an action that has just finished and is still relevant to the present</p>	<p><i>They have been doing their homework for the last three hours.</i> <i>We have been cleaning the house all morning.</i></p> <p><i>Her hair is wet because she has been walking in the rain.</i></p>

TIME EXPRESSIONS

Present Perfect Simple: *just, yet, already, ever, never, lately, recently, so far, always, for, since, how long*

Present Perfect Continuous: *for, since, all day, how long*

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



1. Every weekend, we are visiting our grandparents.

.....

2. I am studying English for five years.

.....

3. I have three years to see my cousin.

.....

4. Does your mother works full-time?

.....

5. He stays with friends at the moment.

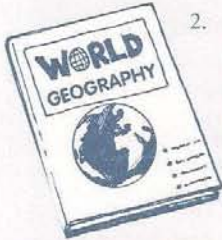
.....



Grammar Practice

A. Complete the following paragraphs with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. (1) (you see) the new film at the local cinema yet? Everyone says that it's the funniest film that (2) (make) in a long time. Peter and I (3) (want) to see the film. You (4) (not see) Peter for a long time, have you? Well, he (5) (stay) with his aunt this week, but he is going back on Thursday. We (6) (think) of seeing the film on Wednesday evening. It (7) (start) at 8.30, so we (8) (meet) outside the cinema at 8.15. Perhaps you'd like to come with us?



2. Did you know that the continents of the earth (1) (move) for billions of years? This (2) (mean) that the shape of the seas and the continents (3) (change) all the time and will continue to change in the future. Scientists still (4) (not understand) how this happens, but recent research (5) (give) them a great deal of useful information.

3. The police (1) (just report) a serious accident in the city centre. So far, 10 people (2) (take) to hospital. Some (3) (treat) and others (4) (already release). The police (5) (not discover) the cause of the accident yet, but they (6) (hope) to get more information shortly.



B. Complete the following sentences with the correct time expression below. Use each time expression once only.

already • ever • forever • just • seldom • so far
twice a week • always • for • never • since • yet

- We've seen that film so we don't want to see it again.
- Julie goes to the health club – on Mondays and Thursdays.
- I've heard such nonsense! It's an absolutely crazy idea!
- Don't wake the baby! She's gone to sleep.
- Have you spoken to a famous person?
- They've been interested in music and often attend concerts.
- It's very annoying! Jane is forgetting where she's put things.
- Susan's parents go out in the evenings because they finish work very late.
- today, Mrs Smith's secretary has typed three letters for her.
- I've only been taking karate classes a few weeks but I'm already quite good.
- Hurry up! I can't believe you haven't done this exercise !
- Have you seen Tom his party last week?

C. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the most suitable verb from the list below, active or passive, positive or negative.

teach • forgive • take • paint • see • study • read • work

- This is my cousin Jude – he history at university and he'll graduate next year.
- At first, I didn't understand what he wanted, but now I his point.
- Their house for years. They really should do something about it!
- Jill's ballet class by an ex-prima ballerina. The pupils really look up to her.
- I'm not inviting Kelly to my party because I her for lying to me.
- I can't wait for tomorrow! My dad me to a football match!
- How long you for the same company?
- My favourite author is Jane Austen – I all of her books.



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- I hear that our examination papers and are ready now.
 - are being marked
 - are marking
 - have marked
 - have been marked
- "..... the man in this picture?"
"Yes, he's the man who robbed me."
 - Are you recognized
 - Do you recognize
 - Are you recognizing
 - You are recognizing
- The photographs at the moment.
You should have them in an hour.
 - develop
 - are developed
 - are being developed
 - have developed
- Why are you out of breath? ?
 - Have you been running
 - Have you run
 - Are you running
 - Do you run
- "What time is Sue arriving?"
"The bus at 6 p.m., and I'm going to meet her at the bus station."
 - gets in
 - has got in
 - does get in
 - getting in
- She has not spoken to me since we each other at the library last week.
 - were seeing
 - saw
 - have seen
 - have been seen
- This is the best piece of advice on the matter.
 - I am receiving
 - I receive
 - I am being received
 - I've received
- They to turn off the lights when they leave the room.
 - are never remembering
 - remember never
 - never remember
 - have never remembered

B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

TIP! Remember that contracted forms (e.g., doesn't, don't) count as two words.

- The last time Susan went to Britain was two years ago. **not**
Susan for two years.
- This is our first time in an aeroplane. **never**
We in an aeroplane before.

3. It started to snow at six o'clock this morning. **since**
It six o'clock this morning.
4. What's the price of that camera, please? **cost**
How much, please?
5. The use of certain spray cans is polluting the atmosphere. **by**
The atmosphere the use of certain spray cans.
6. I haven't received my exam results yet. **still**
I for my exam results.
7. I can't remember ever seeing such a good programme on TV. **best**
This is the seen on TV.
8. We moved here 10 years ago. **for**
We 10 years.

C. Read part of a leaflet about a music festival and fill in the missing words. Choose from among the words in the table below by marking the corresponding letter. (There are four words you won't need and two you may use twice.)

A been	B being	C has	D is	E have	F do
G are	H for	I since	J during	K before	L often

WORLDSONG MUSIC FESTIVAL

The Worldsong Festival has been around (1) 25 years and is now the top musical event of its kind. The festival (2) normally held in June but has (3) postponed this year because the venue is (4) used for the European Student Games. This year's Worldsong Festival (5) taking place on the weekend of the 10th/11th of August. (6) the early 1970s, when just a few hundred spectators came each year, the event (7) grown enormously, and this year more than 30,000 people (8) expected to turn up. Whether you are a regular at Worldsong, or have never been (9), it is sure to be an experience to remember! A varied programme (10) been put together, including performances by blues singers, African rhythm bands, Irish dancers and folk singers from South America. Tickets are available at major record shops or by post. A two-day pass costs just £30, and includes parking or transfer by bus from Fridley Station.

D. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

MOVING HOUSE

I think one of (1) most difficult things to do is to move house, particularly when you have (2) somewhere all your life. As well as leaving your home, you also have the problem of packing everything (3) own into boxes. You don't realise how much you have until you have to pack it all up! We (4) moving house in about two weeks' time, so I know what I'm talking about! My father (5) found a new job in another town about 100 kilometres from here. He has (6) looking for an opportunity like this (7) a long time so the whole family agreed that we should move. Our house is (8) sold, and my parents have (9) found us a new one. It is much bigger than the one we live in (10) the moment. My sister and I will have our own rooms, which I'm glad about because she has been annoying me lately. She is (11) borrowing my clothes without asking me. She isn't very enthusiastic about moving, but I'm quite excited about it, and I don't (12) I'll mind living in a new town.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

FORMS OF LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION

accuse	argue	contact	excuse	interrupt	protest
admit	chat	criticise	express	interview	regret
advise	communicate	declare	gesture	object	threaten
announce	complain	discuss	get across	persuade	warn
apologise	confess	exclaim	grumble	pronounce	whisper

- If you don't a word properly, people may not understand what you are trying to say.
- She for coming so late. She was sorry she had kept us waiting.
- We weren't satisfied with the service in the restaurant so we to the manager.
- His father to stop his pocket money if he didn't start helping in the house.
- My brother me of breaking his MP4 player, but I didn't do it.
- It is impolite to people when they are in the middle of a conversation.
- I'll give you my mobile phone number in case you want to me while I'm out.
- They really not coming to the party. They are sorry they missed it.
- "What a great idea!" she
- They because they didn't want anyone to hear what they were saying.
- We really to being treated so unfairly.
- He always finds fault with people and everything they do.
- She for us to take our seats.
- The teacher us not to be late for morning assembly.

DESCRIBING LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION

bilingual	expressive	foreign	native	oral
conversational	fluent	multilingual	noisy	talkative

- If you know a language, you can communicate with people from another country.
- The part of the exam is often harder than the written part.
- Elizabeth is She grew up speaking both French and Russian.
- Allan speaks Spanish very hesitantly. He would like to be more in Spanish.
- Mary's German is excellent – she sounds just like a speaker.
- John doesn't say much but his sister is the opposite – she's very

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. PHRASAL VERBS Circle the correct phrasal verb with *get* to complete the following sentences.

- While I do the shopping, you can *get over to* / *away with* / *on with* your work.
- It's difficult to *get by* / *away* / *to* in a foreign country if you don't speak the language.
- Russian is such a hard language to learn. It's really *getting me off* / *by* / *down*.
- He thought he would *get down to* / *away with* / *out of* copying on the exam, but he didn't.
- Once their French teacher arrives, they will *get over to* / *down to* / *on to* work.
- You promised to come and help me with my Spanish homework. Don't try to *get out of* / *up to* / *into* it!
- If you want to *get on* / *in* / *away* in life and find a good job, knowing a foreign language can be an advantage.
- John's parents won't let him go to summer school but I think he'll *get on* / *over* / *out* the disappointment quickly.

B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the words below. You will need to use some of the words more than once.

have • into • make • voice • up • get • excuse • tell • clue • tongue • over

- Why are you shouting **at the top of your** ? I'm standing right beside you.
- He's very nervous. He's been asked to **a speech** at his nephew's wedding.
- I didn't **the point** of what she was trying to say. Did you understand her?
- There's so much noise in the room that I can't hear you. Please **speak**
- I'll leave my phone number on the notice board in case you need to **in touch** with me.
- It was a difficult subject to explain, but he managed to **himself understood** very well.
- Please don't raise your voice to me. I don't want to **an argument** about this.
- She's only three years old; she may have a watch, but she can't **the time** yet.
- I **haven't a** what the answer to your question is. Maybe Mark can help you.
- Some people find it easy to **conversation**; I find it quite hard.
- I don't believe he was ill yesterday. He's just **making an**
- If you have a problem, **talking it** with someone often helps.
- We **a long conversation** every time we meet.
- Please **lower your** Everyone can hear you.
- She **talked us** going with her.
- Don't waste time on unnecessary details. **to the point**.
- You should always be truthful. It is wrong to **a lie**.
- The name of the shop is **on the tip of my** but I just can't remember it now.



C. WORD FORMATION Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word given.

- These instructions are in Italian. Could I have an English, please?
- Students of a foreign language need to improve their as well as trying to speak with a degree of
- It is important to learn the correct of a new word.
- The girls in the class are very, but the boys are much quieter.
- What she did was wrong. I expect an from her.
- Please turn off all mobile phones during the meeting. We don't want any

TRANSLATE
ACCURATE
FLUENT
PRONOUNCE
TALK
APOLOGISE
INTERRUPT

D. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. I was born in Italy so my mother **language** / **tongue** / **speech** is Italian.
2. When he went into the room, they were all **discussing** / **talking** / **telling** the latest news.
3. My best friend has moved to another town, but we still **contact** / **get in touch** / **keep in touch**.
4. I could tell he was uncomfortable from his body **gesture** / **language** / **sign**.
5. Jim **giggled** / **mumbled** / **grumbled** at the price of the cinema tickets.
6. Susan **refused** / **denied** / **rejected** to listen to what Ben had to say.
7. The technician gave them lots of **news** / **information** / **informations** about their new computer.
8. Let me give you some **advices** / **advise** / **advice**.
9. I **said** / **warned** / **threatened** him never to do that again.
10. We **mentioned** / **informed** / **told** the concert to Peter, but he didn't seem very interested in going.
11. It's not my **fault** / **blame** / **wrong** you forgot the appointment. Don't **fault** / **blame** / **wrong** me.
12. I **agreed** / **agreed to** / **agreed with** help her translate the article into French. She **agreed** / **agreed to** / **agreed with** everything that I suggested.



Exam Practice

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

TIP! Don't forget to use the key word.

1. He said he was sorry that he had told so many lies. **apologised**
He so many lies.
2. We try to phone our cousins regularly. **touch**
We try to our cousins by phone.
3. You will have to help us tidy up. **get**
You can't helping us tidy up.
4. Because they were arguing, I left the room. **argument**
Because they, I left the room.
5. When I went into the room, the political situation was under discussion. **about**
When I went into the room, they the political situation.
6. I finally agreed to go to the concert with John. **persuaded**
John finally to the concert with him.
7. She was shouting very loudly and waving her hands in the air. **voice**
She was shouting at and waving her hands in the air.
8. You can contact me by e-mail if you want. Here's my address. **get**
I'll give you my e-mail address so that you can me.

- B. Below is some information about the languages spoken in Europe. Some words are missing. Decide what they are. Choose from among the words below by marking the corresponding letter. (There is one word you won't need and one you may use twice.)

A themselves	B foreign	C native	D tongue	E get
F speak	G conversation	H multilingual	I communicate	J tell

LANGUAGES IN EUROPE

Did you know that there are currently 23 official European Union languages? A recent survey has shown that nearly half of Europe is already (1) – 56% of European citizens can hold a (2) in more than one language. Here are some details:

- ★ English is the number-one language – only 13% of the EU population (3) it as their mother (4), but a further 38% know enough to (5) by in everyday situations.
- ★ The language that has the greatest number of (6) speakers is German, but only 14% of Europeans speak it as a (7) language.
- ★ People in Luxembourg are the most likely to be fluent in more than one language, followed by Slovakia and Latvia, where more than nine out of 10 people can easily make (8) understood in another language.
- ★ People in the United Kingdom, Ireland and Italy are the least likely to speak a (9) language – more than half are not able to (10) in another language.

- C. **MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE** Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

GOOD COMMUNICATION

Throughout our lives, good communication is the key to success. In our personal relationships, we need to be able to get our ideas and feelings (1) and to understand what others are trying to tell us. Parents and children need to (2) things without (3) arguments all the time. Communication is important in other areas of life too; if we can't (4) ourselves understood at work or at school, how are we going to manage?

At work, if your colleagues feel they are being (5) or told what to do, they may complain. Some might do more than (6); they may even (7) to cooperate. If you want to (8) in business, you need the ability to (9) others into buying what you are selling. As well as choosing words carefully, it's important to understand that we (10) ourselves in other ways too. Ninety percent of the impression we make on others depends on things like body (11), appearance and (12), and only 10% on what you are saying. We can all benefit from knowing more about good communication.



- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A up | B away | C across | D down |
| 2. A discuss | B talk | C speak | D chat |
| 3. A making | B having | C doing | D getting |
| 4. A have | B do | C make | D speak |
| 5. A objected | B advised | C complained | D criticised |
| 6. A grumble | B mumble | C warn | D giggle |
| 7. A deny | B regret | C refuse | D threaten |
| 8. A get out of | B get on | C get to | D get over |
| 9. A talk | B tell | C say | D persuade |
| 10. A exclaim | B admit | C express | D impress |
| 11. A signs | B language | C tongue | D gesture |
| 12. A point | B advice | C noise | D voice |

Review 1

A. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

CAN ANIMALS TALK?

There are many films with talking animals in them, and many people claim to be able to understand what their cat or dog is trying to tell them. Some animals can be taught to use words. Parrots, (1) example, can learn to repeat things like their names but researchers (2) still studying them to discover if they really know (3) they are saying. In general, scientists believe that the way humans use language to get (4) what they mean is unique. Animals use many different ways to communicate basic ideas: bees do a complicated dance to show other bees where to find flowers, and nearly all animals use movements (5) gestures for communication. But the way people use words (6) different. We use sounds (7) mean specific things, and we can put together any meaning we want from (8) sounds we make. The noises which are made (9) animals, such as bird calls or dog barks, can only express (10) few general ideas. The noise warns the others that (11) is danger, but they cannot express what the danger is or say what to (12) about it.

B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- We've never been to Canada before. **time**
This is the first to Canada.
- Terry has a bad habit of not telling the truth, and it really annoys me. **always**
Terry lies, and it really annoys me.
- My friends managed to persuade me to go climbing with them. **into**
My friends climbing with them.
- What is his opinion of his new French teacher? **think**
What his new French teacher?
- They are talking about the plans for a new language school today. **discussed**
The plans for a new language school today.
- She came to live here in 1995. **living**
She 1995.
- When did you first meet Charles? **long**
How Charles?
- Helen is recovering from a recent illness. **getting**
Helen a recent illness.

Review 1

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- "What musical instrument ?"
"The guitar."
 - is playing your brother
 - does play your brother
 - does your brother play
 - plays your brother
- "Jennifer, have you made any vacation plans yet?"
"Well, of going abroad."
 - I'm thinking
 - I think
 - I've thought
 - I would think
- His car broke down yesterday. It in the garage.
 - repairs
 - is repaired
 - is repairing
 - is being repaired
- We have been waiting for you 15 minutes.
 - already
 - so far
 - for
 - since
- How long this house?
 - have you owned
 - are you owning
 - do you own
 - have you been owning
- So far this month, three important speeches by the president.
 - are making
 - are being made
 - have made
 - have been made
- "Would you like to see a movie tonight?"
"I can't. I finished my homework yet."
 - don't have
 - haven't
 - am not
 - didn't
- Tom is very tired. He hard recently.
 - has been working
 - was working
 - is working
 - works
- I hope you're listening and down the new words.
 - write
 - writing
 - you writing
 - to write
- This food delicious.
 - taste
 - is tasting
 - tastes
 - has tasted

VOCABULARY

- We had a very interesting conversation. We about many things.
 - discussed
 - talked
 - said
 - told
- Sue for forgetting Jane's letter.
 - complained
 - regretted
 - excused
 - apologized
- He had great difficulty in what he wanted to say.
 - getting on
 - speaking up
 - getting across
 - talking over
- They to tell us what they knew about the matter.
 - refused
 - denied
 - objected
 - rejected
- The principal the class to talk to the students.
 - interviewed
 - interrupted
 - mentioned
 - exclaimed
- Her name was on the of my tongue, but I couldn't remember it.
 - end
 - top
 - edge
 - tip
- When you learn a new word, learn how to spell it and how to it.
 - pronounce
 - announce
 - express
 - sound
- She to tell his parents what he had done.
 - warned
 - contacted
 - threatened
 - persuaded
- Mark is studying Spanish.
 - expressive
 - oral
 - fluent
 - conversational
- He's never satisfied. He's always
 - gesturing
 - grumbling
 - whispering
 - declaring

3

Past Tenses (active and passive): Past Simple, Past Continuous, Past Perfect Simple, Past Perfect Continuous; *used to / would*



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A I was seeing a very good film last week.

B I saw a very good film last week.

- 1 A I didn't sleep well at all last night.
B I wasn't sleeping well at all last night.
- 2 A When I went into the living room, my father was watching TV.
B When I went into the living room, my father watched TV.
- 3 A Were you going swimming every day after school last month?
B Did you go swimming every day after school last month?
- 4 A While I was crossed the road, I saw an accident.
B While I was crossing the road, I saw an accident.
- 5 A I didn't mean to upset her; I'm sorry about it.
B I wasn't meaning to upset her; I'm sorry about it.
- 6 A During the interview, all his answers were recorded for a radio programme.
B During the interview, all his answers were recording for a radio programme.
- 7 A When I looked out of the window, the sky was blue and the sun shone.
B When I looked out of the window, the sky was blue and the sun was shining.
- 8 A I didn't know that he had left.
B I didn't know that he left.
- 9 A We were phoning him immediately.
B We phoned him immediately.
- 10 A They didn't use to eat late.
B They didn't used to eat late.
- 11 A By the time they arrived, all the preparations had been made.
B By the time they arrived, all the preparations had made.
- 12 A He was studying English for two years when he first went to Britain.
B He had been studying English for two years when he first went to Britain.
- 13 A After they had done the shopping, they had started to prepare the meal.
B After they had done the shopping, they started to prepare the meal.
- 14 A His clothes were wet because he had been walking in the rain.
B His clothes were wet because he walked in the rain.
- 15 A Until he arrived, they were ready.
B By the time he arrived, they were ready.
- 16 A I used to have short hair; now it's long.
B I was used to have short hair; now it's long.
- 17 A We would live in a small flat.
B We used to live in a small flat.
- 18 A Did Julie buy anything new the other day?
B Has Julie bought anything new the other day?
- 19 A They used to go to the cinema every week.
B They would to go to the cinema every week.
- 20 A The family had finished eating before we arrived.
B The family has finished eating before we arrived.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Past Simple, Past Continuous

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
PAST SIMPLE Active verb+ed (except irregular verbs) I worked. Did you work? He didn't work. Passive was / were + past participle	a. a completed action that took place at a definite time in the past b. several actions in the past which happened one after another c. the main events in a narrative to stress the action rather than the agent	<i>He left home two years ago.</i> <i>He got up, washed and went downstairs.</i> <i>He kissed her and asked her to marry him.</i> <i>The book was published in November.</i>
PAST CONTINUOUS Active was / were + verb+ing I was working. We were working. Was he working? Were you working? I wasn't working. They weren't working. Passive was / were being + past participle	a. an action in progress at a specific time in the past b. two incomplete actions taking place at the same time in the past c. an action in progress (Past Continuous) interrupted by another action (Past Simple) d. background to a narrative to stress the action rather than the agent	<i>At 8.00 p.m. last night, I was doing my homework.</i> <i>Tim was listening to the radio while Sam was reading a book.</i> <i>The children were chatting noisily when their teacher entered.</i> <i>We went into the garden. The birds were singing.</i> <i>The tents were still being put up when we arrived.</i>

Remember! We don't use the continuous form when a verb refers to a state, not an action. (See Stative Verbs, Unit 1.)

TIME EXPRESSIONS

Past Simple: ago, yesterday, last week, in 1963, in November, when, the other day

Past Continuous: yesterday, at five o'clock, as, while

used to / would

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
used to + bare infinitive Negative didn't use to / never used to Question Did you use to ... ? would + bare infinitive (not usually used in negative and question forms)	can only be used in past tense – replaces Past Simple a. an action that happened regularly in the past but no longer happens b. a past state or situation past habits or repeated actions (only <i>used to</i> can refer to past states)	<i>I used to play tennis, but I don't have the energy now.</i> <i>Did you use to have a garden when you were a child?</i> <i>She would always sleep with the window open.</i>

For information on *be used to* and *get used to*, see Unit 25.

Past Perfect Simple, Past Perfect Continuous

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
<p>PAST PERFECT SIMPLE</p> <p>Active had + past participle She had worked. Had she worked? We hadn't worked.</p> <p>Passive had been + past participle</p>	<p>an action that happened before another action or period of time in the past</p> <p>to stress the action rather than the agent</p>	<p>They had moved house before we arrived in the neighbourhood. By the time I arrived, everyone else had gone home. I had no sooner got to work than the phone rang.</p> <p>The apple had been eaten.</p>
<p>PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS</p> <p>Active had been + verb+ing She had been working. Had she been working? We hadn't been working.</p> <p>Passive No passive form</p>	<p>a. an action which started before another action in the past and was still in progress at the time of the second action</p> <p>b. an action that had just finished at a particular time in the past but was still relevant at that time (see Present Perfect Continuous)</p>	<p>I had been reading for an hour when the doorbell rang.</p> <p>His hands were dirty because he had been working in the garden.</p>

NOTE

We can often use Past Simple instead of Past Perfect when the time expression (e.g., before, after) makes it clear which action happened first.

After she (had) finished lunch she took a nap.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

Past Perfect Simple: by the time, after, before, when, as soon as, already, for, no sooner . . . than

Past Perfect Continuous: for, since, all night / week / afternoon

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



- Last winter they were going skiing every weekend.
.....
- As a child I would love ice cream, but today I hate it.
.....
- It was raining heavily when we were leaving the house.
.....
- She hadn't to see him for years.
.....
- He was working there for two years when he moved offices.
.....
- The old house hadn't been painting for years.
.....



Grammar Practice

A. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Use past tenses.

1. While we (play) tennis yesterday, it (start) to rain.
2. The report (complete) before we (leave) the office.
3. As we (leave) the shop, we (meet) our aunt, who (invite) us to dinner.
4. By the time my mother (come) home, we (tidy up) our room.
5. He (talk) to his friend for several minutes when his brother (arrive) and (interrupt) their conversation.
6. By the time I (wake up), the rain (stop) and the sun (shine) again.

B. Complete the following sentences with the correct time expression below. Use each time expression once only. There are more words than you need.

still • the other day • ago • for • since • by the time • already • until • while

1. we realised our mistake, we had driven 20 km in the wrong direction.
2. We couldn't use the swimming pool because it was being repaired.
3. You'll never guess who I saw - our old maths teacher!
4. Fifty years , nobody had personal computers in their homes.
5. I read my book I was waiting for my doctor's appointment.
6. Simon's mum was angry because he had been playing computer games he got home from school.



C. Complete the following paragraphs with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. It was the first time that Harry (1) (ever fly) in an aeroplane and naturally, he was very excited. When the suitcases (2) (pack), he and his family (3) (set off) for the airport. Harry's parents liked travelling and they used (4) (go) abroad quite often, so they (5) (always wear) comfortable clothes for such journeys. Two hours after he left his house, Harry (6) (sit) in the aeroplane, reading a magazine which he (7) (buy) before he (8) (board) the plane. He (9) (read) his magazine for an hour when lunch (10) (serve).
2. Last Saturday, my friend and I (1) (decide) to go shopping in town. Once we (2) (arrive) in the city centre, we (3) (go) straight to the new music shop, which (4) (open) by a local singer a few weeks before. We (5) (try) for a few days to find the time to go there and we (6) (not be) disappointed. There was a wonderful selection of CDs in the shop, and we both (7) (spend) an enjoyable hour there before we (8) (have) lunch.

D. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of *used to* or *would*. You may need to use the negative. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Sam be in my class at school but he moved a year ago.
2. My brother like Chinese food but now he likes it very much.
3. When we were young, our cousins spend the weekends with us.
4. My grandmother often tell us about her life when she was a girl.
5. go to the beach a lot when you were a child?
6. I know this area very well but it has changed a lot.

E. Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

GRACE DARLING MUSEUM

The Grace Darling Museum (1) by the Royal National Lifeboat Institution in 1938 in memory of a young heroine who (2) famous exactly 100 years earlier. Grace Darling (3) in a lighthouse with her father on a tiny rocky island in the North Sea. She (4) him keep the lighthouse working and (5) watch for sailors in trouble. She was just 22 years old when, on 7th September 1838, a ship (6) onto the rocks in a storm. She helped her father row a tiny boat out to the wreck to rescue nine survivors. People at the time were amazed that a young woman could show such strength and courage, and portraits (7) showing her battling against wind and waves, her hair flying behind her. The museum contains various items belonging to Grace and the boat which (8) in the famous rescue.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A was established | B had established | C established |
| 2. A has become | B had become | C was becoming |
| 3. A has lived | B was lived | C lived |
| 4. A used to help | B was helping | C had been helping |
| 5. A was also keeping | B would also keep | C was also kept |
| 6. A ran | B used to run | C had run |
| 7. A were painting | B painted | C were painted |
| 8. A would use | B was used | C was being used |



Exam Practice

- A. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

TIP! Make sure your answer does not include any unnecessary words. Write only 2-5 words.

- I had to tidy my desk before I could get down to work. **until**
I couldn't get down to work my desk.
- Jennifer never forgot her mother's birthday. **always**
Jennifer her mother's birthday.
- An Italian drove the winning car in the race. **by**
The winning car in the race an Italian.
- The postman arrived in the middle of our breakfast. **while**
The postman arrived breakfast.
- I hadn't finished checking my test when the examiner told me to stop. **still**
I my test when the examiner told me to stop.
- Allan studied hard all day so he was very tired that night. **because**
Allan was very tired that night hard all day.
- The boys often played football after school. **would**
The boys after school.
- This is the house where I lived when I was a boy. **used**
This is the house where I was a boy.

B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. They on our street for several weeks when I first met them.
 - a. were living
 - b. have lived
 - c. lived
 - d. had been living
2. When George at the bus stop, his friends were already there.
 - a. arrived
 - b. had arrived
 - c. was arriving
 - d. was arrived
3. Sandra looked in her bag and discovered that her wallet
 - a. was stolen
 - b. had been stolen
 - c. had stolen
 - d. stole
4. They to him immediately after the interview.
 - a. had been written
 - b. were writing
 - c. wrote
 - d. were written
5. "Why did the boss send Linda home yesterday?"

"Because she ill."

 - a. was looked
 - b. had looked
 - c. has been looking
 - d. looked
6. "Why did they lower their voices?"

"They obviously didn't want me to hear what"

 - a. was being discussed
 - b. discussed
 - c. would discuss
 - d. were discussing
7. "What between 9.00 and 10.00 last night?" the policeman asked.
 - a. were you doing
 - b. had you done
 - c. have you done
 - d. were you done
8. "Did you understand the book?"

"No, not I had read the translation."

 - a. since
 - b. yet
 - c. until
 - d. while
9. The first airplane by the Wright brothers in 1903.
 - a. was flying
 - b. was flown
 - c. flew
 - d. had flown
10. Henry was out of breath because he to catch the train.
 - a. ran
 - b. had been running
 - c. was running
 - d. used to run

C. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TIP! Remember to read the whole text carefully before you start.

A BIRTHDAY SURPRISE

Generally, Janet (1) get home at about 6.30, but that evening she got home later than expected because she had missed her usual train. The house was very quiet and in total darkness; obviously nobody else had come home (2) She had been in the house for only a few seconds (3) she heard a slight noise in the living room and she (4) there, wondering what to do. (5) she was trying to find the courage to go (6) the living room and see what was happening, she (7) someone laugh quietly, and then there was silence again. Finally, Janet went in. Suddenly the lights (8) switched on. Her family and all her friends were in the room, singing "Happy Birthday". A surprise party had (9) organised for her! Everyone had been sitting in the dark living room (10) an hour, waiting for her to come home. They all (11) a wonderful time at the party. Janet had not (12) to celebrate her birthday, so the whole evening was a real surprise for her.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

RELATIONSHIPS

adolescent	bridesmaid	ex-wife	niece	separated
adopt	couple	father-in-law	only child	single
adult	divorced	fiancée	orphan	stepfather
bride	engaged	infant	relative	widow

Here's a photo of my friend Jim's wedding. I was best man. As you can see, there were lots of guests, as Jim has a lot of (1) and most of them came. I'm standing between the (2) (Bridget) and Jim's new (3) (Bridget's dad). Bridget's parents are (4) and her father has since remarried, but luckily he still gets on well with his (5), so they both came to the wedding. Bridget is an (6), but Jim has two brothers: Tom, on the right, is still (7), but Greg has just got (8) and is planning his wedding for the summer. That's his (9) standing next to him. Bridget's little cousins, Sally and Donna, were (10) Don't they look cute?

APPEARANCE

bald	complexion	feature	middle-aged	pretty	straight
beard	elderly	freckle	moustache	slim	wavy

- If you have a pale, you must be careful not to get sunburnt.
- My father is in his mid-fifties. I guess you could call him
- A few years ago he had thick black hair, but now he's completely
- We generally say that boys are good-looking, but girls are
- Women should wear make-up to emphasise their best

PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS

conscientious	enthusiastic	hospitable	obedient	self-centred	sympathetic
considerate	faithful	independent	outgoing	stubborn	tactful

- It wasn't very of you to tell her that her new hairstyle doesn't suit her!
- His nephew is a very person. He cares about other people's feelings and wishes.
- I told her my problem but she wasn't very
- Paul is a very student; he always does his homework and works hard.
- Steven's parents are very They are always inviting people to their house.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with a suitable word.

1. My brother is a friendly person. He **friends** very easily.
2. Denise's children are very noisy – I don't know how she **puts** **with** them.
3. I'd like to introduce you to Pamela. She is a **close** of mine.
4. I don't know what's wrong with my sister today. She's **a bad mood**.
5. George is sharing a flat with another student. They **get** **well**.
6. Jim's parents **divorced** many years ago and he grew up in a **single-parent**
7. I'm not sure how old Mr Lewis is – probably **his early thirties**.
8. They had a bad quarrel a few days ago, but they've now **made** and are friends again.
9. She **looks** a lot her mother, but her sister resembles her father more.
10. Margaret and Allan **in love** and decided to **married** a few months later.

B. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs with *bring*.

bring about • bring down • bring in • bring out
bring back • bring off • bring on • bring up

1. When he saw his old house again, it memories of his childhood.
2. She took on extra work three evenings a week, but it only a few pounds.
3. Jane's new boyfriend has a complete change in her behaviour.
4. They've just a new digital camera which is excellent.
5. The government is trying very hard to the rate of inflation.
6. It wasn't an easy thing to do, but I was sure she would it
7. She has her children to be very independent.
8. Her illness was by stress at work.

C. ADJECTIVES Complete the following sentences with the correct adjective below.

flexible • rude • pessimistic • ambitious • generous • selfish • introverted

1. Pat has an optimistic attitude to life. She doesn't believe in being
2. Ruth is stubborn. She should learn to be more
3. Tom is very outgoing but his brother is
4. Linda only thinks about herself; she's so
5. Simon is mean whereas his friend Alex is quite
6. Mark is not interested in doing well in life but his cousin is
7. Sam is not a polite child. His behaviour is very



D. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. I don't like wearing bright colours. They don't **fit** / **suit** / **match** me.
2. After Susan's parents broke up, her mother **brought her up** / **grew her up** / **brought her out** alone.
3. Sophia **looks after** / **takes after** / **agrees with** her grandmother – she has the same looks and personality.
4. Her parents are celebrating their anniversary today. They **have been married** / **got married** / **married** for 25 years.
5. Although the twins, Sue and Ann, look exactly alike, each one is **single** / **alone** / **unique** in her own way.

E. PREFIXES Complete the following sentences with the negative form of the word in bold. Choose from the prefixes *un-*, *im-*, *in-*, *dis-* and *ir-*.

1. Harry is so**obedient**; he never does what his parents tell him.
2. My cousin is very**responsible**; he never keeps his promises.
3. It was very**sensitive** of you to laugh at her like that.
4. I'm always very shy in**familiar** situations.
5. I think he's so**mature** because he's the youngest child in the family.
6. At school she was**popular** and didn't have many friends.
7. People who tell lies are**honest**.
8. We mustn't keep George waiting; he gets**patient** when we're late.



F. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES Complete the following paragraph with the adjectives below to form compound adjectives. You will need to use two of the words twice.

short • well • good • brand • hard • easy • fair • tight • half • blue

Jeffrey Sanderson is a 19-year-old who lives in a small town outside London. He has a very pleasant personality and he is also very (1)-looking. He is (2)-haired, (3)-eyed and (4)-skinned. He is tall for his age and very (5)-built, and he is quite strong because he goes to the gym regularly. Jeffrey likes to keep up with the latest fashions and is always very (6)-dressed. Today he is wearing a (7)-sleeved shirt and (8)-fitting jeans. He is also wearing a (9)-new leather jacket that he bought at (10)-price in the sales. As for his character, he's very (11)-going, and he's popular with his bosses because he's (12)-working.



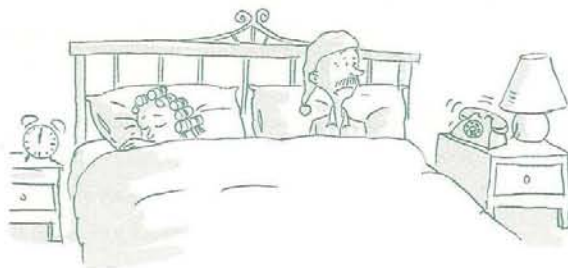
Exam Practice

A. Read the sentences below and indicate which are logical. Mark A (YES) if the statement makes sense and B (NO) if it doesn't.

		A YES	B NO
1.	If two people look like each other, there's no resemblance.		
2.	An introverted person would find it difficult to make friends easily.		
3.	An event is a success if the organisers bring it off.		
4.	Two people are no longer talking to each other when they have made up.		
5.	Parents usually punish obedience.		
6.	Employers do not want their staff to be conscientious.		
7.	It is considered polite to be hospitable to guests.		

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. Mr and Mrs Burton's wedding day was 10 years ago. **married**
Mr and Mrs Burton 10 years.
2. Will you take care of the children for me tomorrow afternoon? **look**
Will you for me tomorrow afternoon?
3. Does anyone know why Erica and Sam started arguing? **brought**
What between Erica and Sam?
4. I can't stand the way my brother behaves anymore. **put**
I can't behaviour anymore.
5. The photos reminded Sam of his schooldays. **memories**
The photos Sam's schooldays.
6. Because of his generosity, many people benefited from his kindness. **so**
Because , many people benefited from his kindness.
7. They didn't speak for a few weeks, but now they are friends again. **made**
They didn't speak for a few weeks, but lately.
8. He didn't show much consideration for us when he phoned at midnight. **him**
It was phone us at midnight.



C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! Read the sentence carefully to see if it has a positive or negative meaning. Be prepared to form the negative or opposite form of the word given.

THE GENERATION GAP

People talk about the generation gap as a kind of (1) between young people and their parents. It is something which is generally a problem when children enter their teenage years, and results in (2) on both sides. Parents, for example, can often be heard to say that young people are disrespectful and (3) and in addition, tend to be (4) when spending because they don't appreciate the value of money. (5) , on the other hand, complain that their parents don't understand them.

What has gone wrong? One (6) lies in how society has changed. In the past, children would (7) continue the way of life of their parents. In today's world, parents are very (8) for their children because they want them to achieve more than they did. The problem is that the children often don't agree with their parents' plans. Teenagers also reach (9) at an earlier age than they used to and want their (10) sooner. The resulting conflict is painful to both sides.

- DIVIDE
- COMPLAIN
- OBEY
- RESPONSIBLE
- ADOLESCENCE
- EXPLAIN
- TYPICAL
- AMBITION
- MATURE
- INDEPENDENT

Review 2

- A. **WORD FORMATION** Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

HELPING A FRIEND

When I was fourteen, Faye moved into the house next door. She was a friendly, (1) girl, and within a few hours of our first meeting, she had told me all about herself. In fact, she talked so much that (2) her to offer information about myself was almost impossible.

Faye and I became close, but over time she became (3) and lost all her (4) for life. One day, when I asked what was wrong, Faye told me quite (5) that it was none of my business. The next day she said that she owed me an (6) She then explained that her parents had been arguing a lot and she was afraid that they were going to get (7) My parents rarely argued so I was (8) with this kind of problem.

However, I was able to give her some good (9) : to speak to an older (10), such as an aunt, about her concerns.

When she did so, she found out that there was nothing to worry about at all.

TALK
INTERRUPTION

INTROVERT
ENTHUSIASTIC
RUDE
APOLOGISE

DIVORCE
FAMILIAR
ADVISE
RELATE

- B. Below is an article about teenagers. Choose the appropriate word (A, B or C) with which to fill in the gaps.

PEER PRESSURE

Sociologists have been carrying out research into the social pressures of being a teenager. Many (1) are unhappy at school because they find it difficult to make (2) This stress can (3) on illness or result in poor grades. They may also worry about their (4) and often feel under enormous pressure to dress, talk and (5) the same as others. This phenomenon is called peer pressure, and it is very common in today's society. Advertising contributes a lot to the social pressures teenagers (6) Advertisers know how important it is to feel that you belong to a group when you are (7) your teens, so they try to (8) teenagers that certain products will make them (9) with their classmates. Sadly, many teenagers act (10) and even do dangerous things just to (11) others accept them. Peer pressure is often the reason for teenage smoking, drug abuse or dangerous driving. Teenagers need to learn to say "no" to social pressure and to find friends who they can (12) things over with when they have a problem.

1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A adolescents	<input type="checkbox"/>	B adults	<input type="checkbox"/>	C infants
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A relatives	<input type="checkbox"/>	B friends	<input type="checkbox"/>	C couples
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A get	<input type="checkbox"/>	B put	<input type="checkbox"/>	C bring
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A looking	<input type="checkbox"/>	B characteristic	<input type="checkbox"/>	C appearance
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A fit	<input type="checkbox"/>	B behave	<input type="checkbox"/>	C obey
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A feel	<input type="checkbox"/>	B belong	<input type="checkbox"/>	C own
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A by	<input type="checkbox"/>	B on	<input type="checkbox"/>	C in
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A persuade	<input type="checkbox"/>	B get across	<input type="checkbox"/>	C argue
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A faithful	<input type="checkbox"/>	B popular	<input type="checkbox"/>	C hospitable
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A irresponsibly	<input type="checkbox"/>	B flexibly	<input type="checkbox"/>	C considerably
11.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A do	<input type="checkbox"/>	B make	<input type="checkbox"/>	C cause
12.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A discuss	<input type="checkbox"/>	B talk	<input type="checkbox"/>	C express

Review 2

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "Why me that George was in the hospital?"
"I'm sorry; I forgot."
a. haven't you told
b. didn't you tell
c. don't you tell
d. hadn't you told
2. I haven't spoken to Paul since I him at the concert last Saturday.
a. had seen
b. seen
c. have seen
d. saw
3. Before she left the office, she made sure that everything for the meeting.
a. was preparing
b. had prepared
c. had been prepared
d. prepared
4. We breakfast when the dog started to bark.
a. were having
b. had
c. had been having
d. have
5. I last saw Jane
a. before two weeks
b. for two weeks
c. two weeks ago
d. since two weeks
6. The Empire State Building in 1931.
a. had built
b. was built
c. were built
d. has been built
7. "Have you ever been to Paris?"
"Yes, I to Paris two months ago."
a. have been
b. been
c. have gone
d. went
8. The visitors had arrived by the time Robert home from work.
a. has come
b. had come
c. came
d. was coming
9. I'm sorry; I've forgotten what
a. you told me
b. did you tell me
c. you tell me
d. were you telling me
10. They Spanish for two years when they went on their first trip to Spain.
a. learned
b. had been learning
c. were learning
d. have been learning

VOCABULARY

11. Life can be difficult for ; they are not children and they are not adults.
a. young
b. infants
c. orphans
d. adolescents
12. They've their children to know the value of money.
a. put up
b. grown up
c. brought up
d. got up
13. When Jenny sits out in the sun, she gets all over her face.
a. complexion
b. freckles
c. elderly
d. features
14. Linda definitely her father.
a. gets on
b. brings about
c. gets across
d. takes after
15. John and his spend all their time planning their wedding.
a. fiancée
b. bridesmaid
c. widow
d. engagement
16. Margaret's boss is pleased because she is always very about her work.
a. stubborn
b. conscientious
c. threatening
d. disobedient
17. They are determined to get on in the world. They are so !
a. easy-going
b. relaxed
c. ambitious
d. unfamiliar
18. Sonia is always early in the mornings.
a. in her early twenties
b. in a bad mood
c. brand new
d. well-built
19. My brother is still ; he's not married yet.
a. single
b. unique
c. selfish
d. separate
20. She didn't answer me – she just something I couldn't hear.
a. informed
b. adopted
c. mumbled
d. blamed

5

Future Tenses (active and passive): Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future Perfect Simple, Future Perfect Continuous; *be going to*, Present Simple, Present Continuous



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A He phones you tomorrow.

B He will phone you tomorrow.

- 1 A Is she meeting her friend for lunch today?
B Does she meet her friend for lunch today?
- 2 A You're going shopping? I come with you.
B Are you going shopping? I'll come with you.
- 3 A Good luck! We'll be thinking of you.
B Good luck! We're going to think of you.
- 4 A When I leave school, I'm going to study law.
B When I leave school, I am studying law.
- 5 A Doctors predict that they will soon be finding a cure for cancer.
B Doctors predict that they will soon find a cure for cancer.
- 6 A What time is the film beginning tomorrow?
B What time does the film begin tomorrow?
- 7 A The new cinema will build just outside the city centre.
B The new cinema will be built just outside the city centre.
- 8 A This time next week I'll be flying to London.
B This time next week I'll be flown to London.
- 9 A Sally will have been working there for 20 years this winter.
B Sally will be working there for 20 years this winter.
- 10 A The new car will have delivered by the end of the week.
B The new car will have been delivered by the end of the week.
- 11 A You'll be home by 7 o'clock, won't you?
B You'll be home by 7 o'clock, aren't you?
- 12 A Do you know when the new store opens?
B Do you know when the new store is opened?
- 13 A I'll ask Dad as soon as he's going to get home.
B I'll ask Dad as soon as he gets home.
- 14 A By Easter, we'll have lived here for six years
B By Easter, we are living here for six years.
- 15 A By next year, computers are going to come down a lot in price
B By next year, computers will have come down a lot in price.
- 16 A I'm visiting my grandmother the other day.
B I'm visiting my grandmother the day after tomorrow.
- 17 A Will you help me with my homework, please?
B Are you helping me with my homework, please?
- 18 A Soon, they will be modernised the old classrooms.
B Soon, the old classrooms will be modernised.
- 19 A When you will learn to type, it's quicker to use a computer.
B When you learn to type, it's quicker to use a computer.
- 20 A John is about to start a new job.
B John starts a new job.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future Perfect Simple, Future Perfect Continuous

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
<p>FUTURE SIMPLE</p> <p>Active will + bare infinitive I will work. Will she work? They won't work.</p> <p>Passive will be + past participle</p>	<p>a. information about the future</p> <p>b. a spontaneous decision</p> <p>c. offer / request</p> <p>d. a prediction or warning</p> <p>e. willingness or refusal to do something</p> <p>f. opinions or speculations about the future (after: <i>think, know, hope, expect, be sure, maybe, probably</i>)</p> <p>to stress the action rather than the agent</p>	<p><i>I'll buy the tickets tomorrow.</i></p> <p><i>Really? I'll come too!</i></p> <p><i>Will you open the window, please?</i></p> <p><i>The trip will be interesting.</i></p> <p><i>We'll help you pack, but we won't take you to the airport.</i></p> <p><i>I expect they will be late.</i> <i>I think she'll find her way home.</i> <i>I'm sure we'll be ready on time.</i></p> <p><i>The job will be finished soon.</i></p>
<p>FUTURE CONTINUOUS</p> <p>Active will be + verb+ing I will be working. Will he be working? You won't be working.</p> <p>Passive No passive form</p>	<p>a. when we know an action will be in progress at a certain time in the future</p> <p>b. a future action that has been pre-arranged</p>	<p><i>I'll be playing basketball between 8.00 and 9.00 tomorrow night.</i></p> <p><i>My grandparents will be visiting us next weekend.</i></p>
<p>FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE</p> <p>Active will have + past participle I will have worked. Will he have worked? They won't have worked.</p> <p>Passive will have been + past participle</p>	<p>an activity that will be completed by a certain time in the future</p> <p>to stress the action rather than the agent</p>	<p><i>By next week, we will have received our exam results.</i></p> <p><i>The letters will soon have been delivered.</i></p>
<p>FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS</p> <p>Active will have been + verb+ing I will have been working. Will they have been working? She won't have been working.</p> <p>Passive No passive form</p>	<p>an activity that has already begun and will still be in progress at a specific time in the future</p>	<p><i>By next June, he will have been working here for five years.</i></p>

NOTE

The modal *shall* is used with *I* and *we* and can be used to talk about the future and to make offers or suggestions, but it is not very common.

Shall I open a window for you?

We shall never forget the day we met.

be going to, Present Simple, Present Continuous

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
be going to + bare infinitive	a. plans, intention or decisions already taken	<i>We're going to find out about the concert.</i>
Passive be going to be + past participle	b. to predict an event based on things we know or can see	<i>The sky is black. There's going to be a storm.</i>
PRESENT SIMPLE	to stress the action rather than the agent	<i>The project is going to be completed on time.</i>
PRESENT CONTINUOUS	a planned future action or series of actions connected with timetables or a journey	<i>My flight leaves at 8.30 a.m. next Tuesday.</i>
	personal arrangements and fixed plans (usually with a time expression)	<i>He is taking Jim to the zoo tomorrow.</i> <i>Are you doing anything special tonight?</i>

NOTES

- 1 The following phrases are also used to express the future. They refer to something that will happen very soon.

be about to + bare infinitive

She is about to start a new job.

be on the point of + gerund

He is on the point of opening his own business.

- 2 The following words and phrases are followed by the Present Simple although they have a future meaning.

- expressions of time which refer to the future: *when, once, as soon as, after, before, the moment, etc.*

Do the dishes before you go out.

I want to join the police when I leave school.

- no matter what / who / where / when / how / which*

No matter what he does, we'll forgive him!

No matter when you arrive, I'll meet you.

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



1. I've made up my mind. I will study physics at university.

.....

2. Did you say you need milk? I'm buying some for you.

.....

3. By next month, I will be going out with my girlfriend for a year.

.....

4. This time next week, I will swim in the new swimming pool.

.....

5. The concert will start at 8.30 tomorrow evening. Don't be late!

.....



Grammar Practice

A. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Choose from Future Simple, Present Simple, Present Continuous or *be going to*.

1. They expect that about 300 people (attend) the lecture.
2. (write down) your new address and phone number for me?
3. The sun's coming out. It (be) a nice day.
4. I'm sure that your advice (not take); he's very stubborn.
5. When I get my pocket money at the end of the week, I (buy) a new CD.
6. The day after tomorrow, I (travel) to Spain for an international conference.
7. Susan wants to go on holiday with her friends but her parents (not let) her.
8. Look out! Drive more slowly! We (crash) into the car in front!
9. My cousin and his girlfriend (get married) soon. We're very pleased about it.
10. The match next Saturday (finish) at about five o'clock. I hope we (be able) to get home on time.

B. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Choose from Future Continuous, Future Perfect Simple and Future Perfect Continuous (active or passive).

1. This time next year, he (study) architecture in New York.
2. Between 9.00 and 10.00 tomorrow morning, we (shop) at the market.
3. Hopefully, the fax machine (repair) by this afternoon.
4. There's no point in phoning him; he (leave) by now.
5. I can't help you on Sunday. I (visit) my relatives all day.
6. By next June, she (work) in the bank for 12 years.
7. Promise me that by tomorrow morning you (tidy up) your room.
8. By the end of the week, a new government (elect).
9. By next year, we (live) in England for two years.
10. By the time he finishes university, he (decide) what kind of work he wants to do.

C. Complete the following paragraph with the correct form of the verb in brackets. There may be more than one correct answer.



Let Madame Claire Tell Your Fortune ...

I predict that you (1) (have) a very successful life. You have already told me that you (2) (study) fashion design at the moment. By the age of 30, you (3) (open) your own dress shop and your clothes (4) (be) very popular. By then, you (5) (already make) a lot of money, and you (6) (not have) any financial worries. I see a very happy marriage too. In 15 years' time, you (7) (live) in a big house with your husband and four children, and you (8) (lecture) to fashion students all over the country. By the time you retire, you (9) (teach) in fashion colleges for more than 20 years. But now we must stop. I (10) (meet) a group of fortune-tellers this evening, and our programme (11) (begin) at 7.30. I'm sure that my predictions for you (12) (come) true – they always do! Goodbye and good luck!



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- This time next month, they their exams.
 - are taking
 - will take
 - will be taking
 - will have been taken
- Peter has to be at the airport early on Monday morning. His flight at 9.00 a.m.
 - leaves
 - will leave
 - will have left
 - about to leave
- Don't worry! I you choose a present.
 - am helping
 - will help
 - going to help
 - help
- Please don't phone between 8.00 and 9.00 this evening. my favourite soap opera.
 - I'll watch
 - I'm on the point of watching
 - I'll have been watching
 - I'll be watching
- Next week, a new lift in the town hall.
 - will install
 - will be installing
 - will be installed
 - is installing
- Sarah and I next Friday at the beach.
 - are not spending
 - don't spend
 - will not have spent
 - not going to spend
- By 7.00 this evening, all the preparations
 - will be made
 - are going to be made
 - will have been made
 - are made
- By lunchtime, she for three hours.
 - will be studying
 - will have been studying
 - is studying
 - is about to study
- "I'll probably be studying all night."
"..... coming out for coffee then, will you?"
 - You will be
 - Will you be
 - Won't you be
 - You won't be
- By the time they arrive, he his homework.
 - will have finished
 - will have been finishing
 - was going to finish
 - will be finished
- I'll call you when what the decision is.
 - I am hearing
 - I will hear
 - I am going to hear
 - I hear
- I'm sure Eva will look great no matter
 - what will she wear
 - what she wears
 - what she is wearing
 - what she will wear

B. Below is an item from a newspaper. Some words are missing. Decide what they are. Choose from among the words below by marking the corresponding letter. (There are three words you won't need and three you may use twice.)

A will	B going	C about	D don't	E becoming
F by	G when	H be	I is	J being

A recent report on the BBC described changes happening to our climate: the weather throughout the world is (1) more difficult to predict and unfortunately the situation is (2) to get worse. Experts believe there (3) be more storms, causing more damage than ever before. The sea level has already begun to rise and some places are in danger, like the island of Tuvalu in the Pacific, which will (4) completely covered by water soon. According to one prediction, sea levels (5) have risen 50 cm (6) the year 2100. So what are we (7) to do about it? The problem (8) caused by our use of energy and, according to the Friends of the Earth, it will not (9) solved until we all take action to use less electricity, gas and oil. But I (10) imagine anyone is going to give up his car or air conditioning because a few experts are worried about what will happen in the future.

C. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- Our intention is to buy tickets for the concert as soon as possible. **are**
We for the concert as soon as possible.
- I'll come round once I finish my homework. **as**
I'll come round my homework.
- We have booked to play tennis from 5.00 to 6.00 p.m. tomorrow. **playing**
Between 5.00 and 6.00 p.m. tomorrow, tennis.
- They hope to finish writing all the invitations before the post office closes. **will**
They hope that all the invitations before the post office closes.
- Simon and Lucy are celebrating their sixth wedding anniversary on 28th December. **married**
By the end of the year, Simon and Lucy for six years.
- I have decided not to apply for that job; the salary is not good enough. **think**
I apply for that job; the salary is not good enough.
- They will open the new shopping centre next Tuesday evening. **be**
The new shopping centre next Tuesday evening.
- Look! The athletes are ready to start the race any moment. **about**
Look! The race – the athletes are ready.

D. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

SUMMER PLANS

Every summer, (1) as long as I can remember, my family has (2) a holiday all together. (3) matter where we go, we always enjoy ourselves. Five years (4) , we went camping in Wales. As (5) as we got to the campsite, it started raining, and it didn't stop for the whole week. Nevertheless, we had a great time.

This year, however, we (6) not be having a family holiday. My brother is (7) to spend the summer working at a hotel. (8) the end of the holiday season, he thinks he will have (9) enough money to buy a second-hand car. I'm going on an adventure holiday with some friends, so the second week of our school holidays will (10) spent in Scotland. We'll have the chance to try activities like canoeing and climbing there. Mum (11) to do a lot of climbing when she was younger and she thinks I'll enjoy it. In fact, when I showed her a leaflet about the holiday, she said it brought (12) memories of a similar holiday she had had as a teenager.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

LIVING CONDITIONS

accommodation	cottage	high-rise	mortgage	rural
apartment	countryside	holiday home	neighbourhood	slum
bungalow	demolish	homeless	populated	suburb
construct	furnished	industrial	renovate	surroundings
convert	hall of residence	location	resident	urban

1. People who live in the country rather than the town live in a area.
2. We used to live in the city centre, but now we live a little further out in the
3. There are many factories in that part of town. It's an zone.
4. The Waltons have their attic into an extra bedroom.
5. There are some very up-market shops in the where she lives.
6. Harry's new flat is in a central, so it's convenient as he works in the city.
7. The of the area protested against the plans for the new road.
8. They have started to many unsafe buildings in the city centre.
9. While their house was being built, they rented alternative
10. I was surprised by how many people live on the streets of London.
11. We had to ask the bank for a to buy our new house.
12. Simon rented a flat until he could afford to buy a bed, table and sofa.

SERVICES AND PLACES

car park	escalator	lift	public transport	town council
community centre	facilities	pedestrian crossing	sports complex	town hall
emergency services	health centre	pedestrian precinct	tourist information	welfare services

13. A shopping area where cars are not allowed is called a
14. We were stuck in the in the new shopping centre. The doors wouldn't open.
15. There are a lot of in our town, such as a swimming pool and public library.
16. They have all kinds of activities for young and old at the
17. We have a meeting with the mayor in the tomorrow.
18. There's nowhere to park near the main square – a needs to be built.
19. Visitors to the town can get all kinds of useful information at the office.
20. If you need the fire brigade or an ambulance, phone the

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. COMPOUND NOUNS Make compound nouns and complete the sentences in the following paragraph.

Tony and Linda Harrison live in Sydney, Australia. They have bought a little bungalow, not far from the (1) city An (2) estate helped them to find it. The bungalow has (3) air for the summer and (4) central for the winter, so it is really comfortable. There's a small garden in the front, with a (5) parking for their car. If they want to go into the (6) town, there's a bus stop just down the road. Beside the gate there is a wooden (7) letter Because they want to feel secure in the house, the Harrisons are putting a (8) burglar in every room. They are very pleased with their new home.

B. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. His flat is near the city centre. It's a very **comfortable** / **convenient** / **easy** location.
2. She lives on the fourth **floor** / **stair** / **level** of a very modern block of flats.
3. The kitchen in their house is very small. There's no **area** / **a room** / **room** for a washing machine in it.
4. It's very late. I think you should go **to your house** / **home** / **to your home** now.
5. They would like to **hire** / **rent** / **book** a house by the sea for the month of August.
6. The **interior** / **inner** / **internal** of the cottage is painted white.
7. They moved a few weeks ago. They now live on the **limit** / **edge** / **border** of town.
8. Lily is never lonely as she has lots of friends who live **near** / **nearly** / **nearby**.
9. We haven't felt safe in our house since we were **burgled** / **broken** / **stolen** last month.
10. They have a lovely holiday cottage in the mountains, surrounded by wonderful **scene** / **view** / **scenery**.

C. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs with *make* or *do*. You will need to use one of the verbs more than once.

do without • make of • make off with • make out • make up
make up for • make for • do away with • do with

1. Sally and Ruth had a terrible fight and didn't speak for a long time, but now they've
2. Can you see what's written on that sign? It's so dark that I can't it
3. We could a few plants in the entrance to our block of flats.
4. George some excuse for being late, but I didn't believe him.
5. We just don't know what to their decision to move house.
6. Thieves broke into our house last night and our computer.
7. I hope this present will my forgetting your birthday.
8. I wish they would local taxes; they are very expensive.
9. We got out of the car and the pedestrian precinct.
10. The town council has turned off the water. I'll have to a shower today.



D. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with a suitable word.

1. When the new furniture was delivered, we had to move things to **make** for it.
2. We used to live in the country, but now we live in a high-rise **of flats** near the city centre.
3. Judy's house is **on the** **of** Rose Street and Oak Street.
4. He was very warm and friendly and knew how to make me **at home**.
5. My cousin **has moved** recently. He now lives in a much nicer neighbourhood.
6. Unfortunately, their new neighbours **a lot of noise**.
7. The Alexanders **the housework** twice a week after work.
8. The children have to **their beds** before they go to school.
9. It doesn't very **long** to drive to our house in the country.
10. Our new house **a great view of** the sea.



Exam Practice

A. Match the comments (items 1-8) with the correct place, person or service (letters A-H) in the table below.

TABLE A			TABLE B	
1.		He found just the right home for us and advised us about mortgages too.	A.	emergency services
2.		We get on well with her and it's nice to be able to have a chat over the garden fence.	B.	pedestrian crossing
3.		My grandmother's a bit old to climb the stairs so the flat is in the right place for her.	C.	hall of residence
4.		They meet once a week to discuss local matters – it's up to them to make sure all the local services run properly.	D.	estate agent
5.		It was the cheapest accommodation available, and for a student that is important. It is also great to be together with others from the same college.	E.	public transport
6.		If you need them, you call 999 and they'll ask you if you need the police, ambulance or the fire brigade.	F.	ground floor
7.		It's the safest place – you should never just run across. The drivers here go so fast. Just press the button and wait for the signal.	G.	next-door neighbour
8.		It suits me because I don't drive and I can get a cheap monthly pass that lets me use the trains, buses and trams.	H.	town council

- B. WORD FORMATION** Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! When you have filled in all the blanks, read through the text and make sure that the paragraph makes sense.

KEEP DUNBURN CLEAN

The local (1) of the rural village of Dunburn, which has a (2) of just 1,500 people, are protesting against a plan to turn this (3) location into an (4) zone.

The local council recently made an (5) saying that an area outside the village had been sold and that in the near future the (6) of new factories would start.

The villagers are very (7) that these factories will spoil the scenery. They are also concerned that they will (8) the local animal life. They say it was (9) of the council to make this (10) without asking the local people for their opinion.

RESIDE
POPULATE
BEAUTY
INDUSTRY
ANNOUNCE
CONSTRUCT
WORRY
THREAT
RESPONSIBLE
DECIDE

- C. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE** Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

COTTAGE IN FRANCE

Fiona and Steven Sanders had always wanted to own a holiday (1) in the south of France. Five years ago, they bought a 17th-century cottage that was in danger of being (2) It was in a rural area, 15 kilometres away from the nearest town, and (3) a wonderful view of the surrounding countryside. Although the house was secluded, it was very (4) situated, as it was near a little village with a railway station. At first, the locals of the area were suspicious of their new (5), but they soon learned to accept them. Every holiday, the Sanders would (6) the south of France and their new house and spend all their time working on it. They added an extra bedroom (7) the ground floor so that there would be (8) for anyone who wanted to come and visit. The outside of the house was painted yellow, and they painted the interior white. (9) the back of the house they built a shady patio where they could sit in the evenings. Finally the house was finished, and the results (10) all the months of hard work. Fiona and Steven spent as much time as they could in their new house and soon (11) quite at home there. They certainly didn't have any difficulty in (12) all their family and friends to spend a few days with them!

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A housework | B home | C accommodation | D high-rise |
| 2. A damaged | B constructed | C renovated | D demolished |
| 3. A had | B was | C got | D made |
| 4. A comfortably | B conveniently | C closely | D suitably |
| 5. A facilities | B villagers | C neighbours | D builders |
| 6. A make up | B make | C make out | D make for |
| 7. A on | B in | C at | D for |
| 8. A area | B places | C room | D bedroom |
| 9. A In | B On | C At | D Next |
| 10. A made up for | B made up to | C did away with | D did without |
| 11. A lived | B moved | C fell | D felt |
| 12. A agreeing | B persuading | C talking | D accepting |

Review 3

A. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- They will be renovating the town hall until April. **finished**
They the town hall by April.
- The children borrowed books regularly from the public library. **used**
The children from the public library.
- They have decided to repaint the school this summer. **going**
The school this summer.
- The last time I saw them was in August 1997. **seen**
I August 1997.
- He will help his father wash the car and then he will go and play football. **once**
He will go and play football his father wash the car.
- Do you think we can fit any more chairs in the kitchen? **room**
Do you think any more chairs in the kitchen?
- I'm hungry! I'd like a sandwich. **do**
I'm hungry! I could a sandwich.
- You can easily drive to the next village in a few minutes. **long**
It doesn't to the next village.

B. **WORD FORMATION** Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

THE EIFFEL TOWER

One of the most famous (1) in the world must be the Eiffel Tower in Paris. It was (2) between 1887 and 1889 by Gustave Eiffel, whose design was the (3) entry in a competition for a new monument for the Paris exhibition held in 1889.

CONSTRUCT
BUILD
WIN

The huge iron tower was an (4) idea for its time and it was the (5) building in the world until the 1930s. It is (6) situated in an area called the Champs-de-Mars, and you get an amazing view of the (7) city from the top.

AMBITION
TALL
CENTRAL

Surprisingly, not everyone is impressed by the Eiffel Tower, and it has received a lot of (8) from many Parisians who think it is ugly and (9) But for the thousands of tourists who visit Paris every year, its (10) will always remain assured.

SURROUND
CRITICISE
ATTRACT
POPULAR

Review 3

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- "I'm going to the bank now."
"Really? with you."
 - I'm going to come
 - I'll come
 - I come
 - I will be coming
- "Who do you intend to complain to?"
"..... to the mayor."
 - I'm complaining
 - I complain
 - I will have complained
 - I'm going to complain
- This time next week, he his speech at the conference.
 - will be made
 - is making
 - will be making
 - is being made
- The engagement party by their parents.
 - will be organized
 - will organize
 - will be organizing
 - is organizing
- What time on Saturday night?
 - is the last bus going to leave
 - last bus leaving
 - last bus leaves
 - does the last bus leave
- She the day in the country tomorrow.
 - is spending
 - will have spent
 - will have been spending
 - spends
- By this evening, the escalator
 - will have repaired
 - will be repaired
 - will have been repaired
 - will be repairing
- you help me find a new apartment?
 - Do
 - Will
 - Have
 - Are
- Who the gift tomorrow?
 - is going to buy
 - goes to buy
 - has bought
 - buys
- "By the end of the summer, how long here?"
"Ten years, I think."
 - will you be living
 - will you have been living
 - are you living
 - do you live

VOCABULARY

- It can be difficult to find in the city.
 - mortgage
 - council
 - accommodations
 - location
- She quietly the answer to me.
 - mentioned
 - whispered
 - shouted
 - pronounced
- They live in a lovely area with beautiful houses and gardens.
 - residential
 - commercial
 - homeless
 - slum
- The are located outside the city.
 - rural
 - interior
 - surroundings
 - suburbs
- We the beds and then we went shopping.
 - prepared
 - made
 - did
 - laid
- The city offers many , such as a sports complex and shopping areas.
 - activities
 - service
 - communities
 - facilities
- They the time they'd lost by working all day Saturday.
 - did away with
 - brought up
 - made up for
 - got by
- We rented a house at the beach for our vacation.
 - demolished
 - populated
 - constructed
 - furnished
- The town has where cars are not allowed.
 - a pedestrian mall
 - an emergency service
 - an escalator
 - public transport
- They are to a new house next week.
 - renovating
 - moving
 - changing
 - renting



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: **A** We usually play basketball in the weekend.

B We usually play basketball at the weekend.

- 1 **A** We arrived to the train station very early.
B We arrived at the train station very early.
- 2 **A** You can have a great summer holiday on a Greek island.
B You can have a great summer holiday at a Greek island.
- 3 **A** Did you know that Fiona studied in Cambridge University?
B Did you know that Fiona studied at Cambridge University?
- 4 **A** All the students sat quietly at their desks working.
B All the students sat quietly on their desks working.
- 5 **A** I can't wait for the party at Friday night.
B I can't wait for the party on Friday night.
- 6 **A** Jill works between 8 to 4 every day.
B Jill works from 8 to 4 every day.
- 7 **A** The café is across the railway station.
B The café is opposite the railway station.
- 8 **A** Until John had finished washing the car, his clothes were all wet.
B By the time John had finished washing the car, his clothes were all wet.
- 9 **A** Frank will be working in the bank till the end of next week. Then he's retiring.
B Frank will be working in the bank by the end of next week. Then he's retiring.
- 10 **A** There was a plant in one corner of the room.
B There was a plant at one corner of the room.
- 11 **A** Please turn off all mobile phones while the performance.
B Please turn off all mobile phones during the performance.
- 12 **A** I cried at the end of the film.
B I cried in the end of the film.
- 13 **A** I've kept a place for you in front of the queue.
B I've kept a place for you at the front of the queue.
- 14 **A** They walked into the restaurant and chose a table near the window.
B They walked in the restaurant and chose a table near the window.
- 15 **A** I can see Peter. He's standing besides your cousin.
B I can see Peter. He's standing beside your cousin.
- 16 **A** She looked out of the window at her friends.
B She looked out from the window at her friends.
- 17 **A** Their new flat is in the third floor.
B Their new flat is on the third floor.
- 18 **A** Paris is most beautiful at the spring.
B Paris is most beautiful in the spring.
- 19 **A** Once the plane arrived in Athens, we got out quickly.
B Once the plane arrived at Athens, we got out quickly.
- 20 **A** They ran all the way till the park.
B They ran all the way to the park.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Prepositions of Time

PREPOSITION	USE	EXAMPLES
at	<p>a. with specific times</p> <p>b. with the following expressions: at the same time, at the age of, at the moment, at present, at night, etc.</p>	<p>He came at lunchtime at about 1.30. What are you doing at the weekend? We're going skiing at Christmas.</p> <p>We both arrived at the same time. She finished school at the age of 17. At the moment / At present, she is out. He came home late at night.</p>
in	<p>a. months, years, seasons, historical periods</p> <p>b. to show a time in the future</p> <p>c. with the following expressions: in the morning / evening / afternoon, in the future, in the past, etc.</p>	<p>They got married in March, in 1995. It is very cold there in winter. He lived in the 19th century.</p> <p>We will leave in five minutes' time. They are moving in a month.</p> <p>I work in the morning. He left at 7.00 in the evening. What will houses be like in the future?</p>
on	<p>a. dates</p> <p>b. days (or parts of days, when the day is mentioned)</p> <p>c. AmE: on + the weekend</p>	<p>She left for France on 10th July.</p> <p>I'll see you on Wednesday morning. He woke up early on Christmas Day. What are you doing on the weekend?</p>
during (+ noun) while (+ subject + verb)	to show a period of time in which something happened	<p>He fell ill during his visit to the town. He fell ill while he was visiting the town.</p>
by (+ noun or a specific time / date)	<p>a. means <i>not later than</i></p> <p>b. up to a certain point in time</p>	<p>They should be back by 6.30. By the evening, I was exhausted. By the time I finished, I was exhausted.</p>
by the time (+ subject + verb)	not later than the moment when something happens	
until / till	to show a state or situation which continues to a certain point in time and then stops	I worked until / till 9 o'clock last night.
not until	not before	I won't leave until I've written this report.
from ... to	to show the beginning and ending of a period of time AmE : from ... through	<p>She was a student from 1998 to 2001. The store is open from Monday through Friday.</p>
between	something happening in a period of time from one time / day / date to another	The doctor sees patients between 4 and 7 each evening.
at the beginning of / at the end of	before a noun	I'll see you at the beginning of next week. She is going into hospital at the end of the month.
in the beginning / in the end	before subject + verb	In the beginning , I hated maths. In the end , we decided to stay.
at first	happened at the beginning of a period of time	At first we planned to fly but it was too expensive.
at last	after a long time has passed	We waited for hours and at last our favourite singer came on stage.
in time	early enough, before the last moment	She got to the bus stop in time . They arrived just in time .
on time	at the planned time	Our plane left on time .

NOTES

- 1 We say: *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening but at night*. We say *in the night* when we refer to one specific night. He heard a noise *in the night*. (= during)
- 2 We do not use *at / in / on* before *next* and *last*. We're going away *next weekend*. I saw her *last week*.

Prepositions of Place

PREPOSITION	USE	EXAMPLES
at	a. before a noun to show a certain position b. with events or group activities c. places of study / institutions	Turn left at the next street. Jane was at a concert last night. He's studying at Oxford University.
in	a. position inside something b. with towns / countries c. with names of roads, streets, squares AmE: <i>on</i> + streets	The meeting will be in room 403. Are there still bears in northern Greece? There are hundreds of shops in Oxford Street. He has an apartment on 5th Avenue.
on	a particular place or position	London lies on the River Thames. Brighton is on the coast. The school is on the left .
at the front of / at the back of / in front of	before a noun to show position	He sits at the back of the class. The patio is at the front of the house. He waited in front of the cinema.
on the way (to)	in the middle of a journey from one place to another	The shop is on the way to school.
in (the) way	in a position which stops a person from moving freely or seeing clearly	Move your bike. It's in the / my way .

Other prepositions of place: *among, beside, between, near, next to, opposite*

It's very peaceful **beside** the pond **in** the garden. (place)

Prepositions that show movement: *to, into, across, around, along, through, up, down, past, towards, out of, off*

The children ran **into** the garden. (movement)

NOTES

- 1 We use *arrive in* with towns or countries. They **arrived in** Germany yesterday.
We use *arrive at* in all other situations. She **arrived at** the station. (**but**: He **arrived** home at 8.30.)
- 2 *Beside* is a preposition of place. I sat **beside** her on the bus.
Besides is a connector meaning *in addition to*. **Besides** being expensive, this dress is also ugly.

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.

1. We walked together till the car park and then separated.
.....
2. I expect that you will have finished your homework until 10 o'clock.
.....
3. By the time we arrived to the party, everyone was dancing.
.....
4. Last spring, we went to the United States during two weeks.
.....





Grammar Practice

A. PREPOSITIONS OF TIME Complete the following sentences with *at*, *in*, *on* or *by*.

1. My family always get together Easter, and Easter Sunday the children have great fun looking for the Easter eggs.
2. the beginning of the 20th century, family relationships were very formal. However, the 1960s, relationships had become more relaxed. the future, they will probably change again.
3. "What are you doing the weekend?"
"Well, Saturday morning I'm playing volleyball, lunchtime I'm meeting my friends and the evening I'm going to the cinema."
4. Pam's birthday is the 10th of July. Because her birthday is July, she usually has a barbecue the beach for her family and friends. That is the advantage of having a birthday the summer.
5. The train left time, 11 o'clock night, and arrived in Edinburgh early the morning.
6. Life must have been very difficult the past without computers. It was only the late 20th century, for example, that people began to have computers home.
7. He starred in his first film the age of 30. the time he celebrated his 40th birthday, he had won two Oscars.
8. the past, she was a well-known storyteller. Her first children's book will be published a few weeks' time.

B. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE Complete the following paragraphs by circling the correct preposition.

1. "Excuse me, can you tell me the way 1. *at* / *to* / *for* the post office?" "Certainly. It's 2. *at* / *in* / *on* the end of the 3. *next* / *near* / *opposite* street. You can't miss it; it's 4. *on* / *at* / *in* your left, 5. *across* / *opposite* / *next* the police station."



2. My brother Sam has just moved to a new flat 1. *in* / *at* / *along* the same street as me. Our street is very conveniently located because it is 2. *near* / *next* / *by* a supermarket and not far 3. *to* / *from* / *across* a public library. Sam's flat is 4. *by* / *in* / *at* the back of the building, so it is very quiet. I've brought him a lovely plant to put 5. *at* / *on* / *in* the corner of his new living room.

3. Yesterday, Judy spent the morning 1. *at* / *at* the / *in* the home and then went to visit a friend of hers 2. *at* / *in* / *on* hospital. Her friend's room was 3. *on* / *at* / *in* the end of a long corridor. She went in and sat down 4. *beside* / *besides* / *next* her friend and tried to cheer her up. At the end of her visit, Judy left the hospital and caught a bus at the bus stop 5. *next* / *in front* / *opposite* the hospital.



C. Complete the following sentences with *by*, *until (till)*, *at the end*, *in the end*, *in the beginning* or *at the beginning*.

1. It was a wonderful concert, and everyone applauded enthusiastically.
2., Tom found it very hard to speak Spanish but he soon became more confident.
3. It took us a long time, but we found the halls of residence.
4. Young people in Britain cannot get a driving licence they are 17.
5. It is impossible to make a decision we have all the facts.
6. If you want to come with me, you must be ready half past ten.
7. You have got 12 o'clock to finish the test.
8. She had written all the invitations to the party lunchtime.
9. Sarah arrived late so she wasn't there of the lesson.
10. It was a long hike, and of the day I was exhausted.
11. At first we didn't like our new teacher, but we got used to her.
12. They hope to have finished the puzzle the end of the day.



D. In the sentences below, one of the underlined words or phrases is incorrect. Mark which one and change the word or phrase to make it correct.

1. I expect to finish my project until midnight, and I'll give it to the teacher in the morning. The lesson starts at 10.
2. We saw John at the concert on last night, sitting between his brother and sister in the front row.
3. Queen Victoria ruled from 1837 to 1901, and during this time there were many changes in Britain. By she died, the population had risen from 26 million to 41 million, and there were train stations all over the country.
4. While I was in the way home, I saw a strange man coming towards me, so I quickly ran across the road.
5. My seat on the plane was besides the window. Jill sat on my right and Lucy was in front of us.



Exam Practice

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. Please move your bicycle as we can't get past it in the hall. **way**
Your in the hall – please move it!
2. The hotel we stayed at in Scotland was near the sea. **coast**
We stayed at a hotel which of Scotland.
3. We liked her in the beginning, but then we changed our minds. **first**
We, but then we changed our minds.
4. I had to wait for my brother to come home before I went to sleep. **until**
I couldn't go to sleep home.
5. They were confused, but after a while they realised what to do. **end**
They were confused, they realised what to do.
6. While they were visiting the town, they took lots of photographs. **during**
They took lots of photographs to the town.
7. I saw Brian a week ago. **since**
I haven't week.
8. By the time they got to the party, it was very late. **arrived**
By the time it was very late.

B. Read the advertisement for an electronic diary and fill in the missing words. Choose from the words in the table below. (There are two words you won't need and three that you may use more than once.)

A at	B in	C on	D to	E between
F time	G until	H during	I way	J of

The OL 100 is so useful that everyone will have one (1) a few years' time!

DIARY: Record the date and time of your appointment by speaking into the microphone (2) the left side of your OL 100. When you wake up (3) the morning, the OL 100 will remind you (4) all the appointments you have that day. You can set it to remind you (5) the day as often as you want: (6) the hour of your appointment, (7) the same time each day, or at different times on different days, for example (8) weekends.

LOCATION: Press the button marked "Location" and a map will appear. The red dot (9) the map shows you where you are. Your OL 100 can tell you how to get (10) any place (11) the country. Press the button marked "Directions" and say the name of the street and town. The OL 100 will give you directions. For example, you might hear: "Turn left (12) the next corner. The street you want is the third turning (13) the right, just past the school." If you get lost on the (14), the OL 100 senses this and warns you.

No more excuses for not being on (15) for appointments or for getting lost!



C. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

A WEEKEND BREAK

My friends and I had (1) working very hard so we decided to go away for the weekend. We had a long discussion about where we should go and in the (2) we agreed to visit the Channel Islands. We travelled down to Portsmouth, where the ferries leave from, (3) train. As the train was delayed, we almost missed our ferry. Luckily, though, we got to the port just in (4) to catch it. It didn't (5) long to reach the islands, and as soon as we got there, we made (6) the hotel. It was situated (7) a lovely location very (8) the beach. We went to bed late that first night and we didn't wake up (9) 10 o'clock the next day. That morning we took a bus tour (10) the island before having lunch in a restaurant near the sea. We spent Sunday morning (11) the beach, then caught the ferry back to Portsmouth. (12) the time we got home, we were all tired but happy.

USE YOUR GLOSSARY
WHEN WORKING ON THIS UNIT



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

APPLYING FOR A JOB

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| advertisement | career | employ | interview | personnel officer | salary |
| applicant | contract | experience | part-time | promotion | skills |
| apply | CV | firm | permanent | qualification | temporary |
| appointment | efficient | full-time | personal assistant | reference | train |

WANTED

Secretary to assist Managing Director of international company. Must be (1) and hard-working. (2) position, (hours 9-6). Attractive salary. Please send (3) and covering letter.

VACANCIES

Sales Assistants for (4) positions (Nov.-Jan.) at large department store.
Call 969-6963 to make an (5) for an (6)

Dear Sir / Madam,

I am writing in response to your (7) in the Evening News. I would like to (8) for the position of secretary.

I feel I am well suited for the job as I am very organised and willing to work hard. I have excellent computer (9) and I speak fluent French. I have four years' (10) working for a small (11), and I am interested in continuing my (12) in a company where there may be more prospects for (13)

I can provide a (14) from my employer if necessary. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

J. Roberts

EMPLOYMENT AND BUSINESS

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| benefit | colleague | employee | pension | supervisor |
| branch | company | management | profit | union |
| chairperson | director | overtime | reputation | workplace |

15. She received a good when she retired.
16. His company has an excellent for good service.
17. The called a strike to protest against the poor working conditions.
18. People who lose their jobs are entitled to receive unemployment
19. He set up a new business two years ago, and today he has 150 working for him.
20. She has a very pleasant personality and gets on well with her at work.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?
0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. OCCUPATIONS Circle the person you would NOT find working in the following places.

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| 1. a hospital | nurse, estate agent, surgeon, doctor, consultant |
| 2. a school | PE instructor, headmaster, secretary, greengrocer, caretaker |
| 3. a hotel | receptionist, farmer, chambermaid, porter, cook |
| 4. a shop | cashier, manager, assistant, lawyer, delivery boy |
| 5. a police station | inspector, teller, detective, constable, police officer |
| 6. an airport | flight attendant, pilot, customs officer, security guard, plumber |



B. SYNONYMS Choose a synonym or synonyms for the words in bold in the sentences below.

sacked • rise • out of work • exports • position
fired • human resources • imports

- The worker was **dismissed** for stealing money from the business. or
- Unfortunately, many people are **unemployed** at the moment.
- He is very pleased because he got a significant **increase** in salary.
- Her father has a very good **job** with a multinational company.
- Her firm **brings in** and **sends products to other countries**. and
- The **personnel** department will process your application.

C. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

- Simon gets up at 6 a.m. every morning to go to **job** / **work** / **employment**.
- In Britain men can **retire** / **resign** / **pension** at the age of 65, women at 60.
- She decided to leave her job and sent in a letter of **dismissal** / **notice** / **resignation**.
- George only **wins** / **earns** / **gains** £10,000 a year. It's not very much.
- Her mother is a teacher by **career** / **promotion** / **profession**.
- We need a reference from your previous **employee** / **employment** / **employer**.
- All applicants should have several years of **experience** / **experiences** / **experiment**.

D. PHRASAL VERBS Circle the phrasal verb with *set* or *put* which means the same as the word(s) in bold.

- As soon as he arrived at the office, he **started** tidying up his desk. (**set about** / **set back**)
- Her ability to speak French **makes her different** from the other secretaries. (**sets her back** / **sets her apart**)
- Their boss **makes** time for computer training for his employees. (**sets up** / **sets aside**)
- They woke up early and **started their journey** immediately after breakfast. (**set off** / **set up**)
- A fire broke out in the office block and **started** the fire alarm. (**set apart** / **set off**)
- The letter he received clearly **explained** his hours and salary. (**set aside** / **set out**)
- The speaker **explained** her ideas very well. (**put across** / **put away**)
- The fire brigade fought for hours to **stop** the fire in the chemical factory. (**put off** / **put out**)
- It must be difficult to **tolerate** someone who is so rude. (**put through** / **put up with**)
- All this equipment must be **tidied** before anyone can leave. (**put away** / **put out**)
- I'd like to speak to the managing director. Could you **connect me** to his secretary? (**put me off** / **put me through**)
- They had to **postpone** the opening ceremony because the building wasn't finished. (**put off** / **put across**)

E. **USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS** Complete the following sentences with one of the words below. You will need to use some of the words more than once. Make any necessary changes.

do • make • run • go • for • of • at • off

1. They are looking for a new manager who can **the company** efficiently.
2. Many people **were** **redundant** when the factory closed.
3. The workers are not satisfied with their conditions and have decided to **on strike**.
4. Sandra is **responsible** buying all the office equipment.
5. What do you **for a living**?
6. It is very difficult to **a living** nowadays without good qualifications.
7. They **business with** other firms all over Britain.
8. Last year, the company suffered a loss, but this year they hope to **a profit**.
9. My father is **in charge** the whole department.
10. Last Monday was a national holiday so they had the **day** work.
11. Do you think Clive is **capable** running the department? He seems quite disorganised.
12. You could be a salesman – you've always been **good** persuading other people.
13. My uncle has been **looking** **work** for several months now.
14. Julie finishes school this year so she has to **some decisions** about her future.



Exam Practice

A. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

TIP! Remember not to change the key word.

1. Your supervisor says you can work faster. **capable**
Your supervisor says faster.
2. Her brother has been unemployed for several weeks now. **work**
Her brother for several weeks now.
3. In her new job, she is responsible for the import and export department. **charge**
In her new job, she the import and export department.
4. This coffee comes from France. **imported**
This coffee France.
5. When the interviews were over, she started to contact all the applicants. **set**
When the interviews were over, she all the applicants.
6. What kind of work do you do, Peter? **living**
What do , Peter?
7. The employees are refusing to work in protest against working conditions. **strike**
The employees in protest against working conditions.
8. They postponed the meeting because so many members of staff were absent. **put**
The meeting because so many members of staff were absent.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

CAREERS

Work should be a meaningful and (1) part of one's life. The (2) of a career is, therefore, one of the most serious decisions anyone can (3) It is important to take into consideration your (4) and personal preferences. For instance, adventurous people who enjoy an outdoor life shouldn't choose a (5) in an office. If you like to work alone, you shouldn't look for employment which requires working with the public. If you enjoy working with people, you may like a career in a (6) such as human resources. You should (7) about finding out as much as possible about your intended career before you finish your education. It may take time to (8) for the career you want. Don't accept a job if you haven't got a clue what your working conditions will be or how much you can expect to (9) Future disappointment can be avoided by talking to professionals with (10) in the career you are interested (11) as well as visiting different (12) and institutions.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A comfortable | B productive | C exported | D efficient |
| 2. A thought | B advice | C choice | D interest |
| 3. A do | B set | C have | D make |
| 4. A facilities | B skills | C references | D contracts |
| 5. A work | B job | C pension | D business |
| 6. A branch | B department | C workplace | D firm |
| 7. A set | B work | C look | D find |
| 8. A run | B practise | C train | D learn |
| 9. A bring | B earn | C obtain | D win |
| 10. A reputation | B employment | C experience | D experiment |
| 11. A in | B at | C on | D over |
| 12. A companions | B communities | C colleagues | D companies |

C. Guess what people the clues in Table A describe and solve the acrostic puzzle by completing Table B. The first one is done for you.

PEOPLE AT WORK

TABLE A	
1.	This person worked for many years but has now retired.
2.	This person is in charge of a department in a large company.
3.	This person has to check that others are doing their jobs properly.
4.	These are the people you work with.
5.	This person is a doctor who performs operations in a hospital.
6.	This person works in an office and deals with letters, appointments and arrangements for the boss.
7.	This person greets all the people who come into a hotel or an office building.
8.	This person looks after a building and makes sure everything works properly.
9.	This person helps customers.

TABLE B															
						1.	P	E	N	S	I	O	N	E	R
							2.	M							
						3.		P							
						4.		L							
				5.				O							
6.								Y							
						7.		E							
						8.		E							
						9.		S							

Review 4

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

A UNIQUE EXPERIMENT

Several years ago, the well-known ice-cream company Ben & Jerry's set (1) shop in Harlem, one of the toughest neighbourhoods in New York. Ben & Jerry's had already opened hundreds of branches, but this one was rather unusual because its (2) were people who had (3) been homeless. So far the shop has done well, so Ben & Jerry's unique (4) has been a great success. The owners of Ben & Jerry's ice-cream chain believe that by providing (5) for these people, they are demonstrating their support for the local (6) In Harlem the shop workers live in a shelter which also serves as a drug-crisis centre that is (7) with the profits from the shop. The shop is part of a local project to help people who need assistance by providing them (8) employment so that they can (9) their own living. For many of them, the shop provides the first (10) they have had to rebuild their lives and find a solution to their problems. By (11) them an occupation, Ben & Jerry's has given them (12) their self-respect.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A off | B out | C up | D back |
| 2. A residents | B applicants | C employers | D employees |
| 3. A previously | B before | C past | D earlier |
| 4. A experience | B experiment | C efficiency | D management |
| 5. A job | B profession | C employment | D business |
| 6. A communication | B complex | C facilities | D community |
| 7. A run | B controlled | C directed | D increased |
| 8. A for | B to | C by | D with |
| 9. A gain | B earn | C reach | D achieve |
| 10. A thing | B occasion | C time | D chance |
| 11. A training | B suggesting | C offering | D applying |
| 12. A back | B with | C about | D away |

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY

Oxford University, which is 80 kilometres from London, is one of the oldest universities (1) the world. It (2) established in the middle of the 12th century and has been an important centre of study ever (3) The university is not one building, but consists (4) 39 different colleges. Many of these colleges are very old and beautiful, and are famous (5) their "quads" – areas of grass and trees around which the colleges are built. There is a (6) of competition to get into Oxford, and admission (7) based on the results of a special entrance examination. The colleges provide halls of residence for the students, though many prefer to stay in rented accommodation. Students riding through Oxford (8) their bikes, dressed in traditional black academic gowns, are a common sight in the town. Oxford (9) to be a place where only the rich studied, but today scholarships (10) available to give financial help to outstanding students, and young people from (11) over the world come to complete their education there. It must be a wonderful experience to study (12) such a university.

Review 4

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- I arrived the office and opened my mail.
 - in
 - to
 - at
 - into
- The new hospital in front of the station.
 - is building
 - will be built
 - has built
 - had built
- Child labor was common the beginning of the 20th century.
 - at
 - for
 - on
 - during
- Jack's desk is to Simon's.
 - beside
 - besides
 - behind
 - next
- "Are you free on Friday evening?"
"I'm afraid not. volleyball."
 - I'm playing
 - I play
 - I'll play
 - I'll have been playing
- We walked the library together.
 - until
 - till
 - to
 - in
- The office building is City Hall and the train station.
 - among
 - between
 - across
 - opposite of
- "Which job did you finally decide to take?"
"..... the end, I decided to take the part-time one."
 - On
 - By
 - At
 - In
- By the time their boss arrived, the missing papers
 - were found
 - will have been found
 - have been found
 - had been found
- "Did they while they were in high school?"
"Yes, I think so."
 - met
 - meet
 - meeting
 - have met

VOCABULARY

- The speaker is ill, so the talk has been until next week.
 - set aside
 - made for
 - put off
 - brought back
- She has job in a lawyer's office this summer.
 - a temporary
 - a permanent
 - an overtime
 - a capable
- He made with the director of the company.
 - an appointment
 - an application
 - a business
 - an interview
- The bank operates in most major cities.
 - departments
 - branches
 - workplaces
 - apartments
- A small fire the fire alarm in the office.
 - make up
 - set off
 - bring about
 - put out
- They their products to countries all over the world.
 - direct
 - retire
 - import
 - export
- The workers on strike yesterday.
 - did
 - made
 - went
 - ran
- She \$30,000 a year.
 - earns
 - wins
 - makes out
 - achieves
- He is now 70 and gets a from the government.
 - mortgage
 - pension
 - contract
 - profit
- They asked me what I for a living.
 - worked
 - earned
 - made
 - did



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A I can to come out with you tonight.

B I can come out with you tonight.

- 1 A The school rules say that we don't have to come late to school.
B The school rules say that we mustn't come late to school.
- 2 A I'm sure we will be able to have lunch with you tomorrow.
B I'm sure we can be able to have lunch with you tomorrow.
- 3 A The window is broken. The burglar had to get in through it.
B The window is broken. The burglar must have got in through it.
- 4 A There's no school tomorrow, so you mustn't get up early, must you?
B There's no school tomorrow, so you don't have to get up early, do you?
- 5 A She needs to think about her future.
B She must to think about her future.
- 6 A May you open the door for me, please?
B Can you open the door for me, please?
- 7 A Shall I pour you a drink?
B Must I pour you a drink?
- 8 A Luckily, I could finish my homework on time.
B Luckily, I was able to finish my homework on time.
- 9 A The car can be parked behind the hotel.
B The car can park behind the hotel.
- 10 A We needn't do the exercise.
B We needn't to do the exercise.
- 11 A You slept late this morning, so you can't have been tired already!
B You slept late this morning, so you can't be tired already!
- 12 A We may be going to Paris this summer.
B We may go to Paris this summer.
- 13 A We would visit him because he is ill.
B We should visit him because he is ill.
- 14 A We should have sent her a postcard; it would have made her very happy.
B We should be sent her a postcard; it would have made her very happy.
- 15 A It could have been delivered the parcel while we were out.
B The parcel could have been delivered while we were out.
- 16 A They must have gone without us.
B They can have gone without us.
- 17 A He can't have lost his keys again.
B He mustn't have lost his keys again.
- 18 A You had to tell me you felt ill.
B You should have told me you felt ill.
- 19 A I would have come to the meeting, but nobody told me about it.
B I must have come to the meeting, but nobody told me about it.
- 20 A You couldn't have taken the train; it's cheaper by bus.
B You shouldn't have taken the train; it's cheaper by bus.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Modals

MODAL	USE	EXAMPLES
can	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. general ability or possibility in the present or future b. making a request (informal) c. giving permission (informal) 	<p>He can play the violin. We can deliver that for you. Can you lend me some money? You can have my book for a few days.</p>
can't	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. something impossible or hard to believe b. inability 	<p>It can't be true. He can't be home. He isn't answering the phone. I'm afraid I can't come tonight.</p>
could	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. general ability in the past (past form of can) b. possibility in the present / future (less certain than can) c. a polite request d. a suggestion 	<p>He could write before he started school. They said they could help us. They could be outside in the garden. Could we borrow your newspaper? You could tell her you're sorry. I couldn't find my glasses. That couldn't be Madonna, could it? She may send us a postcard. May I use your phone?</p>
couldn't	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. inability in the past b. an impossibility in the present 	<p>You may leave work early today.</p>
may	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a future possibility b. making a polite request (formal, used with pronouns I or we only) c. giving permission (formal) 	<p>It might rain later. They might not come till tomorrow. He told us that he might go to the party. They say it will rain this weekend. Of course we'll do that for you. Will you please be quiet? Would you help me write this letter? Every summer they would go abroad. She told him she would remember him. We should get up now. It's late. He should consult a lawyer. What do you think? Should we set the table for dinner? They ought to be here by 5.00 p.m. She should phone in a minute or two. The teacher said you must work harder. You must take your medicine. He passed his exam. He must be pleased. You must try that new shampoo. You mustn't smoke in this room. She must not be home yet. She isn't answering the phone. (BrE: She can't be home yet ...) Shall I carry your case for you? We shall do our best to come to the party. You needn't get up early today. (= You don't have to get up early today.)</p>
might	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a possibility in the present or future (less certain than may) b. past form of may 	
will	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a future certainty or prediction b. willingness / a spontaneous decision c. a request 	
would	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a polite request b. repeated past action c. past form of will 	
should / ought to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. an obligation b. advice c. a polite suggestion when unsure of the answer d. almost certain prediction – what we expect to happen 	
must	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a strong necessity b. an obligation c. almost certainty d. a strong recommendation 	
mustn't	<p>a prohibition</p> <p>AmE: <i>must not</i> is used for certainty with negative statements</p>	
shall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a polite suggestion or offer of help (with pronouns I or we as the subject) b. future (with pronouns I or we as the subject – not common) 	
needn't	<p>lack of necessity (<i>don't have to</i>)</p>	

Semi-modals, Modal Perfects

SEMI-MODAL

be able to

- USE**
- a. general ability, replaces *can* (can be expressed in all tenses and after *may, might, would, should, etc.*)
 - b. a specific past ability / managing to do something despite difficulty (*could* is impossible in this case)

EXAMPLES

He is able to help us tomorrow.
She should be able to buy a car soon.

They were able to find the street although they didn't have a map.
 (not: *They could find ...*)

have to / don't have to

an obligation or necessity (can be expressed in all tenses)

I will have to go soon.
She doesn't have to work this evening.

MODAL PERFECT

must have + past participle

when we are certain about a past action (positive statements)
AmE: *must not have* is used for negative statements

EXAMPLES

John went to bed early. He must have been tired.
She didn't eat much. She must not have been hungry.

can't have + past participle

when we are sure that something did not happen

She can't have forgotten to send you an invitation; I gave her your address.

may / might / could have + past participle

when we are guessing what happened in the past

Sue hasn't arrived yet. She may have missed the bus.

could have + past participle

when we had the ability to do something in the past but did not do it

We could have gone on holiday last month, but we didn't feel like it.

should have / ought to have + past participle

- a. when advice was not followed
- b. when expectations were not fulfilled

You should have done your homework instead of watching TV.

We ought to / should have received the cheque by now.

would have + past participle

willingness to do something which wasn't done

I would have bought the CD, but I didn't have enough money.

will have + past participle (Future Perfect)

- a. an action that will be completed by some point in the future
- b. certainty about something which has already happened

By this time next week, I will have had my interview for the job.

I expect Tim will have heard about his exam results by now.

needn't have + past participle

when something was done that was not necessary

I needn't have taken an umbrella as it didn't rain.

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



1. Don't worry – you mustn't remind me; I'll remember what to do.

.....

2. Despite his injury, he could finish the race.

.....

3. She had to phone us when she arrived but she forgot.

.....

4. You could do it if you had really tried.

.....

5. They mustn't have demolished that house. It was lovely!

.....



Grammar Practice

A. Match each phrase with one which best explains its meaning.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. They might have lost our address. | a. It was possible but they didn't. |
| 2. They don't have to pay. | b. It's against the rules. |
| 3. They shouldn't have done that. | c. Maybe they did. |
| 4. They could have caught an earlier flight. | d. It wasn't necessary. |
| 5. They can't be planning to close the factory. | e. It's a good idea. |
| 6. They needn't have bought more food. | f. It's not necessary. |
| 7. They mustn't use the equipment. | g. I'm sure that's not true. |
| 8. They ought to retire. | h. It was wrong to do that. |

B. Circle the correct reply.

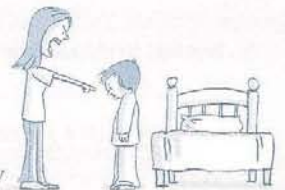
- They should arrive soon, shouldn't they? **I expect so. / Thanks. I'd like that.**
- Was Grace able to repair the machine? **Yes, she managed it. / Yes, she can.**
- May I leave at five o'clock? **It's possible. / Of course.**
- Did you have to stay? **Yes, they made us. / Yes, we should.**
- Could they come another time? **Yes, that's a good idea. / Yes, they did.**
- Shall I call a doctor? **No, you won't. / No, I'll be OK.**

C. Complete the following paragraphs with the modal perfect form of the verb in brackets. You may need to use the negative form.

1. I wonder what I've done with my maths book. I can't find it anywhere! I
 (1) (could put) it in my bag because it wasn't there when I got home. I was reading it at the bus stop so I think that I
 (2) (must leave) it on the bus. That's the only explanation I can think of. How (3) (could be) so careless? I suppose that some kind person (4) (might find) it and handed it in to the lost property office. I
 (5) (would go) there after dinner to make enquiries, but I had to study for French. I'll go tomorrow.



2. I feel bad about my brother. Yesterday when I was babysitting for him, I
 (1) (should speak) so angrily, but he was being so annoying! He (2) (need argue) about going to bed. That wasn't necessary. My parents (3) (would give in) to him if they'd been home. I (4) (could tell) them what happened but I decided not to. Oh dear! I
 (5) (ought phone) Aunt Sheila to say happy birthday but I forgot. I'll do it now.



D. Rewrite the following sentences using the modal or the modal perfect form of the word given. You may need to use the negative form.

1. He didn't have to come so early; nobody is here yet. **need**
.....
2. Is it possible that he spoke to her this morning? **could**
.....
3. Perhaps they are working outside in the garden. **may**
.....
4. She intended to go to the film if she had the time. **would**
.....
5. I'm sure she isn't ill; she was fine when I spoke to her five minutes ago. **can**
.....
6. You were wrong to shout at your parents. **should**
.....
7. It has been impossible for me to find the time to write. **able**
.....
8. The pupils in this school are required to wear a uniform. **have**
.....
9. There is a possibility that the plane has already left. **might**
.....
10. I'm sure the cake has been eaten. **must**
.....



Exam Practice

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. It was wrong of them to take the car without asking for permission first. **shouldn't**
They the car without asking for permission first.
2. It's a pity that they didn't think of that sooner. **ought**
They of that sooner.
3. Children, shall I make something special for dinner tonight? **like**
Children, make something special for dinner tonight?
4. I'm sure that Robert forgot to post the letter. **have**
Robert to post the letter.
5. Excuse me, would it be possible for me to have a look at your newspaper? **could**
Excuse me, at your newspaper?
6. They couldn't finish the exercise because they didn't have time. **able**
They the exercise because they didn't have time.
7. The use of mobile phones is forbidden on the plane. **must**
Mobile phones on the plane.
8. I don't believe that Richard stole your camera. **can't**
Richard your camera.

B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. He law; he hasn't decided yet.
 - a. should study
 - b. can have study
 - c. may study
 - d. might to study
2. You spend so much money on clothes.
 - a. couldn't
 - b. aren't able
 - c. wouldn't
 - d. shouldn't
3. put out your cigarette?
 - a. Would you please
 - b. May you please
 - c. Might you please
 - d. Shall you please
4. She the bus to work yesterday because her car broke down.
 - a. should taken
 - b. must take
 - c. had to take
 - d. would have take
5. Sally be asleep; all the lights in her house are on.
 - a. won't
 - b. can't
 - c. wouldn't
 - d. needn't
6. I'm not sure why Jane's not at work today; she
 - a. would be ill
 - b. should be ill
 - c. can be ill
 - d. might be ill
7. If nobody knows how to use a computer, a course
 - a. should to be organised
 - b. ought to be organised
 - c. might to be organised
 - d. could organise
8. They the restaurant although they had been given the wrong address.
 - a. were able to find
 - b. could to find
 - c. ought to find
 - d. can't have to find
9. We have plenty of time; we
 - a. shouldn't rush
 - b. mustn't rush
 - c. don't have to rush
 - d. ought to not rush
10. I an umbrella. It won't rain.
 - a. don't need to take
 - b. needn't to take
 - c. wasn't able to take
 - d. haven't to take
11. to the theatre tonight?
 - a. Ought we go
 - b. Shall we go
 - c. Would we go
 - d. Are we go
12. She looked everywhere for her glasses but she them.
 - a. needn't find
 - b. wouldn't find
 - c. won't have find
 - d. couldn't find

C. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TIP! If you fill a space with a verb, check that the tense is correct and that the verb agrees with the subject.

GENIUSES

You don't have to be brilliant (1) school to be a genius later in life. The famous British prime minister, Sir Winston Churchill, hated school and was a very poor student. His family finally decided that he should (2) sent to Sandhurst, a military academy. He had (3) sit the entrance exam three times before he (4) accepted. Many years (5) , in 1940, he became prime minister and led the country to victory in the Second World War. Such an achievement (6) have been very satisfying for him after his problematic schooldays.

Another genius (7) did badly at school was Albert Einstein. As an adult, he became famous for his theory of relativity and was undoubtedly one of the greatest scientists of all time. The only subject Einstein (8) actually do well at school was maths; it can't have been much fun for him spending most of the schoolday doing subjects he disliked.

Just because a pupil can pass exams does not mean he (9) be successful in later life. Formal qualifications are useful, but life skills like teamwork (10) equally important to success. Perhaps such skills (11) to be taught in schools. Certainly more could be (12) to prepare students for a successful working life.

TEST YOURSELF



Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

EDUCATION

absent	cheat	expel	primary school	secondary school
attend	course	fee	punishment	special education
boarding school	discipline	nursery	qualification	state school
certificate	evening class	present	scholarship	strict

Bill: Let's (1) in the test – we can help each other with the answers.

Will: No way! Mrs Smith believes in strict (2) If she catches us she'll give us a horrible (3) We might even be (4)

Mandy: Which school do you (5) ?

Sandy: I go to Broadside School for Girls.

Mandy: That's a private school, isn't it? You're lucky your parents can afford the (6)

Sandy: Oh, they don't have to pay – I got a (7)

Pam: I'm learning Italian in my spare time – I go to an (8) every Wednesday after work.

Sam: Do you get a (9) at the end of the course?

Pam: Yes, if I pass the test. But I've been (10) a couple of times and I missed some important lessons.

LEARNING AND TESTING

assess	gifted	learning disability	memorise	revise	syllabus
compulsory	graduate	lecturer	optional	schooldays	term
degree	illiterate	literacy	report	staff	tutor

- In British schools, English and maths are subjects, while other subjects are optional.
- Their son is a very child; he is a brilliant pupil at school.
- An person cannot read or write.
- They try to the pupils continuously and report their progress to their parents.
- She is going to from university this summer. We are going to the ceremony.
- My sister studied modern languages at university and was awarded her last year.
- There are three in the school year. They end in December, April and July.
- Our literature teacher used to make us very long poems. It was difficult.
- Twice a year, the pupils get which their parents have to sign.
- They changed the in my literature class recently; we have a wider choice of books now.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. PREPOSITIONS Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition.

- I. 1. Steven has **benefited** greatly the education he received.
2. I am not **in favour** children leaving home and going to boarding school.
3. The pupils came in quickly and sat down **their desks**.
4. I find it difficult to **concentrate** my work when the TV is on.
5. You are **capable** passing the exam if you do enough work.
6. You should **take advantage** the opportunity to go to college.
7. Victor was **absent** school today because he has flu.
8. Jennifer is very **good** science.

II. Some of the following sentences contain a word that should not be there. If a sentence is correct, put a tick (✓) after it. If it is incorrect, circle the extra word.

1. The teacher explained to us that our parents had to sign our reports.
2. He answered to all the headmaster's questions.
3. The bell rang and the pupils entered into the classroom.
4. Our teacher has lots of rules and expects us to obey to them.
5. The students listened carefully to everything the lecturer said.
6. The teacher pointed to the blackboard and told to us to copy the exercise.
7. James asked the teacher if he would explain him the meaning of the word.
8. The teacher allowed to the pupils to leave early.



B. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. Our history teacher **learned** / **taught** / **explained** us a lot of interesting facts.
2. John's mother is going to evening classes to **know** / **speak** / **learn** French.
3. The students are **studying** / **giving** / **sitting** a very important exam on Thursday.
4. Pat's parents are very pleased with the **mark** / **point** / **degree** she got in her test.
5. The teacher told the pupils to **rise** / **raise** / **lift** their hands if they knew the answer.
6. It doesn't matter if you **are** / **do** / **have** right or wrong; just guess the answer.
7. Jack was very upset that he **passed** / **failed** / **cheated** his geography exam.
8. He's having problems with maths, so his parents are getting him a private **professor** / **trainer** / **tutor**.

C. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with a suitable verb.

1. My parents insist that I my **homework** before I watch TV.
2. The teacher thinks that I am careless and too many **mistakes**.
3. The teacher told us to **attention** to what she had to say.
4. Maths was very boring today; we had to lots of **exercises**.
5. His parents hope that he will more **progress** this term.
6. The pupils really like the new teacher and **their best** in her class.
7. Susie has decided to more of **an effort** at university this year.
8. The students find the lectures very interesting and plenty of **notes**.

D. PHRASAL VERBS Circle the correct phrasal verb with *look* to complete the following sentences.

- When he *looks back on* his schooldays, he is a very good pupil / has lots of happy memories.
- It is wrong to *look down on* pupils who get low marks / are ill and off school.
- Look out!* The teacher is *taking us on* a trip tomorrow / is in a bad mood.
- It took me ages to do my French homework because I had to *look up* so many words in the dictionary / *my work carefully* for mistakes.
- I *looked after* the Taylors' children *but I couldn't find them* / while the Taylors were at the parents' meeting.
- I *looked* everywhere for my books and *finally found them under my bed* / because I knew where they were.
- The pupils are *looking forward to* the end of term because they *find the holidays boring* / *don't like school*.
- We *looked up to* Mrs Farmer because she was a good teacher / by making fun of her behind her back.



Exam Practice

- A. Below is part of a leaflet from a charity that supports educational programmes in developing countries. Some words are missing. Choose the appropriate word (A, B or C) with which to fill in the gaps.

TIP! Pay attention to the layout of the text and the pictures. They will help you tell what kind of text you are reading so you can understand it better.



Action For Education

In the developing world, millions of children are unable to (1) from a primary education. An estimated 104 million children worldwide do not (2) school. As a result, many of them will remain (3) , making it difficult, if not impossible, for them to (4) in life.

Some Reasons Why

- Education is not always free. Poor families cannot afford to pay school (5)
- Children in developing countries often have to (6) to help support their families.
- Children in rural areas may not have a school (7) Rather than travel miles on foot, they stay at home. However, progress is being (8) – the number of out-of-school children fell 4% (9) 1999 and 2004. But there is still a lot that needs to be done. As well as making sure children stay in school, millions of adults need to be (10) basic literacy skills.

With our help, and action from governments, more people will have access to a basic human right – knowledge.

1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A allow	<input type="checkbox"/>	B enter	<input type="checkbox"/>	C benefit
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A pass	<input type="checkbox"/>	B attend	<input type="checkbox"/>	C assess
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A inconsiderate	<input type="checkbox"/>	B optional	<input type="checkbox"/>	C illiterate
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A get on	<input type="checkbox"/>	B get down	<input type="checkbox"/>	C get out
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A price	<input type="checkbox"/>	B fees	<input type="checkbox"/>	C value
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A work	<input type="checkbox"/>	B employ	<input type="checkbox"/>	C qualify
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A nearly	<input type="checkbox"/>	B nearer	<input type="checkbox"/>	C nearby
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A done	<input type="checkbox"/>	B made	<input type="checkbox"/>	C taken
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A from	<input type="checkbox"/>	B beside	<input type="checkbox"/>	C between
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A taught	<input type="checkbox"/>	B learnt	<input type="checkbox"/>	C studied

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. Our tutor never let us eat during his seminar. **allow**
Our tutor did during his seminar.
2. The headmaster told the pupils to listen carefully to his announcement. **attention**
The headmaster told the pupils his announcement.
3. All the students admired the new lecturer. **looked**
All the students the new lecturer.
4. His parents are against sending him to a boarding school. **favour**
His parents are him to a boarding school.
5. They made every effort to pass the exam. **best**
They to pass the exam.
6. We are very excited about going on the school trip next week. **forward**
We on the school trip next week.
7. If you work harder, you can get better marks. **capable**
You better marks if you work harder.
8. She is qualified for the job. **necessary**
She has for the job.

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! Be prepared to change the form of the word to make a compound noun.

THE GOOD OLD DAYS

School today is very different from how it was 50 years ago.

Recently my grandfather told us about his (1) and it was fascinating. In those days, there were no (2) subjects; everything was compulsory.

SCHOOL
OPTION

The first thing the teacher did every morning was to check (3), and you had to bring a note from your parents explaining your (4) if you had been off school. The pupils had to (5) long lists of things and would be given a severe (6) if, for example, they forgot the lines of a poem.

ATTEND
ABSENT
MEMORY
PUNISH

Back then, there was no informal (7) and pupils sat very hard exams three times a year. (8) before an exam was done at home, not in class. Grandfather was quite a (9) pupil and studied mathematics. He completed his teacher (10) in 1950 and taught maths until he retired.

ASSESS
REVISE

GIFT
TRAIN

Review 5

A. Use the words in Table A to complete the sentences in Table B so that they have the meaning indicated in Table C. (Use each item in Table A only once. There are two you won't need.)

TABLE A				
A needn't	B can't	C ought to	D shouldn't have	E won't have
F shall	G could	H be able to	I must have	J had to

TABLE B		TABLE C
1.	Your project be about any of the countries in Europe. It's up to you.	<i>talking about possibility</i>
2.	Somebody taken our newspaper by mistake.	<i>saying what we believe to be true about an action in the past</i>
3.	They arrived yet. It takes more than an hour to drive there from here.	<i>making a logical assumption</i>
4.	You come to tomorrow's lecture as you've already heard it.	<i>saying something is unnecessary</i>
5.	I'm sorry I couldn't make it last night but I babysit.	<i>talking about an obligation</i>
6.	It's her birthday tomorrow – we really buy her a present.	<i>talking about an obligation or future intention</i>
7.	Do you think you'll cope with so many classes?	<i>talking about someone's capabilities</i>
8.	The dog have eaten the pie, so where is it?	<i>saying we think something was impossible</i>

B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- It's possible that they didn't hear the teacher. **may**
They the teacher.
- The teacher gave us a letter which listed the rules for the competition. **set**
The teacher gave us a letter which for the competition.
- Maybe Kate can help you tomorrow. **able**
Kate might tomorrow.
- I'm sure a holiday would do the whole family good. **benefit**
I'm sure the whole family a holiday.
- My French tutor has really helped me to improve. **progress**
I in French thanks to my tutor.
- It's not necessary to wear a suit and tie to the office. **have**
You a suit and tie to the office.
- Robin thinks he is better than people who have fewer qualifications than he does. **looks**
Robin who have fewer qualifications than he does.
- Janice did not come to school yesterday because she had an interview. **absent**
Janice yesterday because she had an interview.

Review 5

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- The children to visit their grandfather more often.
 - must
 - would
 - able
 - ought
- She to work longer hours than she does today.
 - was used
 - used
 - would
 - could
- "What did the teacher say to you?"
"He said yesterday's homework more carefully."
 - should do
 - should be done
 - should have been done
 - should have done
- You read the whole book tonight. If you read it by Monday, that will be fine.
 - needn't
 - don't need
 - don't have
 - mustn't
- "Why didn't you go on the trip on Saturday?"
"Because I finish my geography project."
 - must
 - must have
 - had to
 - would have to
- "You were angry with Susie, weren't you?"
"Yes, she out last night without telling me."
 - shouldn't have gone
 - couldn't go
 - wouldn't have gone
 - shouldn't go
- Last year they find the time to take an evening class, but not this year.
 - might
 - could have
 - could
 - were able to
- He the books with him; they're not here.
 - must take
 - must have taken
 - couldn't have taken
 - can't take
- they arrive, you should be ready to leave.
 - Before
 - Until
 - By the time
 - By
- She 60! She looks much younger.
 - couldn't be
 - might not be
 - mustn't be
 - may not be

VOCABULARY

- He went to and only came home for vacations like Christmas and Easter.
 - evening class
 - elementary school
 - high school
 - boarding school
- They enjoy their English classes at school and to them with great pleasure.
 - look forward
 - look up
 - look down
 - look back
- Two students tried to on the test but they were caught.
 - blame
 - cheat
 - assess
 - excuse
- The boys were from school because of their bad behavior.
 - expelled
 - dismissed
 - fired
 - punished
- My sister her final exams last week.
 - reviewed
 - made
 - gave
 - took
- All her children are very musicians.
 - gifted
 - efficient
 - responsible
 - literate
- She the word in her dictionary.
 - took down
 - set down
 - looked up
 - got over
- You should take of the chance to go to summer school.
 - benefit
 - advantage
 - control
 - care
- He has job as a college lecturer.
 - an unskilled
 - a graduate
 - a qualified
 - a part-time
- Sally this school from 1990 to 1996.
 - learned
 - taught
 - attended
 - went



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A The new table was deliver yesterday.

B The new table was delivered yesterday.

- 1 A The windows are being cleaned by a window cleaner once a month.
B The windows are cleaned by a window cleaner once a month.
- 2 A This house was built with my grandparents in 1952.
B This house was built by my grandparents in 1952.
- 3 A They predict that a cure for cancer will be found soon.
B They predict that a cure for cancer will find soon.
- 4 A Tomorrow at 9.30 a.m. the pupils will be being examined.
B Tomorrow at 9.30 a.m. the pupils will be examined.
- 5 A French is not a difficult language to learn.
B French is not a difficult language to be learned.
- 6 A The book is going to publishing next week.
B The book is going to be published next week.
- 7 A She was seen by someone at the cinema.
B She saw by someone at the cinema.
- 8 A All of a sudden, he was appeared in front of me.
B All of a sudden, he appeared in front of me.
- 9 A Tickets for the concert can purchase at the box office.
B Tickets for the concert can be purchased at the box office.
- 10 A They are said to be very athletic.
B They say to be very athletic.
- 11 A Have they been told the pupils that there will be no school tomorrow?
B Have the pupils been told that there will be no school tomorrow?
- 12 A When we arrived, the baby was being fed.
B When we arrived, the baby was been fed.
- 13 A This homework should be handed in two days ago.
B This homework should have been handed in two days ago.
- 14 A Will the museum be closed on Sunday?
B Will it be closed the museum on Sunday?
- 15 A They were educated at a very good school.
B They were educating at a very good school.
- 16 A Be careful! The floor has being polished.
B Be careful! The floor has been polished.
- 17 A She had been taken her photograph so that she could renew her passport.
B She had her photograph taken so that she could renew her passport.
- 18 A She had an architect design her new house.
B She had an architect for designing her new house.
- 19 A We got the gardener planted some new trees.
B We got the gardener to plant some new trees.
- 20 A We are having the new sofa delivered tomorrow.
B We are having delivered the new sofa tomorrow.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Passive: Review of all Tenses

PASSIVE FORM	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT SIMPLE am / is / are + past participle	<i>They prepare the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal is prepared.</i>
PRESENT CONTINUOUS am / is / are being + past participle	<i>They are preparing the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal is being prepared.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE has / have been + past participle	<i>They have prepared the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal has been prepared.</i>
PAST SIMPLE was / were + past participle	<i>They prepared the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal was prepared.</i>
PAST CONTINUOUS was / were being + past participle	<i>They were preparing the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal was being prepared.</i>
PAST PERFECT SIMPLE had been + past participle	<i>They had prepared the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal had been prepared.</i>
FUTURE SIMPLE will be + past participle	<i>They will prepare the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal will be prepared.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE will have been + past participle	<i>They will have prepared the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal will have been prepared.</i>
BE GOING TO be going to be + past participle	<i>They are going to prepare the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal is going to be prepared.</i>
MODAL modal + be + past participle	<i>They should prepare the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal should be prepared.</i>
SEMI-MODAL semi-modal + be + past participle	<i>They have to prepare the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal has to be prepared.</i>
MODAL PERFECT modal + have been + past participle	<i>They should have prepared the meal.</i>	→ <i>The meal should have been prepared.</i>

NOTES

- Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous and Future Perfect Continuous do not have a passive form.
- We use the passive form when we want to stress the action rather than the person who does it (the agent). We also use the passive when we don't know who the agent is.
*Two people **were killed** in the accident.* *The house **was built** in 1860.*
- When changing from active to passive, the tense does not change.
*They **are washing** the car. (Present Continuous) → The car **is being washed**. (Present Continuous)*
- The object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence.
*They **painted the bedroom** white. → The bedroom **was painted** white.*
- Some verbs do not take an object and cannot be made passive.
*The car **disappeared** round a corner. (no passive possible)*
- By + agent** is used when it is important to know who does the action. We do not say *by people / by someone / by him, her, them, etc.*
*The book **was written by a well-known author**.*
When we refer to an instrument or tool used by someone, we use **with** not **by**.
*The meat **was cut with a sharp knife**.*
- Some verbs can have two objects (e.g., *give, send, pay, lend, sell, teach, offer, etc.*). In the passive, usually the person becomes the subject of the sentence.
*He **gave Jane a book**. or He **gave a book to Jane**. → Jane **was given a book**. (not: A book was given to Jane. ✗)*

- 8 Don't forget the particle with phrasal verbs in the passive.
He picked up the parcel. → The parcel was picked up.
- 9 When the verbs *believe, consider, expect, know, say* and *suppose* are used in the passive form, they are followed by *to + infinitive*.
People consider her an excellent dancer. → She is considered to be an excellent dancer.
 Alternatively, *it* can be used as the subject of the sentence.
People know that he was a spy. → It is known that he was a spy.

The Causative

The causative has a passive meaning.

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
have / get + object + past participle	subject arranges for someone else to do something for him	<i>They had / got their camera repaired.</i> <i>I have / get my teeth checked every year.</i>
have + agent + bare infinitive + object	subject arranges for someone else to do something for him; the agent is always mentioned	<i>Jim has a driver take him to work.</i> <i>We will have the cleaners pick up the dirty clothes.</i>
get + agent + to + bare infinitive + object	subject arranges for / persuades someone else to do something for him; the agent is always mentioned	<i>I will get a dressmaker to make me a dress.</i> <i>Did you get an architect to design your new house?</i>

NOTE

Have / get + object + past participle can also mean that something unpleasant happens to somebody.
He had / got his wallet stolen on the train. (= Somebody stole his wallet.)

COMMON MISTAKES



The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.

- Some new houses are building near the high school.

- They were shouted by the neighbour.

- The picture was painted by someone last year.

- He supposed to be abroad.

- They say his parents to be rich.

- It has been brought forward the date of the examination.

- He will get the mechanic repaired his car.

- They had the room painted themselves.



Grammar Practice

A. Circle the correct form of the verb.

- Every week, hundreds of people **were injured** / **are being injured** / **are injured** in car accidents.
- The price of cigarettes is going to **be increased** / **have been increased** / **been increased**.
- The fish we ate last night **has been served** / **was served** / **was being served** with a very tasty sauce.
- They told us that the house **is not being sold** / **had not been sold** / **will not have been sold** yet and was still available.
- Will the strike **is called off** / **have been called off** / **has been called off** by this time tomorrow?
- The lights aren't working today, so the traffic **was being controlled** / **is controlled** / **is being controlled** by a policeman.
- Your complaint **was already being reported** / **will already be reported** / **has already been reported** to the manager.
- People think the minister's resignation **is announced** / **will be announced** / **will be being announced** soon.

B. ACTIVE OR PASSIVE? Circle the correct answer.

- The musicians **were employed** / **employed** only for the summer season.
- Drinking a glass of red wine every day **says** / **is said** to be good for you.
- Football **plays** / **is played** in most parts of the world.
- Library books **must be returned** / **must return** within three weeks.
- A bridge across the river **is building** / **is being built** and should open next year.
- These mathematical problems are not easy **to solve** / **to be solved**.



C. Change the following sentences from active to passive.

- They have already handed in their report.
Their report
- The organisers will provide all the necessary equipment.
All the necessary equipment
- Someone hit him on the head with a heavy stick.
He
- People think that Alison is a talented artist.
Alison
- They believe that Arnold is travelling abroad at the moment.
Arnold
- People say that she is an expert in her field.
She

D. Complete the following sentences with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets.

- The medicine should (take) three times a day.
- More thought needs (give) to the problem of pollution.
- That old building must (pull down) since the last time we were here.
- The camera can't (repair) properly; it's still not working.
- The film might (make) in Ireland; they haven't decided yet.
- The club's rules have (obey), otherwise we won't accept you as a member.
- Yesterday's power cut could (cause) by the thunderstorm.
- The stolen car may (find) by the police by now; I hope so.

E. Complete the following sentences with the correct active or passive form of the verb in brackets.

1. My father went to work by bus yesterday because his car (service).
2. Why the television (leave on) all night?
3. John Davies, who (write) this book, (award) a prize.
4. As soon as the date for the wedding (decide), the family started to prepare.
5. The slices of meat are very thin because they (cut) with a very sharp knife.
6. The newspaper (publish) a weekend magazine since 1985.
7. An important exhibition of modern art (hold) in London at the moment.
8. By the time I come home tonight, the new washing machine (install)?
9. The final decision about the closure of the hospital (make) in the next few days.
10. I must (leave) the window open. The papers
..... (disappear).



F. THE CAUSATIVE Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. At the moment, they (have) the concert programmes (print).
2. Last week, we (get) the roof of the house (repair).
3. She is thinking of (have) caterers (make) the food.
4. Older people should (get) their eyes (test) regularly.
5. Tomorrow, I (get) a travel agent (arrange) our trip.
6. By the time we arrived, he (get) a mechanic (start) the car.
7. Between 2 and 3 p.m. tomorrow, I (get) my hair (cut).
8. We have decided (not have) the bathroom (modernise).
9. They're looking forward to (have) their photos (develop).
10. (you ever have) your fortune (tell)?



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. "Why didn't you go to the show?"
"All the tickets had"
a. already sold
b. them sold
c. to be sold
d. already been sold
2. The building the oldest in the state.
a. is thought that it is
b. thought it was
c. is thought to be
d. thought to being
3. The door should last night.
a. lock
b. have locked
c. be locking
d. have been locked
4. Basketball was invented a schoolteacher.
a. with
b. by
c. to
d. at
5. Medicine a lot since the last century.
a. was developed
b. develops
c. has developed
d. is been developed
6. We must the car before the trip.
a. have someone clean
b. have it cleaned
c. to clean
d. have clean

- B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.
- Someone has accused the boys of telling lies. **been**
The boys lies.
 - Police believe that a pistol was used to kill the victim. **killed**
Police believe that a pistol.
 - Today we know that smoking is dangerous to your health. **known**
Today smoking is dangerous to your health.
 - Dawn asked for her friends' help when she moved house. **got**
Dawn when she moved house.
 - The company will get the accountant to check the figures for them. **have**
The company will by the accountant.
 - Read the instructions carefully before using the DVD. **must**
The instructions before you use the DVD.
 - When I got there, the police were questioning witnesses. **by**
When I got there, the police.
 - Why didn't you point out all these things before the meeting? **should**
All these things before the meeting.

- C. OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

THE HEADINGTON SHARK

Thousands of people visit Oxford (1) year. One of the city's most unusual attractions is the sculpture of a headless shark. This work of art, which (2) known as the Headington Shark, cannot (3) seen at an art gallery or in a public park, but at the home of Bill Heine, a local radio presenter. Back in 1986, Bill's neighbours awoke one morning to (4) that a huge shark had appeared on the top of his house and seemed to be crashing through the roof. It had (5) placed there during the night using a crane. Even though the police had been aware of what was going on, they had (6) been able to prevent the shark being placed there as there was no law against this kind of act. Bill Heine (7) had the sculpture especially made as a way of expressing his unhappiness about certain problems the world was facing. It was created for him (8) artist John Buckley. (9) the shark first appeared, various attempts (10) made to force Bill to get rid of it. Some people even said it might be unsafe, but when the local authorities (11) engineers to inspect the roof, they found out that the sculpture was not a danger to the public. (12) those early days, the Headington Shark has been accepted by the people of Oxford.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

SPORTS

achievement	coach	gymnastics	professional	score	trainer
amateur	contestant	lose	race	supporter	trophy
athletics	court	match	record	team	umpire
beat	draw	medal	referee	tournament	victory
champion	event	participate	runner-up	track	win

THRILLING FINISH TO 800M

The most exciting event of the championships was the 800 m (1) As the athletes raced round the (2) for the second time, Donna Samuels sprinted past the other runners to win the gold (3), setting a new national (4) Janine Smith was the (5), finishing just half a second behind Samuels.

GREECE TRIUMPHS IN EURO 2004

More than 10,000 (6) travelled to Portugal to watch their team win the European Cup Final, with a (7) of 1-0. The goal that gave them this historic (8) came soon after half-time, and Greece continued to play confidently until the (9) blew the final whistle, when team captain Zagorakis raised the (10) – Greece's first ever football title!

SCHOOLBOY CHESS WONDER!

Oliver Baker won the country's biggest chess (11) yesterday, which is an incredible (12) as he is only 12 years of age. Oliver says that chess is just a hobby and that he didn't really want to (13) in the competition at all. But Oliver (14) players more than twice his age to become the youngest national (15) ever.

HOBBIES AND PASTIMES

arts and crafts	carpentry	choir	DIY (do-it-yourself)	hiking	martial art
board game	chess	collecting	folk dancing	knitting	pottery

16. Many people enjoy singing in a
17. Judo and karate are two examples of
18. things, such as stamps, postcards, dolls or antiques, is a popular hobby.
19. is a pastime in which people make things from wood.
20. Monopoly, Scrabble and chess are popular

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences by replacing the words in bold with the correct form of the phrasal verbs with *go*.

go back on • go off • go over • go on with • go by • go out
go through with • go with

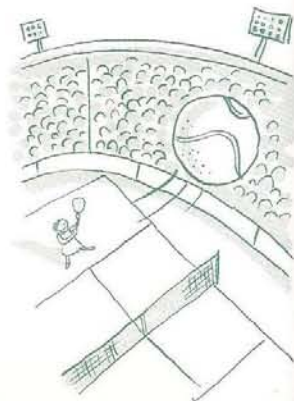
- The starter's gun **was fired** and the race began.
- In the middle of the football match, the floodlights suddenly **became dark**.
- The footballer decided not to **have** an operation on his knee.
- Before the final, the coach **explained once again** what he expected each player to do.
- Her success made her famous overnight, and she found it difficult to **carry on with** her life as usual.
- He **broke** his promise to watch me take part in the race.
- More than 100 years have **passed** since the first modern Olympic Games were held in Athens in 1896.
- I don't think your new shirt **suits** those shorts. The colours don't look good together.

B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with a suitable word.

- Walking is a good way to **keep** and stay in shape.
- They **swimming** every weekend when the weather is good.
- More than 50 competitors **took** in the tournament.
- She's very **fond** card games in general, but she's really **keen** bridge.
- Do you know who **the world record** for the 1,500-metre race nowadays?
- They're not in the least **interested** DIY; they would rather buy things already made.
- He was bored and lonely so his friends advised him to **up** a hobby.
- Activities such as table tennis and squash are **sports**; they are not played outside.
- He was **disqualified** playing for the rest of the season because of bad behaviour.
- In 1998, the baseball player Mark McGuire **the record** for the most home runs in one season.

C. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

- Because of the rain, our hike has been **cancelled** / **postponed** / **called off** till next Saturday.
- It is important that people have **pleasure** / **pastime** / **leisure** activities to occupy their spare time.
- Barbara has **broken up** / **taken up** / **given up** dancing because of her back problem.
- She **does** / **goes** / **practises** jogging every morning before breakfast.
- Athletes are often **tested** / **controlled** / **examined** for drugs before a race.
- The **viewers** / **audience** / **spectators** cheered loudly at the end of every race.
- During the race, the driver crashed and **wounded** / **injured** / **damaged** his car.
- We all enjoyed the football **play** / **game** / **race** very much.
- Our team was **beaten** / **lost** / **won** 4-0 in the match yesterday.
- She hit the ball with all her **strength** / **power** / **effort**.



D. WORD FORMATION Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. What is the of the swimming pool under the diving board? (**deep**)
2. A standard football pitch is 100-110 metres in (**long**)
3. Athletes train in the gym to build their muscles and increase their (**strong**)
4. Players would like to the season so they can have more time to rest. (**short**)
5. What is the correct for a volleyball net? (**high**)
6. Athletes in sports like judo have to watch their very carefully. (**weigh**)
7. Louis went to play for a foreign club because he wanted to his experience. (**broad**)
8. The of a tennis court is 8.23 metres for single matches and 10.97 metres for doubles. (**wide**)

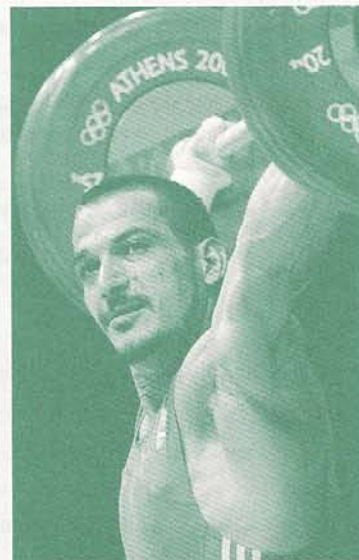


Exam Practice

A. Below is part of an article about Pyrros Dimas. Choose the appropriate word with which to fill in the gaps by marking A, B or C.

PYRROS DIMAS – A GREAT SPORTSMAN

Most people would agree that (1) an Olympic medal is an amazing (2) A few athletes even manage to repeat their success four years later. Pyrros Dimas, the Greek weightlifter, has medals from no fewer than *four* consecutive Olympic Games: three golds and a bronze. He ended his career at the Athens 2004 Olympics, where he managed to finish third despite the fact that he hadn't (3) for two years because of a series of (4) It was a fascinating (5) , watched by millions of TV (6) in Greece alone, who held their breath to see if he was (7) of lifting 207.5 kg in his last attempt to take the gold. Although that proved too much for him, his competitive spirit and the way in which he ended his career touched the hearts of many. He took off his shoes and left them on the stage as a symbol that he would not be (8) again. The spectators who were (9) in the weightlifting hall that evening (10) their admiration for him by cheering and shouting for more than five minutes, delaying the rest of the medal ceremony.



1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A beating	<input type="checkbox"/>	B winning	<input type="checkbox"/>	C passing
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A tournament	<input type="checkbox"/>	B development	<input type="checkbox"/>	C achievement
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A competed	<input type="checkbox"/>	B scored	<input type="checkbox"/>	C tested
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A damages	<input type="checkbox"/>	B cancellations	<input type="checkbox"/>	C injuries
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A contestant	<input type="checkbox"/>	B competitor	<input type="checkbox"/>	C contest
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A audience	<input type="checkbox"/>	B viewers	<input type="checkbox"/>	C amateurs
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A capable	<input type="checkbox"/>	B able	<input type="checkbox"/>	C strong
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A qualifying	<input type="checkbox"/>	B resigning	<input type="checkbox"/>	C participating
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A fond	<input type="checkbox"/>	B present	<input type="checkbox"/>	C keen
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	A showed	<input type="checkbox"/>	B took	<input type="checkbox"/>	C saw

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- I'll never forgive him for breaking his promise to take me to the World Cup. **going**
I'll never forgive him for to take me to the World Cup.
- He has started to collect stamps as a hobby. **taken**
He has as a hobby.
- She plays tennis to stay in shape. **fit**
She tennis.
- They did not allow him to run in the race because he had taken drugs. **disqualified**
He in the race because he had taken drugs.
- She felt so ill that she decided she couldn't participate in the skating exhibition. **take**
She felt so ill that she decided she the skating exhibition.
- My brother loves playing golf and volleyball. **keen**
My brother and volleyball.
- They have decided to play the match next Saturday instead. **postponed**
The match next Saturday.
- John is proud of what he has achieved in sports. **takes**
John in sports.

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

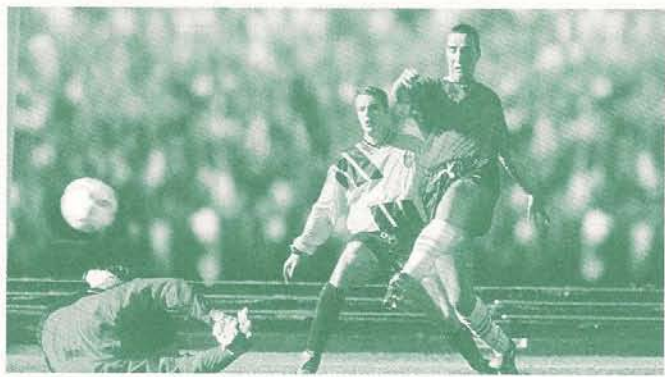
TIP! Always read the title of the passage. This will help you understand the text.

SPORTS PHOTOGRAPHY – A FASCINATING JOB

For most people, photography is just a hobby. People take photographs as a way of (1) holiday memories or other special occasions. Others make a (2) with their cameras. Some photographers specialise in weddings while others do (3) work for magazines.

I think one of the most (4) areas of work must be sports photography. To cover a sports event, the photographer needs special (5) to set up his equipment close enough to the action to get a good shot. He also needs (6) of the sport he is covering. How can a photographer take a picture at (7) the right moment – for example, just as a striker scores the (8) goal in an important match or just as the basketball player shoots the winning basket in an important game – if he is (9) with the sport? Being able to capture the (10) on a player's face at such moments is what it is all about.

- RECORD
- LIVE
- PROFESSION
- CHALLENGE
- PERMIT
- KNOW
- PRECISE
- WIN
- FAMILIAR
- EXPRESS



Review 6

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- You have to fill in the application form before joining the club. **must**
The application form before you join the club.
- The competitors waited for the starter to fire his gun at the start of the race. **go**
The competitors waited for the at the start of the race.
- The price of the ticket includes entry to the swimming pool. **included**
Entry to the swimming pool the price of the ticket.
- My uncle went to the optician's, where they tested his eyes. **tested**
My uncle at the optician's.
- Everyone says she is a wonderful teacher. **said**
She a wonderful teacher.
- An American runner came first in the 100-metre race. **won**
The 100-metre race an American runner.
- They don't want to put an advertisement in the newspaper. **favour**
They are an advertisement in the newspaper.
- He no longer plays chess because he is too busy with his studies. **given**
He because he is too busy with his studies.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

JUDO

In 1882, Dr Jigoro Kano, a member of staff at the University of Tokyo in Japan, developed a new martial (1) – judo. Many years have gone (2) since judo was first introduced. Today, the sport is popular with people of all ages. It is an activity in which the young and old alike can (3) Even the over-sixties can take (4) this sport, as skill and timing are much more important than physical (5) As well as being an excellent way of (6) fit, it also suits anyone (7) in learning how to defend himself. Since 1964, judo has been an Olympic sport. To a (8) at any kind of judo (9) , the sport may look dangerous, especially when one (10) throws the other to the ground. However, those (11) part in such competitions are rarely (12) ; in judo the emphasis is on safety, and very strict rules apply.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. A art | B game | C activity | D sport |
| 2. A back | B out | C through | D by |
| 3. A practise | B participate | C defeat | D win |
| 4. A off | B up | C over | D in |
| 5. A power | B effort | C strength | D height |
| 6. A making | B trying | C holding | D keeping |
| 7. A interested | B pleased | C keen | D fond |
| 8. A viewer | B referee | C spectator | D trainer |
| 9. A team | B court | C event | D race |
| 10. A contestant | B supporter | C coach | D umpire |
| 11. A doing | B playing | C finding | D taking |
| 12. A beaten | B injured | C wounded | D damaged |

Review 6

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- In those days, French by all students in school.
 - studied
 - was being studied
 - had studied
 - was studied
- "Who is the best swimmer in the school?"
"Judith to be the best."
 - they considered
 - is considering
 - is considered
 - she is considered
- "Has the coach mentioned next week's training schedule?"
"Yes. We a really full schedule."
 - have given
 - have been given
 - are given
 - had given
- The World Cup championship every four years.
 - is held
 - is being held
 - is holding
 - has been held
- This time next week, we in the chess match.
 - will be played
 - will be playing
 - are being played
 - are played
- Entries for the race must by next Monday.
 - have received
 - have been received
 - receive
 - be received
- The spectators left the stadium after all the medals
 - have been awarded
 - awarded
 - had been awarded
 - were being awarded
- How many athletes are in the opening ceremony?
 - involved
 - involving
 - involve
 - we involve
- "Did you take up your jeans yourself?"
"No, I had"
 - shortened them for me
 - them for me shortened
 - shortened them
 - them shortened
- She her wedding dress made by a top designer.
 - is having
 - gets
 - is got
 - has got

VOCABULARY

- My mother me this sweater.
 - hiked
 - drew
 - knitted
 - crafted
- Weightlifting is a test of and technique.
 - length
 - depth
 - height
 - strength
- The basketball game had to be stopped when all the lights
 - went away
 - went out
 - went on
 - went by
- She doesn't have a lot of time.
 - pastime
 - hobby
 - leisure
 - pleasure
- The supporters cheered when the captain of the team a goal.
 - achieved
 - put
 - made
 - scored
- Neither side won; the result was a
 - tie
 - record
 - cancellation
 - victory
- People who enjoy like making things out of clay.
 - collections
 - board games
 - martial arts
 - pottery
- Our team the other competitors.
 - won
 - lost
 - beat
 - defeat
- She started to play professionally after several years as an
 - amateur
 - trainer
 - coach
 - contestant
- I prefer sports such as bowling.
 - inside
 - indoor
 - internal
 - inner



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A I have an uncle which lives in America.

B I have an uncle who lives in America.

- 1 A The CDs what you want are upstairs.
B The CDs you want are upstairs.
- 2 A I couldn't read what the doctor had written.
B I couldn't read the words what the doctor had written.
- 3 A Johnny Depp, who starred in the film *Pirates of the Caribbean*, has made many films.
B Johnny Depp, that starred in the film *Pirates of the Caribbean*, has made many films.
- 4 A The school which I was a student has been demolished.
B The school where I was a student has been demolished.
- 5 A This is the book that I read it yesterday.
B This is the book that I read yesterday.
- 6 A The friends who I saw you with at the cinema last night seem very nice.
B The friends with who I saw you at the cinema last night seem very nice.
- 7 A The children of whom their parents are abroad are staying with their grandparents.
B The children, whose parents are abroad, are staying with their grandparents.
- 8 A This is Jack whom I shared him your ideas.
B This is Jack with whom I shared your ideas.
- 9 A I remember the day when I got married.
B I remember the day which I got married.
- 10 A I've lost the paper on which I wrote your name.
B I've lost the paper where I wrote your name on it.
- 11 A Tom, who works here, he is on holiday.
B Tom, who works here, is on holiday.
- 12 A The first time when we saw him we thought he was very good-looking.
B The first time we saw him we thought he was very good-looking.
- 13 A Sue, who sits next to me in class, is shy.
B Sue that sits next to me in class is shy.
- 14 A Here is the fruit what you asked for.
B Here is the fruit that you asked for.
- 15 A The Thames is a river which runs through London.
B The Thames is a river which it runs through London.
- 16 A The people whom I spoke to at the party were quite interesting.
B The people whose I spoke to at the party were quite interesting.
- 17 A Steven, whose his birthday is tomorrow, is very excited.
B Steven, whose birthday is tomorrow, is very excited.
- 18 A The town where I was born is in the south of England.
B The town where I was born there is in the south of England.
- 19 A The place that she lived there was quiet.
B The place where she lived was quiet.
- 20 A I fell over some toys left on the stairs.
B I fell over some toys which left on the stairs.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Relative Clauses

A **relative clause** gives information about a noun. It immediately follows the noun it describes and often begins with a relative pronoun such as *who*, *which* or *when*.

- A **defining relative clause** identifies the person or thing we are talking about.

*What's the name of the woman **who has just arrived**?*

- A **non-defining relative clause** gives additional information about a person or thing that is already clearly identified. Non-defining relative clauses are separated by commas from the rest of the sentence and can be left out without confusing the meaning.

*Tom, **who is married to my sister**, is a doctor.*

RELATIVE PRONOUN	USE	EXAMPLES
which	a. for animals and things	<i>The puppies which were born yesterday are very sweet.</i> (defining) <i>The town library, which is next to the school, has some excellent books.</i> (non-defining)
	b. to refer to a whole clause	<i>Joan lent me her car for a week, which was really kind of her.</i>
that	replaces <i>who</i> , <i>which</i> or <i>when</i> in defining relative clauses only	<i>This is the girl that found your watch.</i> <i>I didn't like the film that we saw last night.</i> <i>I can't see anything that I want to buy.</i>
	a. often used after words like <i>all</i> , <i>none</i> , <i>little</i> , <i>few</i> , <i>anything</i> , <i>nothing</i> b. after superlatives (often with the Present Perfect), <i>the first / last time</i> , etc.	<i>It was the most boring book that I've ever read.</i>
who	for people	<i>The men who work there are on strike.</i> (defining) <i>My sister Alice, who graduated last month, now lives in Liverpool.</i> (non-defining)
whom	for people – used in formal English when the noun is the object of the verb in the relative clause	<i>These are the children whom (<i>who</i>) she invited to the party.</i> (defining) <i>Peter, with whom I shared a flat, has now moved.</i> (non-defining)
whose	to show possession	<i>I work in an office whose windows overlook the main street.</i> (defining) <i>Our neighbours, whose children are very noisy, get many complaints.</i> (non-defining)
where	for places (when the meaning is <i>in / at / to a place</i>)	<i>The town where we used to live is quite a large place now.</i> (defining) <i>I like the new sports centre, where there is an Olympic-size swimming pool.</i> (non-defining)
when (that)	for time	<i>I'll never forget the day when / that I first went abroad.</i> (defining) <i>Every evening, when it is not raining, we go for a walk.</i> (non-defining)

NOTES

- 1 **Who**, **whom**, **which** or **that** may be omitted from a defining relative clause when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause. (This is more common in spoken English.)

I didn't like the film (that / which) we saw last night. These are the children (that / whom) she invited to the party.
I can't see anything (which / that) I want to buy. This is the woman (whom / that) you sent the flowers to.

- 2 A non-defining relative clause never begins with the relative pronoun **that**.

*Their son, **who** is in my class, is very intelligent.* (not: *Their son, that is in my class, is very intelligent.* X)

- 3 **Relative pronouns can be used to combine two sentences that refer to the same thing. In this case, the original pronoun from the second sentence is omitted.**

This is **my cousin**. **He** goes to the same school as my brother.

This is my cousin **who** goes to the same school as my brother.

(**not:** This is my cousin who he goes to the same school as my brother. X)

I ordered a CD on the Internet. **It** has just been released.

I ordered a CD on the Internet **which** has just been released.

(**not:** I ordered a CD on the Internet which it has just been released. X)

This hotel is excellent. We stayed **there** last summer.

The hotel **where** we stayed last summer is excellent.

(**not:** The hotel where we stayed there last summer is excellent. X)

- 4 **When a relative clause uses who / which + be + present / past participle, the relative pronoun and be can be omitted.**

Look at those boys **who are playing** football over there.

Look at those boys **playing** football over there.

The five pupils **who were chosen** to represent the school went to the town hall yesterday.

The five pupils **chosen** to represent the school went to the town hall yesterday.

- 5 **Only which and whom are possible after a preposition. (formal English)**

This is the weapon **with which** the man was murdered. (**not:** This is the weapon with that the man was murdered. X)

She is the lady **to whom** he sent the flowers. (**not:** She is the lady to who he sent the flowers. X)

To avoid sounding formal, we may put the preposition at the end of the sentence. The preposition cannot be left out.

This is the weapon **that / which** the man was murdered **with**.

She is the lady **who** he sent the flowers **to**.

- 6 **We can use what as a relative pronoun to mean the thing(s) that. We cannot use what after a noun.**

Can you tell me **what** I'll need for the trip? (**not:** Can you tell me the equipment what I'll need for the trip? X)

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



1. My parents, whose their wedding anniversary is tomorrow, are having a party.

.....

2. I'll always remember the film that I saw it last night.

.....

3. Steven, that came to visit us last week, he is my brother's best friend.

.....

4. The theatre, where I saw the latest musical there, is quite easy to get to.

.....

5. The path which it leads to the house goes up a slight hill.

.....

6. The waiters brought the food what we had ordered.

.....



Grammar Practice

A. Match to form sentences and complete with the correct relative pronoun.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. English is a language | a. teaches students at university. |
| 2. A generous person is someone for | b. there are no factories. |
| 3. A residential area is an area | c. is spoken all over the world. |
| 4. A pedestrian precinct is a zone in | d. has been achieved in a sport. |
| 5. A journalist is someone | e. the first modern Olympics were held was in 1896. |
| 6. A lecturer is someone | f. job is writing for newspapers. |
| 7. The year | g. cars are not allowed. |
| 8. A record is the best result | h. spending money is a pleasure. |

B. Complete the following sentences with a suitable relative pronoun. There may be more than one correct answer. Then circle the relative pronouns that can be omitted.

- My new car, is the latest sports model, is fast and powerful.
- The businessman, secretary is very efficient, relies on her to make all his appointments.
- Have you told me everything you know about the matter?
- Patricia, you once met in my house, left for San Francisco a few days ago.
- The football stadium, the match will be played, seats 50,000 people.
- September is the month children in England go back to school.
- I can recommend the book I read last week; it's really fascinating.
- Salmon, is found in the rivers in the north of Scotland, is a delicious fish.
- It was the last time he was seen alive.
- The children, were tired after the long journey, fell asleep immediately.

C. Complete the following paragraph with a suitable relative pronoun. There may be more than one correct answer.

Big Ben, (1) chimes are one of the best-known sounds in London, is the huge clock (2) is situated in the Houses of Parliament in London. For the millions of tourists (3) visit London every year, Big Ben is a huge attraction. It is actually wrong to say that Big Ben is the name of the clock because it is, in fact, the name of the bell (4) strikes the hours. This bell, (5) diameter is 2.7 metres, weighs 13 tons. The first time (6) the bell was rung was in 1858. Every day, hundreds of tourists wait outside the Houses of Parliament, hoping to be there (7) the clock strikes. How did Big Ben get its name? There are several explanations, the most popular of (8) is that the bell was named after Sir Benjamin Hall, (9) was a tall, rather fat member of Parliament. He was also the man to (10) the job was given of raising the bell into position in the clock tower, (11) it is situated. Even today, Big Ben remains the largest bell (12) has ever been made in Britain.



D. Join the following sentences together to form one sentence by using a suitable relative pronoun. Then circle any relative pronoun that can be omitted from the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. There are several new teachers in my school. Their teaching methods are very modern.

.....

2. I'll never forget the day. That day a terrible storm hit our town.

.....

3. He took his friends to the new shopping centre. It was opened several weeks ago.

.....

4. This is my cousin Simone. I often go cycling with her at weekends.

.....

5. Mike and his wife have three children. They are bringing the children up very well.

.....

6. This is the best hotel in the town. We stayed there last year.

.....

7. She's looking for the bag. She put her keys in that bag.

.....

8. Brighton is a well-known resort. Many English people go there on holiday.

.....



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. Many teachers believe that children should do

- that we tell them
- what they are told
- the things which are told
- anything which we tell

2. Is that the house of buying?

- who Jan is thinking
- which it is thinking Jan
- that Jan she is thinking
- Jan is thinking

3. The shop my groceries is closing.

- where I usually get
- which I get
- in that I usually get
- that I get there

4. The article about psychology was very interesting.

- what I read
- reading
- that I read it
- I read

5. The professor an award had published several books.

- to whom they gave
- that they gave him
- whom they gave to
- who he was given

6. My first grade teacher, I've forgotten, was kind and patient.

- her name
- which her name
- whose name
- of whom the name

7. An astronaut travels into space.

- who is someone
- that he is someone
- is someone whom
- is someone who

8. She'll never forget the moment she realized the truth.

- which
- when
- than
- where

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

THE UNDERWATER CLASSROOM

Have you (1) heard of an underwater classroom? Naomi Ruza, (2) teaches snorkeling (3) the Caribbean Sea, likes being in the water so much that (4) spends most of her free time there. Naomi is considered to (5) an excellent instructor and is very popular with the young people (6) whom she teaches snorkeling. They are (7) to breathe through a snorkel – a long tube (8) sticks out of the water and enables swimmers to breathe (9) they are swimming. Naomi begins the lessons near the shore (10) the water is not too deep. But once her students (11) gained enough confidence, she leads them further out. Some of them are afraid at first, but they soon overcome their fears and (12) at home in the strange underwater world they find there.



C. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- My friend consulted a doctor who said that she needed an operation. **whom**
The doctor said that she needed an operation.
- My aunt lives in that block of flats. It is very luxurious. **in**
The block of flats is very luxurious.
- She was dressed in such unusual clothes that we couldn't help staring. **wearing**
The clothes so unusual that we couldn't help staring.
- There is a lot of vitamin C in oranges and that vitamin is said to prevent colds. **found**
Vitamin C, , is said to prevent colds.
- She remembers him being born. **when**
She born.
- Stratford-upon-Avon is a famous town, and you can see Shakespeare's birthplace there. **where**
Stratford-upon-Avon is a famous town Shakespeare's birthplace.
- I had never seen wild animals up close before. **time**
It was had seen wild animals up close.
- Peter is the friend I go sailing with every weekend. **whom**
Peter is the friend every weekend.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

ENTERTAINMENT AND THE ARTS

announce	clap	interval	rehearsal	script
applaud	costume	masterpiece	rehearse	special effects
audience	exhibition	novel	review	spectacle
box office	fiction	performance	role	stage
cast	hit	publish	screen	ticket

- The performance received such good in the newspapers that it became an overnight hit.
- I prefer factual books to works of
- There is a wonderful of portraits and self-portraits at the art gallery at the moment.
- Picasso's painting *Guernica* is one of the of the 20th century.
- After the had taken their seats, the lights went out and the concert began.
- At the end of the play, everyone in the auditorium enthusiastically.
- During, the actors practise their words and movements.
- Latecomers to the opera will not be let in until the
- In a cinema, the film is projected onto a large
- The members of the cast were given copies of the so they could learn their lines.
- The leading actor was excellent and gave an outstanding
- We queued for hours to get and then found that the concert was sold out.
- Many actors dream of playing the of Shakespeare's Hamlet.
- We went to the fireworks display; it was an amazing

PEOPLE IN ENTERTAINMENT AND THE ARTS

actress	author	composer	critic	musician	performer	poet	sculptor
artist	comedian	conductor	director	painter	playwright	producer	singer

- The told the actors how she wanted them to play the scene.
- Everybody laughed at the jokes the told.
- There is an exhibition of the Henry Moore's statues at the museum.
- Mozart was a famous who wrote many beautiful pieces of music.
- The did not like the production at all. They gave it poor reviews.
- Jane Austen was a well-known who wrote novels about English society.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

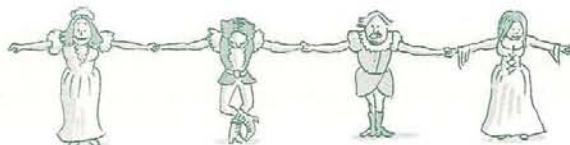
A. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Complete the following sentences by using the correct word from each pair. Make any necessary changes.

- show / play**
 - The local cinema is the new Spielberg film all week.
 - In her latest film, she the part of an ambitious actress. It's a great role for her.
- scene / scenery**
 - We enjoyed our visit to the theatre; the acting was good and the was beautiful.
 - In the first of the opera, the soprano sings a famous aria.
- organ / instrument**
 - My favourite musical is the flute.
 - The church choir sang to the accompaniment of an
- rose / raised**
 - The curtain and the performance began.
 - When our drama teacher asked for a volunteer, nobody his hand.
- listen to / hear**
 - The orchestra played so loudly that we couldn't the singers.
 - I find classical music very relaxing.
- look at / watch**
 - I stopped in front of the Michelangelo painting and it in wonder.
 - The audience was the performance intently.
- take place / take part**
 - The school concert will next week.
 - Over a hundred dancers in the festival last month.

B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the correct word below. You will need to use some of the words more than once. Make any necessary changes.

put • in • out • make • on

- I hear he has written a new book which is **coming** next month.
- The box office only had tickets for seats **the front row**.
- Ben is a natural comedian – he can anyone **laugh**.
- The operatic society is **on** a production of *The Marriage of Figaro* next week.
- I'll get the newspaper and see **what's** TV tonight.
- We found the actor's interview very interesting. He quite **an impression** on us.
- The art exhibition opens on Saturday. Several of Picasso's masterpieces will be **display**.
- I'm afraid the choir wasn't very good. Quite often they sang **of tune**.
- Shakespeare's **time**, women were not allowed to perform in public theatres.
- There are no tickets left for the concert. They are completely **sold**
- Actors often say that **on** a costume and make-up helps them identify with the character.
- One of my favourite actors is **appearing** a comedy at our local theatre this week.
- The band has just signed a record deal and is their first **album**.
- At the end of the performance, the actors **came** **stage** and took a bow.



C. PREPOSITIONS Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition.

- Judy was so **absorbed** the film on TV that she didn't hear her mother call her.
- We found the film difficult to follow because we are not **accustomed** reading subtitles.
- We **arrived** the concert hall half an hour before the start of the concert.
- Many people **complained** the lack of air conditioning in the theatre.
- Everybody **congratulated** the children their excellent performance.
- I was very **disappointed** the film – it wasn't the action-packed adventure I expected.
- Her autobiography is **divided** two parts: her early life and her career as an actress.
- The actors were **dressed** 18th-century costumes.
- The orchestra was so good that the audience **insisted** an encore.
- In the interview, the actress said that she was seldom completely **satisfied** her performance.

D. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs with *let*.

let down • let off (2 meanings) • let in • let in for • let in on • let on • let out

- The film is about a man who is of prison because of new evidence.
- Charles knew all about the surprise party, but he never
- Jack me his secret – he and Julie are getting married next year.
- The disco was full, so they wouldn't us
- Dan said he would us tidying up after the party because we were tired.
- Peter broke his promise that he would take me to the theatre. He really me
- You're yourself a lot of work if you decide to take part in the school play.
- John admitted that he had stolen the ticket money, but the organisers decided to him with a warning.



Exam Practice

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- Many singers are performing in the music festival next week. **taking**
Many singers the music festival next week.
- All the children at the prize-giving were wearing their best clothes. **dressed**
All the children at the prize-giving their best clothes.
- They usually go to the theatre once a month. **accustomed**
They to the theatre once a month.
- She is taking on a lot of work by agreeing to direct the play. **letting**
She is a lot of work by agreeing to direct the play.
- His new book is being published next month. **coming**
His new book next month.
- I've decided to tell you my secret. **let**
I've decided to my secret.
- We were greatly impressed by the violinist's performance. **impression**
The violinist's performance us.
- There are three acts in the play. **divided**
The play three acts.

- B. Step 1:** Below is a leaflet advertising the summer festival at the ancient theatre of Epidavros. Some words are missing. Decide what they are. Choose from the words below and mark the corresponding letter A-L. (There are three letters you won't need.)

TIP! Read the instructions carefully before you start even if you think you know how to do the exercise. The instructions often contain useful information.

A row	B hear	C display	D part
E arrive	F place	G stage	H playwrights
I interval	J watch	K box office	L auditorium

EPIDAVROS

Watching a performance at the ancient theatre of Epidavros is an experience not to be missed.

Set in beautiful scenery on the side of a hill, the theatre was built more than 2,000 years ago and was restored in the 1950s. The stone (1), which can seat 15,000 people, is famous for its perfect acoustics. It is possible to (2) every word that is spoken on (3), even if you are sitting in the last (4)

The festival takes (5) at weekends in the evening during July and August. The programme typically consists of classical Greek tragedy and comedy; works by (6) such as Euripides and Aristophanes feature regularly. Tickets can be purchased in advance at the festival (7) in Athens or at the theatre itself.

Make sure to (8) at the theatre at least an hour before the performance is due to start so that you have time to walk through the trees. Take time to gaze up at the site and then climb up to your seat. You might also want to visit the museum, where remains of the sanctuary of Asklepios are on (9)



Step 2: Choose the correct heading for the paragraphs above. There is one extra heading.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 2nd Paragraph | a. History of Greek Drama |
| 3rd Paragraph | b. Festival Details |
| 4th Paragraph | c. On the Day |
| | d. A Spectacular Venue |

- C. WORD FORMATION** Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

AN EARLY MEMORY

Bob is now a well-known actor but he remembers clearly the first theatrical (1) he ever saw. He was eight years old at the time, and his parents had taken him to see a (2) specially designed for children.

Bob still remembers sitting (3) waiting for the play to begin. And when it did, he was (4) by the whole experience. He didn't know what to look at first – the graceful (5) of the actors and actresses or the talented (6) who were sitting in front of the stage. After the interval, there was even a surprise for the children: the (7) of a famous pop singer. At the end of the show, the (8) came on stage and joined the cast.

The audience cheered and clapped; the (9) went on for a long time and Bob joined in (10) His love of theatre goes back to that day.

PERFORM

PRODUCE

PATIENCE

FASCINATE

MOVE

MUSIC

APPEAR

DIRECT

APPLAUD

ENTHUSIASM

Review 7

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

WALT DISNEY

There is hardly anyone in the world who has not been charmed by Walt Disney's cartoon (1) But let's not forget the man responsible for providing us with so much enjoyment: Walt Disney, one of the most famous film (2) of all time. Disney was born in 1901 and began his (3) in films by making cartoon commercials that were (4) in cinemas. At the age of 22, he went to Hollywood, where he became an animator, responsible for (5) the cartoons we still love today. In 1928, the first Mickey Mouse cartoons (6) and Disney became an overnight success. Many people do not realise that when Mickey (7) , we are hearing Disney's own (8) Disney is perhaps best known for Mickey and Donald Duck, but it is Disney's full-length feature films which were his greatest (9) When the Disney studio (10) out *Snow White* in 1937, (11) were amazed. The film even won an Oscar. Disney died in 1966, but his great talent lives on and his films continue to give both young and old a great deal of (12)

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A characters | B actors | C performers | D sculptors |
| 2. A critics | B composers | C conductors | D producers |
| 3. A contract | B career | C job | D appointment |
| 4. A looked | B viewed | C shown | D exhibited |
| 5. A singing | B acting | C collecting | D drawing |
| 6. A directed | B introduced | C appeared | D played |
| 7. A tells | B speaks | C announces | D discusses |
| 8. A instrument | B effects | C organ | D voice |
| 9. A fiction | B memory | C achievement | D expression |
| 10. A brought | B came | C set | D let |
| 11. A spectators | B audiences | C watchers | D authors |
| 12. A pastime | B spectacle | C laugh | D pleasure |

B. The sentences below come from a book on the history of theatre. Match the first part of the sentence (items 1-8) with the second part of the sentence (letters A-J) in the table below so that the sentences make sense. (There are two letters you won't need.)

TABLE A		TABLE B	
1.	Shakespeare is still the playwright	A.	which the playwright John Osborne is famous.
2.	They have rebuilt the Globe Theatre,	B.	where musicians would sit and perform.
3.	One of the greatest female roles is Lady Macbeth,	C.	which were made in the fashions of the time.
4.	There used to be a balcony above the stage	D.	whom the theatres were closed down.
5.	In the 18th century, theatres often put on comedies	E.	where many great plays were first performed in the 17th century.
6.	<i>Hamlet</i> is the play in	F.	which made him famous.
7.	<i>Look Back in Anger</i> is the masterpiece for	G.	which would have been played by a male actor.
8.	Actors would wear expensive costumes	H.	which the line "To be or not to be" appears.
		I.	which satirised politicians of the time.
		J.	whose plays are most often studied and performed.

Review 7

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "Who is that woman?"
"She's the woman son is a famous actor."
a. of which
b. of whom
c. whose
d. whom
2. My book is the one which on the chair.
a. lies
b. lying
c. it is lying
d. is lying
3. The poet is not accustomed his work in public.
a. to read
b. to be read
c. of reading
d. to reading
4. "Which film did you see last night?"
"We saw the one that for an Oscar."
a. nominating
b. nominated
c. has been nominated
d. has nominated
5. The critics, all agreed that the film was too long, gave it good reviews anyway.
a. that
b. who
c. which
d. whom
6. The singers with I sang in the choir all had wonderful voices.
a. whom
b. which
c. who
d. them
7. This is the town Mozart was born.
a. which
b. where
c. at which
d. that
8. "What was your most embarrassing moment?"
"The moment I forgot my lines."
a. when
b. which
c. at which
d. where
9. "Is Mr. Burton your favorite acting coach?"
"Yes, he's the one me the most."
a. taught
b. has taught
c. who has taught
d. who was taught
10. We walked all the way the theater.
a. into
b. so far as
c. until
d. to

VOCABULARY

11. The audience enjoyed the actor's wonderful
a. action
b. performance
c. stage
d. spectacle
12. He He didn't come with me as he had promised.
a. let me in
b. let me off
c. let me out
d. let me down
13. The for the play start tomorrow.
a. practices
b. intervals
c. rehearsals
d. casts
14. If you make a good , they'll probably employ you.
a. reputation
b. qualification
c. exhibition
d. impression
15. I'd like two tickets in the back of the balcony, please.
a. row
b. line
c. seat
d. place
16. The movie got very bad
a. marks
b. reviews
c. critics
d. scripts
17. The actors were dressed in 19th-century
a. curtain
b. scenes
c. costumes
d. scenery
18. The artist painted a series of
a. autobiographies
b. sculpture
c. self-portraits
d. compositions
19. The audience started to enthusiastically.
a. applaud
b. appreciate
c. apply
d. appear
20. The actor who the part of the king was excellent.
a. did
b. made
c. showed
d. played



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: **A** If you will put water in the freezer, it turns to ice.

B If you put water in the freezer, it turns to ice.

- 1** **A** When she gives me her new address, I will send her the photographs.
B When she will give me her new address, I will send her the photographs.
- 2** **A** I'll tell him what you said if I won't forget.
B I'll tell him what you said if I don't forget.
- 3** **A** If you feel tired, go to bed early!
B If you will feel tired, go to bed early!
- 4** **A** Unless you don't tell me the truth, I can't help you.
B Unless you tell me the truth, I can't help you.
- 5** **A** As long as I will live, I will never forget him.
B As long as I live, I will never forget him.
- 6** **A** If he has toothache, he should go to the dentist.
B If he had toothache, he should go to the dentist.
- 7** **A** They will discuss the matter with you before they will come to a decision.
B They will discuss the matter with you before they come to a decision.
- 8** **A** If I knew the answer to your question, I would tell you.
B If I would know the answer to your question, I would tell you.
- 9** **A** I wouldn't enjoy myself unless you were with me.
B I didn't enjoy myself unless you would be with me.
- 10** **A** If I would be you, I would try harder.
B If I were you, I would try harder.
- 11** **A** Would the project have been finished if they hadn't worked overtime?
B Would the project have been finished if they wouldn't had worked overtime?
- 12** **A** If they had asked me, I would have lent them the money.
B If they had asked me, I would be lent them the money.
- 13** **A** If she hadn't had to work late, she could have come to the cinema with us.
B If she wouldn't have to work late, she could have come to the cinema with us.
- 14** **A** Once the pupils will have finished the exercise, the teacher will correct it.
B Once the pupils have finished the exercise, the teacher will correct it.
- 15** **A** I wish I lived closer to my friends.
B I wish I live closer to my friends.
- 16** **A** If only I can come with you on holiday.
B If only I could come with you on holiday.
- 17** **A** I wish I hadn't told her the news.
B I wish I did not tell her the news.
- 18** **A** I wish my sister doesn't borrow all my clothes!
B I wish my sister wouldn't borrow all my clothes!
- 19** **A** He wishes he will get more pocket money.
B He wishes he got more pocket money.
- 20** **A** If only he had invited me to his party last week.
B If only he would have invited me to his party last week.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Zero, First, Second and Third Conditionals

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
ZERO CONDITIONAL if / when + Present Simple + Present Simple	a. for facts or truths b. habitual results	<i>If water reaches 100°C, it boils.</i> <i>If / When it rains, I feel miserable.</i>
FIRST CONDITIONAL if + Present Simple + will / can / may + bare infinitive if + Present Simple + Imperative	future possibilities commands	<i>If you try hard, you will succeed.</i> <i>Unless you leave now, you will be late.</i> <i>They'll let us know if they can come tonight.</i> <i>If you know the answer, tell me!</i>
SECOND CONDITIONAL (UNREAL) if + Past Simple + would / could / might + bare infinitive	a hypothetical or imaginary situation in the present or future; also used to express advice, hopes or ambitions	<i>If I had time, I would exercise more.</i> <i>If I were you, I would get help.</i> <i>If I worked harder, I could pass the exam.</i>
THIRD CONDITIONAL (PAST) if + Past Perfect + would / could / might + have + past participle	an unfulfilled condition in the past; may be used to express regret about the past	<i>If I had known the truth, I wouldn't have trusted him.</i>

NOTES

- unless = if not** You'll miss the bus **unless** you hurry. You'll miss the bus **if you don't** hurry.
- In formal English, we use **were** for all subjects in the second conditional.
*If he **were** here, he would enjoy this dinner. (not: If he was . . . X)*
- Passive forms of verbs may also be used in conditional sentences.
*If I **am chosen**, I'll be very happy. If you spoke English, you **would be given** an interview.*

Conditionals without *if* and Temporals

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
CONDITIONALS WITHOUT IF suppose / supposing (that)	to ask <i>what if . . .</i> (the result clause is usually a question)	<i>Supposing we sent her flowers, would she forgive us?</i>
on condition (that) as / so long as provided / providing (that)	to express an idea of strong limitation	<i>I will help you on condition that you keep it a secret.</i>
in case	to refer to things that may not happen or we do in advance to be prepared	<i>Take an umbrella in case it rains.</i>
otherwise (= <i>if you don't</i>)	to say what would happen if things were different	<i>Put on a coat. Otherwise you'll be cold.</i>
TEMPORALS time expression + present tenses + will / can / be going to	future meaning	<i>When I wake up, I will wash my hair. (not: When I will wake up... X)</i> <i>We won't eat until you come.</i>
time expression + Present Perfect + will / can / be going to	to show completion of one action before another	<i>After you've tidied up, you can go out.</i>

TIME EXPRESSIONS

when, until / till, once, the moment that, as soon / long as, before, after, by the time (that), so long as

wish

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
wish + could + bare infinitive	to refer to possibility in the present / future	<i>I wish they could join us tonight.</i>
wish + would + bare infinitive	a complaint about the present or a desire for change	<i>I wish he would stop smoking.</i>
wish + Past Simple / Past Continuous	dissatisfaction with a present situation, hopes, dreams	<i>I wish I spoke better English. I wish she were free tonight. I wish I were going to America.</i>
wish + Past Perfect	regret about a past situation	<i>I wish I had written to them. I wish we hadn't left so early.</i>

NOTES

- Wish* cannot be used with present / future tenses because a wish is always hypothetical. For possible situations, use *hope*:
I hope I have time to watch TV tonight. (= maybe I will) *I wish I had time to watch TV.* (= but I don't)
- Wish* + *would* can only be used with different subjects.
I wish she would stop asking me silly questions. (not: *I wish I would find a job.* X)
- If only* can replace *wish* and is often used to emphasise a wish or to express a strong desire or regret.
If only they would make a decision. *If only she were free tonight.* *If only I had written to them.*
- In formal English, we use *were* for all subjects in wishes about the present (as in the second conditional).
I wish I were old enough to vote. *If I were old enough, I would vote.*
- Wishes showing regret about the past are similar to the third conditional.
I wish I had phoned you. *If I had phoned you, you would have known about the party.*

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



- If it won't rain tomorrow, we will play tennis in the morning.
.....
- Unless you won't be ready on time, I'll leave without you.
.....
- If I would have known you were in hospital, I would have visit you.
.....
- Before you will travel to France, you will have to get a passport.
.....
- We wish we would go swimming more often.
.....
- If only I can go out with you tonight, but my parents won't let me.
.....



Grammar Practice

A. Circle the correct form of the verb in the following paragraph.

As soon as I 1. **have finished** / will finish packing, I'll go and ask my neighbours to water the plants for me till I 2. **will come** / come home in two weeks' time. Before I 3. **go** / will go to bed tonight, I'd better set the alarm clock because I have to get up early tomorrow morning. When I 4. **arrive** / will have arrived at the airport tomorrow, I'll go straight to the check-in and get rid of my heavy case. By the time the plane 5. **will take off** / takes off, I'll be hungry, so I hope we get something to eat quickly. We should be in London by lunchtime, so after I 6. **have registered** / will register at the hotel, I'll get some lunch and then take a bus tour of London. There's so much to see and do in London! As long as my money 7. **has lasted** / lasts, I'll enjoy myself. I'm sure I'll have lots to tell my friends once I 8. **get back** / will get back; they'll be so jealous. Tonight, I'll relax by watching a good film on TV until it 9. **will be** / is time to go to bed. Tomorrow, before I 10. **have left** / leave the house, I must remember to lock all the windows. Oh dear, there's always so much to do before a holiday!



B. Circle the correct form of the verb.

- I wish I **would be** / were / had been / am lying on the beach right now.
- I wish my brother **helped** / is helping / had helped / would help me with my homework later.
- If only she **would advise** / will advise / would have advised / advises me what to do.
- We wish you **phoned** / would phone / had phoned / phone more often from now on.
- I wish I **understand** / understood / had understood / can understand what he is trying to say. If he **has spoken** / had spoken / would speak / spoke more clearly, it would be easier to understand him.
- If only my parents **didn't own** / don't own / wouldn't own / aren't owning such an old car. If their car **is** / were / could be / would be newer, they would have fewer problems with it.
- They wish they **would spend** / will spend / spent / could spend the weekend with us. If they spent the weekend with us, we **can have** / could have / will have / are going to have a really good time together.
- If only we **have visited** / visited / would visit / had visited her when we were in London. She **would have been** / had been / would be / will be very happy to see us.

C. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- If you divide 100 by 25, you (get) four.
- We would hear him better if he (speak) louder.
- If she (not get) the job she applied for, she will be very disappointed.
- They (forget) to phone her if I hadn't reminded them.
- If she (post) the letter this afternoon, will he receive it tomorrow?
- Unless you (agree) to come with me to the lecture, I won't go either.
- I (prefer) to buy a flat in a residential area if I had the choice.
- Unless an athlete (train) every day, he will not be as fit as he should be.
- If I (be) you, I would try to contact them as soon as possible.
- If the weather is good at the weekend, we (spend) the day at the beach.
- William wouldn't have been late for work if he (not catch) in a traffic jam.
- If he (not smoke) so much, he would be healthier.
- You (can finish) the task on time if you had made more effort.
- If we (want) to get seats for the concert, we must buy the tickets soon.

D. Complete the following paragraphs with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Recently, my friend Jackie went to Ireland, but she was a little disappointed with her holiday. She wishes that she (1) (plan) her trip more carefully; if only she (2) (not spend) so much time buying new clothes for her holiday, she might have had more time to plan where she was going.

2. My brother, Richard, is also planning his next holiday at the moment. He says he wishes his holiday (1) (be) longer because he can only go away for two weeks, and he really wishes he (2) (go) away for a month. I wish he (3) (make up) his mind where he's going and stop coming round with different travel brochures all the time. It's making me quite jealous! I wish I (4) (not have) important exams at university at the end of the month because I really wish I (5) (travel) with him.

3. I wish I (1) (know) what I wanted to do this summer, but I can't decide. For a start, I've got no money. If only my grandparents (2) (give) me a plane ticket for my birthday next week, that would solve all my problems, but I think that's unlikely! If only I (3) (be born) into a family of millionaires – but that's wishful thinking!



Exam Practice

A. Use the words in Table A to complete the sentences in Table B so that they have the meaning indicated in Table C. (Use each item in Table A only once. There are two you won't need.)

TIP! Read the information in Table C carefully – the clues will help you remember your grammar!

TABLE A			
A when	B unless	C as soon as	D provided
E otherwise	F if only	G would	H in case

TABLE B		TABLE C
1.	You should get extra soft drinks uninvited guests turn up.	<i>Advising someone to be prepared in advance.</i>
2.	..... I had listened to her advice.	<i>Expressing regret about the past.</i>
3.	You can have tomorrow off you stay late the next day.	<i>Stating a condition or limitation.</i>
4.	..... we've finished decorating, we'll move in.	<i>Talking about completing one action before another.</i>
5.	John needs to get a job; he won't be able to pay his rent.	<i>Talking about a situation if something doesn't happen.</i>
6.	I wish my neighbours stop making so much noise.	<i>Making a complaint about others' behaviour.</i>



B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

TIP! Make sure that the meaning of the second sentence is the same as the original one.

1. The students were angry at the cancellation of their trip. **cancelled**
If their trip, the students wouldn't have been angry.
2. I'm sorry I forgot your wedding anniversary last week. **wish**
I your wedding anniversary last week.
3. She'll check the arrival time of the plane before she leaves for the airport. **until**
She won't leave for the airport the arrival time of the plane.
4. I didn't find the exam difficult because I worked very hard for it. **if**
I would have found the exam more difficult so hard for it.
5. I would like our teacher to be less strict. **only**
If so strict.
6. He will come to the restaurant with us unless he has to work late that night. **if**
He will come to the restaurant with us to work late that night.
7. There's no point in planning a holiday without knowing all the possible dates. **once**
We'll plan a holiday all the possible dates.
8. It's a shame we don't go to the theatre more often. **wish**
I to the theatre more often.

C. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

THE LUCKIEST MAN ALIVE?

Many people wish they (1) win the lottery. Certainly if I (2) £600,000, I would consider myself a very lucky person. Frane Selak, a Croatian man (3) won that amount, had (4) so much bad luck in his life that you wouldn't have expected him to win (5) at all. In the past 40 years, he has (6) involved in a plane crash, a train crash, and several bus and car crashes. His first accident was in 1968, when a train went off the rails into an icy river. Seventeen passengers drowned but Mr Selak managed to swim to safety. A year (7), he was the only survivor of an air crash. Strangely enough, he wouldn't have been on the plane at all (8) he hadn't begged the airline to let him travel. The plane was already full, but because he needed to get home urgently to see his sick mother, they allowed him to occupy a staff seat. If I (9) Mr Selak, I don't think I would ever travel (10) But now that he has plenty of money, he intends (11) buy a new car and a speedboat. He believes that his bad luck is (12) and he is now ready to enjoy life. If only I were so lucky!





TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

TRAVEL AND TOURISM

abroad	confirm	expedition	package tour	resort	timetable
accommodation	cruise	explore	passenger	self-catering	travel agent
brochure	destination	high season	passport	sightseeing	trip
campsite	excursion	luggage	reservation	souvenir	youth hostel

- I always try to travel light. I never take a lot of with me.
- The flight was delayed, so we were an hour late getting to our
- It is fun to find new places and them.
- When Alice goes on holiday, she always buys lots of
- You should call the airline before your flight to your booking.
- They spent their holiday at a famous ski in the Swiss Alps.
- I'd prefer a holiday so we can prepare our own meals from time to time.
- When young people go travelling, a is a cheap place for them to stay.
- We took a day's to the island.
- Marion and her husband have gone ; they're not in the country just now.
- It's a lot more expensive to visit the island during the

TRANSPORT

arrival	check in	cyclist	flight attendant	platform	terminal
board	compartment	deck	hitchhiking	port	traffic light
cabin	crew	departure	land	sink	traffic warden
caravan	crossing	ferry	motorist	take off	vehicle

- When you get to the airport, the first thing you have to do is
- The passengers were asked to the plane as quickly as possible.
- When a plane is ready to or land, the passengers must fasten their seat belts.
- As the ship sailed off, the passengers stood on the and waved goodbye.
- You need to be at the at least an hour before the ferry sails.
- They found seats in a non-smoking in the train.
- can be dangerous. You can't always trust a driver you don't know.
- A is the person responsible for making sure traffic regulations are obeyed.
- The people who work on a ship or aeroplane are called the

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

- One of the reasons people travel abroad is in order to **know** / **find out** / **meet** about other cultures.
- Our train **travel** / **journey** / **voyage** to Portugal was very long and tiring.
- The plane was comfortable so the **cruise** / **drive** / **flight** to San Francisco was pleasant.
- The take-off was **delayed** / **postponed** / **cancelled** an hour because of bad weather.
- We would like to **hire** / **rent** / **borrow** a house in Tuscany for a month.
- They **lived** / **remained** / **stayed** in a four-star hotel and enjoyed it very much.
- All the porters were busy, so I had to **bring** / **pack** / **carry** my own suitcases.
- It was interesting to learn about the **habits** / **customs** / **behaviours** and traditions while we were in Italy.
- The children are **expecting** / **looking forward to** / **waiting** their holidays.
- When I got back from the USA, my brother **picked me up** / **dropped me off** / **called for me** at the airport.

B. PREPOSITIONS Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition.

- Northern Europe is very **different** southern Europe.
- Our neighbours **left** Madrid this morning. I'm sure they'll love Spain.
- The airline company is **proud** its good service.
- I am not **satisfied** my travel agent; he's not very efficient.
- We were **surprised** the high prices in such a small place.
- **the way** to the airport, they realised that they had forgotten their passports.
- He arrived at the station **just** **time** to catch his train.
- We went part of the way **bus** and then continued **foot**.

C. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the words below. You will need to use some of the words more than once.

spend • go • take • ahead • make • return • double • first • single • set

- We **off** after breakfast. We knew it would **a long time** to get to our destination.
- I'd like to **camping** this year. Do you know any good campsites?
- It's a busy time of year. We'd better phone the hotel and **a reservation**.
- The train was early so we arrived a little **of schedule**.
- They booked a **room** in the hotel for themselves and a **room** for their daughter.
- We should **arrangements** to meet at 8.00 am in order to **sightseeing**.
- She decided to travel **-class** because she thought it would be more comfortable.
- I'd rather my **time** lying on the beach than looking round a museum.
- A **ticket** will only take us one way. A **ticket** will take us there and back.
- They're planning to **on a day trip** to Versailles, to see the palace and **a long walk**.



D. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs with *take*.

take after • take in • take off • take over • take up • take down • take on • take to

1. The guidebook contained so much information that I couldn't it all
2. She needs to do some form of activity so she has mountain-biking.
3. He his mother; they both love travelling.
4. It was so hot on the island that we our jackets.
5. I just can't our tour guide at all. He's very bad-tempered.
6. Ever since a big company this hotel, it has improved greatly.
7. The travel agent has too much work. She can't cope.
8. He every word that the tour guide said on a piece of paper.



Exam Practice

A. Match the first part of the sentence (items 1-8) with the second part (letters A-H) in the table below so that the sayings and quotations about travel make sense.

TIP! Pay attention to grammar and syntax as well as meaning when matching beginnings and endings.

TABLE A		TABLE B	
1.	A journey of a thousand miles begins	A.	the roads and the accommodation.
2.	Aeroplanes are like diets; they are	B.	more time to drive to the office.
3.	Though we travel the world over to find the beautiful, we must carry it	C.	a new way of looking at things.
4.	Life is a journey that must be travelled no matter how bad	D.	with us or we find it not.
5.	If you look like your passport picture, you are	E.	with a single step.
6.	One's destination is never a place but rather	F.	too ill to travel.
7.	Most travel is best of all in the anticipation or the remembering. The reality has	G.	wonderful things for other people to go on.
8.	Every year it takes less time to fly across the Atlantic and	H.	more to do with losing your luggage.

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- He arrived at the airport at the last minute and ran to the gate. **just**
He arrived at the airport and ran to the gate.
- It was a lovely day so we walked from our hotel to the centre of town. **foot**
It was a lovely day so we from our hotel to the centre of town.
- The children can't wait to go on holiday. **looking**
The children on holiday.
- I couldn't absorb it all because there was too much to see. **take**
I couldn't because there was too much to see.
- The taxis in New York are not the same as the taxis in London. **different**
The taxis in New York the taxis in London.
- If we want a room in the hotel, we should book today. **reservation**
If we want a room in the hotel, we should today.
- The plane has been in the air for 20 minutes now. **off**
The plane ago.
- What do you plan to do while you are in Spain? **spend**
How are you while you are in Spain?

C. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

CENTREPARCS VILLAGES

What do most people look for when choosing a holiday – the chance to relax, a change of (1), some good food and maybe the chance to go (2)? If this sounds like your idea of a good time, you'd (3) a break at one of the CentreParcs holiday villages. These (4), set in beautiful forest locations, offer all the (5) you need for a relaxing holiday. A range of (6) is available, from small lakeside apartments to huge villas in the woods. All these options have fully equipped kitchens because CentreParcs holidays are (7), but that needn't mean hard work. You can arrange to have your shopping waiting for you on (8), or you can eat at one of the fantastic restaurants. During the day, you can (9) the forest on foot or hire a bike if you'd prefer. There are lots of organised activities, from horse-riding to watercolour painting, but you should book a place in advance. One of the best things about CentreParcs is that the weather can't spoil your holiday. There are (10) pools with waves where the water is always warm.

A holiday like this can be expensive in the (11) season, but there are lots of special offers for midweek breaks. If you want to (12) out more, order a brochure which will show you just how fantastic these villages are.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A residents | B surroundings | C suburbs | D scenes |
| 2. A hitchhiking | B viewing | C sightseeing | D boarding |
| 3. A please | B entertain | C satisfy | D enjoy |
| 4. A trips | B journeys | C resorts | D expeditions |
| 5. A facilities | B souvenirs | C customs | D habits |
| 6. A compartments | B hospitality | C reservation | D accommodation |
| 7. A full board | B self-catering | C double | D first-class |
| 8. A departure | B delay | C tour | D arrival |
| 9. A explore | B drive | C travel | D know |
| 10. A rural | B amateur | C open | D indoor |
| 11. A high | B big | C top | D most |
| 12. A take | B find | C set | D know |

Review 8

- A. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TAKING A GAP YEAR

Wouldn't it be nice to take a year off to travel to another country or to go round (1) world? If you (2) the chance to do this, would you go? In Britain many young people take the opportunity to travel after they (3) finished their final school exams and before they go on to university. This is called taking a gap year. They may travel cheaply (4) a few months, staying at youth hostels and spending their time sightseeing and finding out (5) the countries they are visiting. Others (6) abroad to work and get experience which may be useful later in their careers. For example, if you want to go on to study to become a vet, you (7) get work on a farm in Australia. (8) you want to work with children, you could become an au pair and live with a family, helping out with housework and child care. Voluntary work (9) also popular and if you've (10) wished you could do something to help people in developing countries, there are many organisations which send young volunteers abroad. Travelling or working in your gap year is a great way to (11) people and broaden your horizons, as long (12) you don't mind postponing your studies for a while.

- B. **WORD FORMATION** Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

SOMEWHERE TO STAY

Having made the decision to spend a week in the south of France last August, I asked my local travel (1) about destinations that might suit me. She suggested I make a (2) at a hotel in Cannes. It seemed suitable so I instructed her to make the necessary (3)

AGENCY
RESERVE

I was very much looking forward to my holiday and was pleased when the day of my (4) arrived. Everything went according to plan until I got to the hotel. On (5) I was informed that a mistake had been made and there was no room for me. I was understandably angry as my booking had been (6) by the hotel before I set off.

ARRANGE

DEPART
ARRIVE

As everyone knows, it is difficult to find (7) during the (8) season, so I expected it to be very hard to find somewhere else to stay. However, it turned out to be (9) easy. I found a small hotel on the edge of a village which was (10) with most tourists as it was situated a few kilometres from the beach; something which didn't bother me at all.

CONFIRMATION

ACCOMMODATE
HEIGHT

SURPRISE
POPULAR

Review 8

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "What time are they expected to arrive?"
"Unless the plane late, around 7.30."
a. will be
b. won't be
c. is
d. isn't
2. We will arrange a trip when we to the travel agent.
a. will go
b. go
c. are going
d. will have gone
3. I wish you plan a vacation without asking my opinion.
a. won't
b. didn't
c. couldn't
d. wouldn't
4. "It's a shame you were in London for only two days."
"Yes, I wish I there longer."
a. were
b. would be
c. could be
d. had been
5. If you had left on time, you the plane.
a. won't have missed
b. wouldn't have missed
c. wouldn't miss
d. hadn't missed
6. You may unfasten your seat belt the plane takes off.
a. provided that
b. as long as
c. in case
d. once
7. If I you, I'd go to Italy this year.
a. were
b. would be
c. could be
d. had been
8. I wish I enough money to go abroad.
a. would have
b. could have
c. had
d. have had
9. I'll send you the tickets they arrive.
a. by the time
b. as soon as
c. in case
d. as long as
10. "Are you going to the travel agent's today?"
"I'm not sure. If I too busy, I might."
a. am not
b. won't be
c. don't be
d. wouldn't be

VOCABULARY

11. Rimini is a great vacation in Italy.
a. excursion
b. resort
c. home
d. sight
12. I our new geography teacher right away. I really liked her.
a. took to
b. took on
c. took after
d. took up
13. I'll be traveling alone - I'd like a room.
a. first
b. alone
c. double
d. single
14. We arrived at the airport just in for the flight.
a. period
b. hour
c. time
d. schedule
15. Please come in - we've been you.
a. waiting
b. remaining
c. expecting
d. looking forward to
16. Mr. Stevens is not here. He's gone on a business to Edinburgh.
a. journey
b. trip
c. voyage
d. expedition
17. The sleeping on the train are quite comfortable.
a. cabins
b. compartments
c. rooms
d. caravans
18. If you're not with the service, you should complain.
a. proud
b. sympathetic
c. convenient
d. satisfied
19. It's hard to find accommodations in the season.
a. high
b. top
c. above
d. big
20. Call the airline to your flight time.
a. rent
b. check in
c. confirm
d. hire



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: **A** I need all the informations I can get.

B I need all the information I can get.

- 1 **A** She didn't have many times to interview so much people.
B She didn't have much time to interview so many people.
- 2 **A** We didn't like none of the books.
B We didn't like any of the books.
- 3 **A** There were lots of people at the theme park.
B There were a lot people at the theme park.
- 4 **A** My mother is a nurse and my father is a retired.
B My mother is a nurse and my father is retired.
- 5 **A** Dogs make friendly pets.
B The dogs make friendly pets.
- 6 **A** Her luggages are still in her bedroom.
B Her luggage is still in her bedroom.
- 7 **A** We do all we can to help the disabled.
B We do all we can to help disabled.
- 8 **A** The news we've received is not very good.
B The news we've received are not very good.
- 9 **A** "What did you do with the money?"
"I gave it to Tom."
B "What did you do with the money?"
"I gave them to Tom."
- 10 **A** Although the film was good, a few people went to see it.
B Although the film was good, few people went to see it.
- 11 **A** Paul speaks the Japanese well.
B Paul speaks Japanese well.
- 12 **A** They ate a little and felt less hungry.
B They ate little and felt less hungry.
- 13 **A** She has brown hairs and blue eyes.
B She has brown hair and blue eyes.
- 14 **A** Pat chose the most of expensive dishes on the menu.
B Pat chose the most expensive dishes on the menu.
- 15 **A** There isn't anything exciting to do in this town.
B There isn't something exciting to do in this town.
- 16 **A** I haven't got some brothers.
B I haven't got any brothers.
- 17 **A** We love the nature.
B We love nature.
- 18 **A** I think we should wait until a few more people arrive.
B I think we should wait until few more people arrive.
- 19 **A** There was little room in the bus; many people had to stand.
B There was a little room in the bus; many people had to stand.
- 20 **A** She made some complaint to the manager.
B She made a complaint to the manager.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Nouns are either *countable* or *uncountable*. Occasionally they are both (e.g., *hair, life, fruit*).

- **Countable** nouns can be singular or plural and can be used with numbers.

Regular plurals include:

house – houses, wish – wishes, dictionary – dictionaries

Irregular plurals include:

woman – women, person – people, foot – feet

- **Uncountable** nouns cannot be made plural and cannot be used with numbers. They take singular verbs.

The money has been received.

That furniture is new.

To indicate the amount of an uncountable noun, we use expressions of quantity such as *a litre of, a bag of, plenty of*.

I bought two packets of sugar, a bottle of wine and a bar of chocolate.

He has plenty of experience.

Common uncountable nouns include:

advice, news, information, water, luggage, money, beauty, independence, freedom, research, furniture

Indefinite Articles (*a, an*); Definite Article (*the*)

ARTICLES	USE	EXAMPLES
a, an	with singular, countable nouns	
	a. to refer to something that is not specific	<i>I can see a horse in that field.</i>
	b. to show a job or profession	<i>She is a secretary.</i>
	c. with certain numbers and expressions of quantity	<i>Over a thousand people were in the hall.</i> <i>I went out with a couple of friends.</i>
the	d. in expressions of price, frequency or speed	<i>I go to the dentist twice a year.</i> <i>They were driving at 100 km an hour.</i>
	with countable and uncountable nouns	
	a. to refer to something specific	<i>The children are sleeping upstairs.</i>
	b. with a singular noun to refer to a group (e.g., type of animal, machine, musical instrument)	<i>The elephant is found in Africa.</i> (= Elephants are found in Africa.)
	c. with an adjective to refer to a group	<i>The young are more independent today.</i>
	d. before names, titles, names of events	<i>The Browns live next door to us.</i> <i>The prime minister gave a long speech.</i>
	e. before the names of rivers, seas, mountain ranges, etc.	<i>The Thames flows through London.</i> <i>The Pacific is a large ocean.</i> <i>Many people go skiing in the Alps.</i>
	f. with unique objects (e.g., sun, moon, sky, Earth)	<i>The sun rises in the east.</i>
	g. with superlatives	<i>I think physics is the most difficult subject.</i>

NOTES

We do not usually use an article in the following situations:

- 1 **before abstract nouns**

Patience is a quality many people do not have.

- 2 **with the names of activities, meals, languages, holidays, countries**

I love dancing and basketball.

We had chicken for dinner.

We went to France on holiday.

She speaks German fluently.

He came to see us at Easter.

- 3 **before the words *work, home, school, church, town, prison, hospital, bed, university, college* when we refer to the idea of the noun / place, not a specific noun.**

He's at work.

She's not at school today.

Why don't you go to bed early?

We only use *the* with these words to refer to a specific example of one of these places.

Her house is next to the school.

- 4 **with methods of transport**

We came by taxi.

They travelled by bus.

He went on foot.

Quantifiers

QUANTIFIER	USE	EXAMPLES
much	with uncountable nouns (often in negative sentences)	<i>We don't have much time.</i>
many	with countable nouns	<i>She has many clever ideas.</i>
a little	with uncountable nouns, it has a positive meaning (= <i>some</i>)	<i>There's a little coffee in the jar.</i>
little	with uncountable nouns, it has a negative meaning (= <i>not much</i>)	<i>I have a little money in the bank.</i> <i>There is very little respect for him.</i> <i>There is very little time left.</i>
a few	with countable nouns, it has a positive meaning (= <i>some</i>)	<i>She stayed for a few hours.</i>
few	with countable nouns, it has a negative meaning (= <i>not many</i>)	<i>He has a few good friends.</i> <i>There were very few people there.</i> <i>Few students passed the exam.</i>
some someone, somebody, something, somewhere	a. in affirmative sentences b. in polite questions, offers and requests Note: <i>some</i> is used with countable and uncountable nouns	<i>There is some milk in the fridge.</i> <i>Let's find somewhere nice to eat.</i> <i>Would you like some cake?</i> <i>Would you like some biscuits?</i>
any anyone, anybody, anything, anywhere	a. in questions b. in negative sentences c. no specific preference Note: <i>any</i> is used with countable and uncountable nouns	<i>Do you have any bananas?</i> <i>I haven't seen them anywhere.</i> <i>We never told anyone.</i> <i>Choose anything you like.</i>
no no one, nobody, nothing, nowhere, none, none of	in affirmative sentences, <i>no</i> takes a singular verb in formal English (= <i>not any</i>) Note: <i>no</i> is used with countable and uncountable nouns	<i>There is no food on the table.</i> <i>We saw nobody we knew.</i> <i>"How many did you buy?" "None."</i> <i>None of the boys is here.</i>

- NOTES**
- Other quantifiers include: *plenty of, a lot of, lots of.*
*He has **plenty of** money.* *She has **a lot of** friends.* *We have **lots of** time.*
 - Too much** and **too many** mean more than necessary.
*She drinks **too much** coffee.* *He smoked **too many** cigarettes.*

COMMON MISTAKES



The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.

- The French is spoken in several countries around the world.
.....
- They gave us lots of good advices.
.....
- The most people in this country have a car.
.....
- I didn't do nothing interesting last weekend.
.....
- Can you give me anything to drink, please?
.....



Grammar Practice

A. Complete the following sentences with *a, an or the*. If you think none of these is needed, leave the space blank.

- Smith family lives next door to us.
- Sally is my best friend.
- People say that British are very reserved, but it's not really true.
- She has a large collection of CDs. She must have at least hundred.
- My brother plays guitar but I play basketball.
- He drove along the motorway at 80 kilometres hour.
- She loves horses. She has horse of her own and goes riding every day.
- diamonds are very expensive. They are found in South Africa.
- hamburgers and chips are typical American food.
- She was late and only had time to drink half cup of coffee at breakfast.
- blue is my favourite colour.
- They intend to go to church on Sunday morning.

B. Circle the correct answer.

- Her **advice** / **advices** about buying a house **was** / **were** very helpful.
- The **fruit** / **fruits** salad and grilled **vegetable** / **vegetables** they served last night **was** / **were** delicious.
- Lorna's **hair** / **hairs** in this photo **was** / **were** long and straight, but now she wears it short.
- If you need more **information** / **informations**, we can provide **it** / **them** for you.
- She spent all her **life** / **lives** in a village with only two **hundred** / **hundreds** inhabitants.
- There **is** / **are** some **spaghetti** / **spaghetthis** in the fridge. Would you like **that** / **them** for supper?

C. Complete the following sentences with *a little / little, a few / few*.

- There has been so rain this year people are worried there will be a drought.
- This morning there was thick snow on the ground, but by the evening there was only left.
- people came to the lecture because it was so poorly advertised.
- She told of her closest friends the news, but she kept it a secret from most people.
- Can you give me ideas for my project?
- She works long hours so she has very spare time.

D. Circle the correct quantifier to complete the following paragraph.

Today, 1. many / much / a lot people enjoy having a hobby, but in the future, hobbies will become 2. many / much / lots of more important. People who work long hours have very 3. a little / little / few time for leisure activities, but now the working week is getting shorter and within 4. a few / few / little years, people will have 5. lots / many / a lot of free time to spend on their hobbies and pastimes. At the moment, very 6. few / little / many steps are being taken to prepare people for this situation. Perhaps the time has come for schools to give 7. a little / much / few thought to this problem and to introduce leisure education into the school timetable. It would not take 8. plenty of / many / a lot of money, just good organisation. The benefits would be enormous. Retired people, for example, have 9. plenty of / few / little free time on their hands, but many of them have no idea what to do with it. They would be happier now if they had received 10. a little / a few / many advice before they retired.



E. Complete the following sentences with the words below. You will have to use some words more than once.

some • someone • something • somewhere • any • anyone • anything
anywhere • no • no one • nothing • nowhere • none

- We don't have cheese left. Please buy when you go to the supermarket today.
- "How many of the athletes had taken drugs?"
"..... ; the tests were all OK."
- I lost my glasses yesterday. They are to be found. Have you seen them ?
- There must be in the class that understands the question. Can't answer it?
- "Did you find interesting on the Internet?"
"No, I searched for some time, but there was I could use."
- We'd like to go different this weekend, but there is time to organise anything.
- I wanted to get you for your birthday, but of the things I saw appealed to me.
- He could hear moving around upstairs, but when he went up, there was there.



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- There are days until the end of the semester.
 - just few
 - a little
 - just a few
 - very little
- "Frank was late again today."
"His teacher has punished him for that already!"
 - so many times
 - the many times
 - so much time
 - very much time
- The tests showed that there wrong with Ken.
 - wasn't nothing
 - wasn't something
 - was anything
 - wasn't anything
- I invited friends to dinner last night.
 - a couple of
 - the couple
 - the couple of
 - a couple
- "What did you buy at the market?"
"I picked up really nice glasses."
 - few
 - some
 - any
 - much
- "How did you get to the airport?"
"We went – it's quicker."
 - in taxi
 - by a taxi
 - with the taxi
 - by taxi
- The speed limit on this road is
 - 40 miles an hour
 - the 40 miles an hour
 - 40 a mile hour
 - 40 mile hour
- Greg doesn't intend to go – he wants to get a job.
 - to the college
 - to college
 - a college
 - the college

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- There was an inter-school match yesterday, but not many pupils came to watch it. **few**
There was an inter-school match yesterday, but to watch it.
- There were many places to stay in the little town we went to. **accommodation**
There available in the little town we went to.
- It's a pity that not a single sandwich was eaten. **none**
It's a pity that eaten.
- The carton of milk was almost empty. **hardly**
There in the carton.
- Last night, my favourite TV announcer read the news. **by**
Last night, my favourite TV announcer.
- There are only a few more minutes left before the plane takes off. **time**
There before the plane takes off.
- She looked unsuccessfully for something new to wear to the party. **find**
She to wear to the party.
- He couldn't tell us a great deal about the situation. **information**
He couldn't about the situation.

C. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TIP! Fill in the answers you are sure of first. Then go back and complete the more difficult ones.

MARKS AND SPENCER

There are probably (1) few people who have not heard of that famous British institution, the Marks and Spencer chain of department stores. The business was founded by Michael Marks in 1884, when he opened a market stall in Leeds, in (2) north of England. The stall was called a "penny bazaar" because (3) of the products he sold cost more than a penny. Today Marks and Spencer, or "Marks" as it is commonly known, is a thriving business with shops in (4) towns in Britain and even abroad. To the British, Marks is a household name and the symbol of good quality at a reasonable price. Marks has several departments that sell everything (5) clothes and shoes to foodstuffs. The clothes are well made, and there is a wide variety of fruit and vegetables in the food department. The quality of the goods (6) guaranteed by their policy not to sell (7) in their shops which does not come up to their very high standards. For the busy working woman who has very (8) time for shopping, Marks has several advantages, the (9) important of which is that it is quick and easy to shop there. Also, if a customer is not satisfied with (10), she will not have (11) problem getting her money back. But perhaps the nicest thing about Marks and Spencer is that it has (12) good reputation for friendly service.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.



SHOPPING AND CONSUMER GOODS

aisle	checkout	deliver	exchange	receipt	shop assistant
bargain	consumer	department store	luxury	reduction	shopkeeper
brand name	counter	discount	product	refund	shopper
cashier	customer	display	purchase	salesperson	stall

1. She paid for all the things she bought in the supermarket at the
2. It's hard to push your trolley through the supermarket if the are too narrow.
3. I went to the and asked the lady there to wrap up the present I had bought.
4. She got a job as a in the ladieswear department.
5. We've asked them to our new fridge on Friday.
6. If you go to the sales, you can find lots of
7. That shop is very exclusive and expensive. It only sells goods.
8. If you don't like my present, you can take it back to the shop and it for something else.
9. At Christmas time, the shops in England have lovely window
10. If you something in the sales, you often can't return it.
11. When you return something to a shop and get your money back, you get a

MONEY

account	cash	debt	expense	loan	savings
afford	cheque	deposit	financial	note	value
bankrupt	coin	donate	fine	owe	wealthy
budget	credit card	economic	invest	poverty	withdraw

12. They haven't paid me back the money I gave them. They still me £25.
13. If you can something, you have enough money to buy it.
14. People who are in difficulty have money problems.
15. I wonder what the of their house is today.
16. If you buy something and don't want to pay for it immediately, you can use your
17. In many European countries there are still people who live in great
18. Paying in means paying in notes and coins.
19. You must learn to your money, otherwise you will have many
20. When you money from the bank, you take the money out of your account.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

- They've reduced the **cost** / **price** of their summer clothes.
- It is much more **economic** / **economical** to buy the family-size shampoo.
- I went to the new boutique to **get** / **take** some shoes.
- The shop refused to exchange the CD I'd bought without the **recipe** / **receipt**.
- He had to pay the electricity and telephone **bills** / **notes** this week.
- Mail-order companies send you a **catalogue** / **prospectus** and you can make your purchases by post.
- I asked him if I could **lend** / **borrow** £20 from him. He agreed to **lend** / **borrow** me the money.
- Her father **earns** / **gains** £40,000 a year. The family is quite well off.
- I rarely wear my gold jewellery because it's quite **expensive** / **valuable**.
- He spends money like water. He doesn't **take care of** / **care for** his money at all.

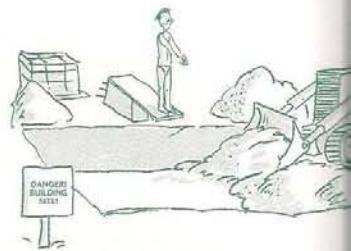
B. PREPOSITIONS Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition.

- How much money do you **spend** clothes a year?
- She **paid** the shopping and put it all in the car.
- The price of computers has **come** a lot in recent years.
- You are wrong if you think he is well off. On the contrary, he is quite **hard**
- If you are not satisfied with the phone you bought, **take** it to the shop.
- We **complained** to the manager the poor service in his shop.
- Do I have to **pay** **cash** or can I **pay** **cheque** or credit card?
- This house is not **sale**. The paintings from the house will be **sale** at the art gallery next week.
- His brother **deals** second-hand cars. He has to **deal** all kinds of difficult customers.
- I bought beautiful apples **50 pence** in the market. You cannot **buy** them such a **price** at an ordinary greengrocer.

C. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with one of the words below. You will need to use one of the words more than once.

cash • make • consumer • get • out • broke • free • worth • do • run

- Getting a new job would **a big difference** to her way of life.
- They will send you their catalogue **of charge**. You don't have to pay.
- They asked the bank to **a cheque** for them so they would have some money.
- She says she's going to **a complaint** to the manager of the bookshop.
- That old silver dish you bought must be **a lot of money** today.
- If you spend more money than you have, you will **into debt**.
- If we have time, we'll **the shopping** after work this evening.
- We live in a **society**; we buy, buy, buy all the time.
- The shop didn't have the book I wanted. It was **of stock**.
- He tried all kinds of jobs, but he never managed to **any money**.
- I've got no money left; I'm
- They've stopped building the new swimming pool. They've **out of money**.



D. **PHRASAL VERBS** Complete the phrasal verbs with *pay* or *give* using the words below. You will need to use some of the words more than once.

out • away • back • off • up

- I want to return the money you lent me. I'll **pay** you tomorrow.
- The shop assistant **gave** me my credit card and I put it into my wallet.
- The shopkeeper had to **pay** a lot of money to repair the broken window.
- At that moment she was so angry that she wanted to **pay** her friend for what she had done.
- All her hard work in the bank **paid** when she was promoted.
- The article **gave** a lot of information that was supposed to be secret.
- They **gave** leaflets in the street advertising the new sports shop.
- Don't buy him a lighter – he has **given** smoking.
- The store is **giving** a free printer with every new computer.
- We've finally finished **paying** the mortgage on our house.



Exam Practice

A. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- He decided to withdraw some money from his account. **take**
He decided to his account.
- She still owes them the money. **back**
She the money yet.
- We can't afford to go on holiday this year. **enough**
We to go on holiday this year.
- I didn't have enough cash left to buy the shoes. **run**
I couldn't buy the shoes because I cash by then.
- They complained about the poor quality of the products. **made**
A about the poor quality of the products.
- She has no intention of selling her car at the moment. **sale**
Her car at the moment.
- It doesn't cost anything for customers to join the discount club – you just complete this form. **free**
Customers can join our discount club by completing this form.
- Your gold watch is very valuable, isn't it? **worth**
Your gold watch is , isn't it?

B. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! Check your spelling carefully. Your answer will be marked incorrect if the word is spelt incorrectly.

BUYING A CAR

For many families, buying a new car is a major (1) undertaking. Over the last 50 years, car (2) has increased enormously. Today, the average family has one, if not two, cars. Most people are so dependent on their car that they can't get around without it.

(3) a new car can be difficult, so it is best to go to a reliable (4) who will not try to cheat you and who will be able to offer you (5) in making your purchase. He will help you buy a car which is (6) and which suits your needs. To try and choose one on your own without such help would not be (7)

Most buyers find that car salesmen are prepared to offer them a reasonable (8) on the price if they agree to sell them their old car. A car, of course, is a big (9), and many families will have to ask the bank for a (10) to help them buy one. These are usually quite easy to take out.

FINANCE

OWNER

PURCHASE

DEAL

ASSIST

AFFORD

ADVICE

REDUCE

INVEST

LEND

C. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

TO SHOP OR NOT TO SHOP?

When was the last time you went shopping? It probably wasn't very long ago – after all, we live in a (1) society and we are surrounded by advertisements which try to persuade us to buy (2) that we don't really need. We shop to make ourselves feel better when we're upset, or we shop for fun. It's always enjoyable to look at the window (3) or browse through a (4), just thinking about what we might get. A few years ago, items like mobile phones or widescreen TVs were considered (5) goods. These days it seems that everyone has them. When paying for such items, it's very easy to (6) into debt as most shops offer you the chance to (7) the cost in installments. So, unless you are very wealthy, you need to budget to make sure that you don't spend more than you earn. (8), you will find yourself unable to pay the (9) at the end of the month. It can be difficult to get by, but while we might feel hard up, we should never forget that there are millions of people in the world who live in real (10), without enough money to feed their families. If we all (11) just a small amount, we could make a (12) to a lot of people's lives.



- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A shopping | B consumer | C sales | D financial |
| 2. A products | B shoppers | C savings | D receipts |
| 3. A shows | B displays | C stalls | D exhibitions |
| 4. A catalogue | B report | C reference | D prospectus |
| 5. A expense | B refund | C luxury | D brand |
| 6. A owe | B get | C become | D go |
| 7. A give back | B give away | C pay off | D pay for |
| 8. A When | B If | C Otherwise | D Provided |
| 9. A accounts | B fines | C cheques | D bills |
| 10. A poverty | B budget | C poor | D reduction |
| 11. A invested | B withdrew | C purchased | D donated |
| 12. A complaint | B money | C difference | D progress |

Review 9

A. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. We don't have any of those CDs in the shop at the moment. **stock**
Those CDs at the moment.
2. We will buy that sofa only if it is greatly reduced in the sales. **not**
We will it is greatly reduced in the sales.
3. I lent my sister £100 last month. **from**
My sister last month.
4. Please don't tell anyone my secret. **give**
Please my secret.
5. His health is much better now that he has given up smoking. **difference**
Giving up smoking has to his health.
6. Do you know a nice place we could go to for a meal tonight? **somewhere**
Can you suggest a meal tonight?
7. We don't have enough money for such an expensive car. **afford**
We expensive car.
8. It isn't long until your exam so you need to start revising. **time**
You don't until your exam so you need to start revising.

B. **Complete the sentences below by changing the form of the word in parentheses when this is necessary.**

1. As (**consume**), we should all be aware of the ways in which shops try to get us to buy more.
2. I want a washing machine that is (**economy**) to run because I don't want high electricity bills.
3. There has been a 10% (**reduce**) in the tax on new cars.
4. I spent all my (**save**) on my new motorbike.
5. That writer has sold a lot of books – he must be a (**wealth**) man by now.
6. Can you tell me if this ring is (**value**) or not?
7. Robert was very helpful and gave me lots of (**inform**) about the company.
8. Can you give me some (**advise**) about investing my money?
9. I don't think she is (**beauty**), but everyone has their own opinion.
10. There are (**lend**) available to help young people set up new businesses.

Review 9

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- We want to choose nice furniture for our new house.
 - any
 - some
 - a
 - a few
- She is driver.
 - excellent
 - the excellent
 - an excellent
 - one excellent
- "Did you buy a new dress?"
"No, I didn't see that I liked."
 - nothing
 - something
 - none
 - anything
- "Did you hear the news today?"
"Yes, very depressing."
 - it was
 - they were
 - there was
 - there were
- I only have dollars in my wallet.
 - a little
 - little
 - few
 - a few
- These apples cost \$2 pound.
 - one
 - the
 - a
 - by the
- of my friends bought me a gift.
 - No one
 - Not any
 - None
 - No ones
- The bank didn't give me information about my account.
 - many
 - some
 - few
 - much
- If I some money, I could have bought a drink.
 - had
 - had had
 - would have
 - would have had
- I wish I to go shopping this evening.
 - didn't need
 - need not
 - wouldn't need
 - needn't have

VOCABULARY

- I went to a sale and got a few good
 - bargains
 - luxuries
 - exchanges
 - stalls
- Jill didn't have enough money so we her some.
 - donated
 - contributed
 - borrowed
 - lent
- If you study hard, it will in the future.
 - pay back
 - pay off
 - give back
 - give up
- I wonder what the of this diamond is.
 - expense
 - worth
 - value
 - wealth
- The camera was defective so I asked for a
 - refund
 - loan
 - credit
 - discount
- Always ask for a when you buy something.
 - purchase
 - recipe
 - receipt
 - cash
- He managed to quite a lot of money last year.
 - keep
 - save
 - hold
 - own
- The supermarket makes home when you spend more than \$50.
 - direction
 - display
 - discounts
 - deliveries
- All the that this shop sells are reliable.
 - brand names
 - production
 - sales
 - products
- His business failed and he into debt.
 - went
 - broke
 - took
 - entered



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A We visited the grandmother of my friend.

B We visited my friend's grandmother.

- 1 A Look at this shop across the road.
B Look at that shop across the road.
- 2 A The table's leg is broken.
B The leg of the table is broken.
- 3 A I am really busy these days.
B I am really busy those days.
- 4 A The friends of Susan are all very good cooks.
B Susan's friends are all very good cooks.
- 5 A He picked up a suitcase in each hand.
B He picked up a suitcase in every hand.
- 6 A The pupils did every exercise in the grammar book.
B The pupils did each exercise in the grammar book.
- 7 A The children ate the whole biscuits in the cupboard.
B The children ate all the biscuits in the cupboard.
- 8 A There is an interesting article about China in today's paper.
B It is an interesting article about China in today's paper.
- 9 A George, I want you to tell us all about your experiences in India.
B George, I want to tell us all about your experiences in India.
- 10 A They spent the all day trying to find new chairs for the dining room.
B They spent the whole day trying to find new chairs for the dining room.
- 11 A "Does this clock belong to your cousins?"
"Yes, it's their."
B "Does this clock belong to your cousins?"
"Yes, it's theirs."
- 12 A Or my brother or my sister could give you a lift.
B Either my brother or my sister could give you a lift.
- 13 A A friend of theirs has invited us all to their house tomorrow night.
B A friend of them has invited us all to their house tomorrow night.
- 14 A Neither Peter nor Robert don't like football.
B Neither Peter nor Robert likes football.
- 15 A I painted my bedroom on my own; nobody helped me.
B I painted my bedroom by my own; nobody helped me.
- 16 A We enjoyed during our holiday. We relaxed ourselves at the beach every day.
B We enjoyed ourselves during our holiday. We relaxed at the beach every day.
- 17 A The dog bit him in his leg.
B The dog bit him in the leg.
- 18 A I burned myself making chips.
B I burned me making chips.
- 19 A We waited for him all day.
B We waited for him all the day.
- 20 A Jackie didn't phone him and so didn't I.
B Jackie didn't phone him and neither did I.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Demonstratives

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
this + singular noun these + plural noun	a. to refer to people and things which are close to us b. to refer to present events	<i>This house is very modern.</i> <i>These roses smell lovely.</i> <i>This is a great concert.</i> <i>These are difficult times.</i>
that + singular noun those + plural noun	a. to refer to people and things which are not close to us b. to refer to past events	<i>That boy over there is crying.</i> <i>I finally met those people.</i> <i>That was a wonderful party.</i> <i>In those days she lived in London.</i>

it is, there is

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
it + verb to be	a. to refer to something already mentioned b. used with time, distance, weather	<i>I bought a book today. It is a novel.</i> <i>It was a cold and stormy night.</i>
there + verb to be	introduces a subject	<i>There is an interesting lecture tonight.</i>

Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives

SUBJECT PRONOUN	OBJECT PRONOUN	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE	POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	REFLEXIVE PRONOUN
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he / she / it	him / her / it	his / her / its	his / hers	himself / herself / itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

NOTES

- Possessive adjectives must be used before a noun. *These are her shoes.*
Possessive pronouns are used without a noun at the end of a sentence. *These shoes are hers.*
- Note common expressions such as *a friend of mine*. *A friend of mine sent me this card.*
- Possession is also shown with 's for names / nouns for people and animals. *The woman's bag is open.*
With plural names / nouns, the apostrophe comes after the 's'. *The Watsons' car was stolen.*
For things we use *of the*. *The roof of the house is made of straw. (not: the house's roof X)*
- We use reflexive pronouns in the following cases:
 - when the subject and object are the same person: e.g., *cut yourself, enjoy yourself, behave yourself, burn yourself, hurt yourself, make yourself understood, make yourself at home, make yourself heard*
He cut himself shaving. We enjoyed ourselves on holiday.
 - to give emphasis to the subject or object
The owner himself interviewed me. She herself didn't know what to say.
 - to mean without help, on one's own
They did it themselves. I found out the answer by myself.

- 5 The following verbs are not normally used with a reflexive pronoun unless we wish to make it clear who does the action: *dress, undress, wash, shave, relax, rest, hurry, wake up, sit down, stand up*
I got up, dressed and quickly went downstairs. Sally is old enough to dress herself now.
- 6 Be careful with the difference between *-self / -selves* and *each other / one another*.
He talks to himself all the time. (same person)
They talk to each other / one another every day. (different people)
- 7 *on my own = by myself*
I did it on my own. = I did it by myself.

Determiners

STRUCTURE	USE	EXAMPLES
each	<p>a. used with singular nouns; usually for two or more people or things</p> <p>b. can be used without a noun; it takes a singular verb</p> <p>c. <i>each of</i> + plural noun + singular verb</p> <p>d. in the expression <i>each other</i></p>	<p><i>She had a ring on each finger.</i> <i>Each day he felt stronger.</i></p> <p><i>I have three sisters; each takes after my mother.</i></p> <p><i>Each of the rooms is a different colour.</i></p> <p><i>They see each other twice a week.</i></p>
every	<p>a. used with singular nouns; usually used for three or more people or things</p> <p>b. with the following words and expressions: <i>almost, practically, without exception, nearly</i></p>	<p><i>Every pupil in the class was there.</i> <i>Every year they went to London.</i></p> <p><i>She phoned nearly every one of her friends.</i></p>
all (of)	<p>a. with countable and uncountable nouns</p> <p>b. before <i>the, my, her, etc.</i></p>	<p><i>He's been relaxing all day.</i> <i>I drank all (of) my coffee.</i> <i>All (of) the workers were on strike.</i></p> <p><i>I've lived here all (of) my life.</i></p>
whole	<p>a. mainly with singular nouns</p> <p>b. after <i>the, my, her, etc.</i></p>	<p><i>They ate the whole cake.</i></p> <p><i>I've lived here my whole life.</i></p>
both (of)	<p>for two things</p> <p>a. <i>both</i> + plural noun + plural verb</p> <p>b. <i>both of the / those / my / your, etc.</i> + plural noun + plural verb</p>	<p><i>Both hotels were expensive.</i></p> <p><i>Both of her legs were broken.</i></p>
both ... and	to join two nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.	<i>Both John and Phil passed the exam.</i>
either (of)	<p>for two things</p> <p>a. <i>either</i> + singular noun + singular verb</p> <p>b. <i>either of + the / those / my / your, etc.</i> + plural noun / pronoun + singular verb</p>	<p><i>I don't mind which coat you buy. Either coat suits you.</i></p> <p><i>Take either of those books.</i> <i>Does either of them appeal to you?</i></p>
either ... or	shows two possibilities	<i>We can either stay in or go out.</i>
neither (of)	<p>a. <i>neither</i> + singular noun + singular verb</p> <p>b. <i>neither of + the / these / my / your, etc.</i> + plural noun / pronoun + singular verb</p>	<p><i>Neither hat suits you. (not this one nor the other)</i></p> <p><i>Neither of those books is interesting.</i></p>
neither ... nor	to join two nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc. (negative meaning)	<i>Neither Tom nor Bill remembered.</i> <i>She can neither sing nor dance.</i>



Grammar Practice

A. DEMONSTRATIVES AND PRONOUNS Complete the following sentences with the correct word.

1. Can you see bird at the top of the tree? Isn't beautiful?
2. Come and see photos I've just had developed. Here are.
3. Pamela and are going to see the new art exhibition on Saturday.
4. Look at men standing outside the bank. look very suspicious.
5. Frank has just told me that won first prize. is great news, isn't it?
6. Do know the phone number of girl we met at the party the other night?
7. is a very interesting article. You should read
8. strawberries you bought at the weekend were delicious.

B. Complete the following sentences with *it / there* and the correct form of the verb *to be*.

1. The roads were very busy. a lot of traffic.
2. I've got a lot to do tomorrow. a busy day.
3. Sue wasn't very careful. too many mistakes in her essay.
4. We didn't walk to the beach. 5 km from where we were staying.
5. I love the area where I live. lots of cafés and cinemas.
6. Crime is a problem nowadays. many burglaries recently.



C. Complete the following sentences with the correct pronoun or possessive adjective.

1. The idea is I thought of it on own. You should thank for it.
2. Paul, no one can hear We would like to hear your opinion, so speak clearly if you want to make understood.
3. No one is going to tell us the answer. We'll have to find out for The responsibility is
4. Mark is making a fool of His behaviour is ridiculous. Don't pay any attention to
5. The Johnsons renovated kitchen by Nobody helped
6. She bought a new raincoat. She was tired of old one.

D. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS Complete the following sentences with the correct pronoun. If you think no pronoun is needed, leave the space empty.

1. Did you and your friends enjoy at the party last night?
2. We taught to speak German. I also learned Italian by
3. He cut badly this morning. He should have been more careful.
4. Of all people, how can you have forgotten, Tim? You told me that the meeting was tonight.
5. They fell and hurt They tried to stand up, but it hurt too much.
6. Pat, you can relax by making comfortable with a good book.
7. Jane planted her garden by ; nobody helped her.
8. I woke up, washed, dressed and looked at in the mirror.

E. Circle the correct answer.

1. They haven't visited **each** / **every** other for weeks. They used to get together almost **each** / **every** day.
2. They've drunk **all** / **whole** the coffee in the house. We'd better buy some more.
3. The **all** / **whole** time I was away, **all** / **whole** I could think about was my family.
4. **All** / **Whole** the children in the class were looking forward to the trip.
5. **Each** / **Every** of the people I spoke to said that they agreed with me.
6. The **all** / **whole** country celebrated the national team's victory.
7. She thanked **each** / **every** of us individually.
8. She wore a fine gold bracelet around **each** / **every** wrist.
9. Jack spent his **all** / **whole** life helping others.
10. I've read nearly **each** / **every** book on the list.

F. Complete the following sentences with *both*, *either* or *neither*.

1. I would be happy with sports bag. They are suitable.
2. William wasn't at school today and was his sister.
3. Paris and Rome are popular destinations for a weekend break.
4. If you need more details, ask Anne or Elaine.
5. The article was well written nor informative.
6. of her parents are very busy. It's hard to contact of them.
7. The estate agent showed us two houses but of them was big enough.
8. twin likes it when people mix them up. They get quite annoyed.



Exam Practice

A. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

THE WEEKEND

Everybody I know enjoys the weekend; two (1) days when we can relax and recover from (2) the problems of the week before. (3) of us has our own favourite way of spending the weekend. For example, some people like to spend most of the time doing nothing. My parents are like that. Both (4) them work hard all week and are happy to just relax on their (5) at the weekend. My married sister, on the other hand, loves having friends to stay at the weekend. When her guests arrive, she tells them to (6) themselves at home, and (7) is exactly what they do. She always serves the most delicious meals – she makes them (8) – and everyone has a wonderful time. And me? I usually spend the weekend with a friend of (9) If the weather is good, we either go swimming (10) sailing. For me, (11) is important to exercise whenever I am (12) to get out, as I spend a lot of time sitting at a desk.

- B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.
- I went to the cinema by myself last night. **own**
I went to the cinema last night.
 - I rarely see my elder brother or my younger brother. **either**
I have two brothers, but I do very often.
 - My uncle and aunt had a very good time in Greece last summer. **enjoyed**
My uncle and aunt in Greece last summer.
 - It took all day to clean the house. **whole**
We spent the house.
 - The hotel manager took the time to speak to all the guests. **every**
The hotel manager took the time to speak to the guests.
 - I went to the shopping centre with one of my friends yesterday. **mine**
I went to the shopping centre yesterday.
 - We got a great deal of satisfaction out of passing such a difficult exam. **pleased**
We for passing such a difficult exam.
 - She spoke for quite a long time, but her meaning wasn't clear. **herself**
She didn't manage , even though she spoke for quite a long time.
- C.** Below is an advertisement for a competition. Some words are missing. Decide what they are. Choose from among the words below by marking the corresponding letter. (There are three words you won't need and one you may use twice.)

TIP! Make sure the words you choose fit the context of the whole passage as well as being correct grammatically.

A these	B each	C themselves	D all	E yourself
F there	G whole	H it	I them	J either

FANTASY FOOTBALL

(1) are fantastic prizes to be won in our new Fantasy Football competition. You could find (2) on a trip to Brazil or the proud owner of a ball autographed by Michael Owen.

Simply choose 11 players from the list below – two attacking players, four midfielders, four defenders and a goalkeeper. (3) player can only be selected once and the value of the (4) team must not exceed \$50 million. (5) 11 players are your starting team, but you can transfer up to six of (6) during the month. You win points (7) time one of your players is on the winning side and more if they score, save a penalty, etc. Register now – (8) by e-mail or post – and get into the game!



TEST YOURSELF



Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

EATING OUT

appetising	bite	cutlery	serve	taste
appetite	chew	flavour	soft drink	tip
beverage	consume	inedible	speciality	vegetarian
bill	course	junk food	swallow	waiter

- We could do with some new Our knives, forks and spoons are very old.
- We ordered meat and potatoes for the main and ice cream for dessert.
- This restaurant caters for It does not serve meat or animal products.
- Fast food restaurants, popular with teenagers, serve mostly like burgers.
- The food was so badly burnt that it was ; nobody could eat it.
- The of that restaurant is pasta. I can recommend it.
- When we had finished our meal, we asked the waiter for the
- The starters looked very because they were beautifully presented on a silver dish.
- They were pleased with the service in the restaurant, so they left the waitress a
- She put a spoonful of soup in the baby's mouth, and the baby it.
- This café sells alcoholic as well as coffee and tea.
- Teenagers have enormous You run out of food quickly when they are in the house!

COOKING AND NUTRITION

additive	cookery	dietician	hunger	oven	spice
bake	dairy	fry	ingredient	pastry	thirst
barbecue	defrost	groceries	nourishment	pepper	
boil	diet	herb	nutritious	salt	

- Health foods are very They are full of vitamins and proteins.
- I like highly seasoned food that is cooked with lots of herbs and
- Make sure you take the meat out of the freezer and it before cooking.
- When the is at the right temperature, put the pie in and bake it for 40 minutes.
- We went shopping for because we were out of food.
- Milk, butter and cheese are known as products.
- If you want to stay healthy and slim, you should eat a balanced
- She rolled out the to make an apple pie.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. ADJECTIVES

I. Complete the following sentences with the correct adjective below.

stale • raw • sour • dry • rare • tough • underdone • spicy

- I love vegetables. I like them **cooked** but I also like them
- He doesn't want his steak **well done**; he wants it and still a little red.
- Fish tastes awful if it's **overcooked**, but if it's, it's just as bad.
- The bread is no longer **fresh**; it's
- I don't like this apple; it's I only like **sweet** apples.
- When meat is **tender**, it is easy to cut. This meat is
- Some people prefer **sweet** wine but we enjoy wine.
- This food is **bland** and **tasteless**. I like food.



II. Complete the following sentences with the correct adjective below.

furious • disgusting • enormous • exhausted • delicious • starving

- The portions in that restaurant are **huge**; they're really
- I was very **angry** with the manager of the restaurant. I was absolutely with him.
- This pasta is very **tasty**. In fact, it is absolutely
- The food in that restaurant is very **bad**; it's
- I'm very **hungry**. In fact, I'm absolutely
- She was too **tired** to cook dinner last night. She was really



B. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

- Can you give me the **receipt** / **recipe** for that cake you made? It was delicious.
- I want to make a reservation for dinner. I'd like to **book** / **hire** a table for 8 o'clock.
- Pasta is the national **dish** / **plate** of Italy.
- When he **poured** / **spilled** me a cup of tea, some of the tea **poured** / **spilled** on the tablecloth.
- What **taste** / **flavour** of ice cream do you prefer?
- I'm not sure what to order for lunch. Can I see the **catalogue** / **menu** again, please?
- My mother is an excellent **cook** / **cooker**. She **roasts** / **bakes** the most fantastic cakes.
- He **peeled** / **cleaned** the onion and **chopped** / **chewed** it into small pieces.

C. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the words below. You will need to use some words more than once.

away • down • for • have • out • do • follow • go • help • set • up

1. He's decided to **on a diet**. He's trying to **cut** **on** fattening food.
2. Please **yourself** to food and drink.
3. Billy will **the table**, and after the meal Jane will **clear** the dishes.
4. Anyone can be a good cook. All you have to do is **the recipe**.
5. I'll **the cooking** if you **the dishes** afterwards.
6. Can't we go to a restaurant **a change**? I enjoy **eating**
7. Avocados are cheap if you buy them **in season** but expensive **of season**.
8. I think we should **a bite to eat**. Let's **warm** some soup.

D. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs with *run*.

run after • run around • run away • run into • run off with • run over • run out • run through

1. Dylan from home when he was 14.
2. I the owner of the new restaurant in the street yesterday.
3. Thieves broke into the health food shop and all the money.
4. I have to go shopping; I've completely of food.
5. The lady was by a bus as she left the grocer's shop.
6. The waiter the customer who had left his coat in the café.
7. I've been all week trying to buy the food we need for the reception.
8. Every time I try to diet, thoughts of chocolate my mind all day.



Exam Practice

A. Read the statements below. Mark A (YES) for those most likely to be included in a book on healthy eating. Mark B (NO) for those which are not likely to be included because they do not relate to good eating habits.

	STATEMENTS	A YES	B NO
1.	Cutting down on alcohol and consuming less salt will have immediate benefits.		
2.	Beverages and soft drinks are available at all times.		
3.	Strawberries are in season now – perfect for that cheesecake recipe.		
4.	Raw vegetables are more nutritious than cooked vegetables.		
5.	Meat grilled on the barbecue is lower in fat than fried food.		
6.	Help yourself – if you like spicy food, that is.		
7.	Children should avoid consuming food additives.		
8.	Running out of basic ingredients can be a problem unless there is a grocery store nearby.		

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

JAPANESE CUISINE

A Japanese (1) is very different from a European one. Firstly, the guests sit on the floor and eat from low tables. They use chopsticks instead of (2) to eat. The order in which the courses are (3) is also different. For instance, soup is not necessarily eaten (4) the beginning of the meal and green tea, which is the national (5) , is drunk (6) the meal – not at the end.

Since meat is expensive in Japan, it is often (7) by fish. The Japanese are famous for their raw fish, which is called sushi. The Japanese also eat (8) fish, but because few Japanese kitchens have ovens, people (9) bake or roast their food. Japanese chefs also pay a lot of attention to the way food is (10) ; its appearance is just as important as its (11) , and this makes it very suitable for parties. So it is no surprise that Japanese food is (12) popular all over the world.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A course | B meal | C dish | D diet |
| 2. A cutlery | B plates | C glasses | D bottles |
| 3. A given | B delivered | C brought | D served |
| 4. A at | B in | C to | D on |
| 5. A cup | B alcohol | C diet | D beverage |
| 6. A while | B during | C through | D in |
| 7. A substituted | B eaten | C replaced | D changed |
| 8. A bought | B frozen | C cold | D cooked |
| 9. A rarely | B always | C quickly | D usually |
| 10. A cleaned | B presented | C purchased | D poured |
| 11. A perfume | B sweetness | C taste | D look |
| 12. A increasing | B following | C becoming | D beginning |

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! Look carefully at the surrounding words and decide which part of speech (noun, verb, adjective or adverb) is needed.

AN ENTHUSIASTIC COOK

I met Jane when we were in primary school and we have been friends ever since. From the time she was a teenager, Jane has been very fond of (1) Today, she is a well-known (2) , and making good food is still one of her favourite hobbies. She particularly enjoys preparing (3) food and her (4) is Indian curry. The meals that she serves are always (5) presented and everyone looks forward to being invited to her house for dinner.

Jane gets really (6) if she is served poor quality food in a restaurant. She complains bitterly if the food isn't good, and if a dish is (7) , she demands to speak to the chef.

Jane knows a lot about the (8) value of food and always prepares (9) meals with lots of vitamins and proteins. A great deal of good food is (10) in Jane's house every week!

COOK
DIET

SPICE
SPECIAL
APPETISING

FURY

EDIBLE

NUTRITION
NOURISH

CONSUME

Review 10

A. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

THE HISTORY OF COCA-COLA

One of the most famous (1) names ever is Coca-Cola. Today, the US-based Coca-Cola (2) is the largest beverage firm in the world. Billions of bottles of its best-known (3) are sold every day and it is (4) to nearly 200 countries. The drink itself is now more than 100 years old. It was invented by the pharmacist Dr John Pemberton in Atlanta, Georgia, in 1886. He had (5) to find a cure for headaches, not a way to cure your (6) What he actually created was a sweet caramel-flavoured syrup, which he gave to a friend to try. His friend (7) the syrup with carbonated water and liked the taste of the (8) so much that he (9) to sell it. The basic ingredients used in the manufacture of Coca-Cola are printed on the bottle, but the actual (10) for making the drink is a (11) guarded secret. Competitors have tried to find out their secret, but with no success, and Coca-Cola (12) the number one soft drink.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A bland | B speciality | C brand | D diet |
| 2. A company | B economy | C catalogue | D consumption |
| 3. A make | B producer | C promotion | D product |
| 4. A imported | B expressed | C exported | D experimented |
| 5. A set out | B let out | C brought about | D made up |
| 6. A hunger | B thirst | C taste | D appetite |
| 7. A peeled | B roasted | C mixed | D spilled |
| 8. A beverage | B barbecue | C nutrition | D nourishment |
| 9. A admitted | B set | C served | D agreed |
| 10. A recipe | B receipt | C cooking | D cooker |
| 11. A nearly | B hugely | C closely | D clearly |
| 12. A stays | B lives | C remains | D follows |

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- Do you enjoy having meals in restaurants? **out**
Are you fond in restaurants?
- As soon as I arrived at the party, I got a drink for myself. **helped**
As soon as I arrived at the party, I a drink.
- Unfortunately, a lot of accidents have happened on this road. **been**
Unfortunately, a lot of accidents on this road.
- Simon doesn't know how to speak French or German very well. **nor**
Simon can very well.
- Nobody helped Pauline with her school assignment, did they? **own**
Pauline did her school assignment, didn't she?
- I don't believe that there's no milk left. **run**
I can't believe milk.
- Unless you make a reservation, you won't be able to eat there. **provided**
You will be able to eat there a table.
- I haven't cooked since last Christmas. **did**
The last time I last Christmas.

Review 10

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- I don't like my new
 - uniform of chef
 - chef's uniform
 - chefs' own uniforms
 - uniforms of the chefs
- The sisters helped with their schoolwork.
 - one the other
 - each other
 - one and another
 - themselves
- Take an umbrella it rains.
 - so long as
 - unless
 - however
 - in case
- "What's in the newspaper?"
"..... for a new restaurant. It sounds very good."
 - There is an advertisement
 - Is an advertisement
 - It is an advertisement
 - This is an advertisement
- She wants to take to the new café.
 - myself and yourself
 - you and we
 - you and I
 - both of us
- "The cookies you baked look good."
"Thanks, but I need a dish to put on."
 - those
 - them
 - their
 - these
- Don't touch that hot dish; you could get
 - burn
 - burned yourself
 - yourself burned
 - burned
- I made the meal
 - my own
 - by myself
 - by my own
 - with myself
- I spent the week cleaning my room.
 - all
 - every
 - whole
 - each
- "When will the work be finished?"
"..... tomorrow or the next day."
 - Neither
 - Either
 - Both
 - Or

VOCABULARY

- This set of includes eight knives, forks and spoons.
 - beverages
 - dishes
 - course
 - silverware
- Would you like beef or lamb for your main ?
 - plate
 - food
 - course
 - pastry
- I an old friend yesterday. It was nice to see him again.
 - ran into
 - ran through
 - ran off with
 - ran away from
- We use a lot of , such as pepper, in our cooking.
 - vitamins
 - spices
 - proteins
 - groceries
- The meat was so that we couldn't cut it.
 - spicy
 - underdone
 - rare
 - tough
- It's time for lunch. Please the table.
 - hire
 - make
 - set
 - serve
- on sweet things if you want to lose weight.
 - Cut down
 - Look down
 - Let down
 - Take down
- The food in that restaurant is so bad that it's
 - delicious
 - appetizing
 - edible
 - inedible
- That store sells 20 of ice cream.
 - tastes
 - stalls
 - flavors
 - menus
- My father was with me because I got home late.
 - exhausted
 - disgusting
 - furious
 - pessimistic

Adjectives and Adverbs: Comparatives and Superlatives; *so / such*



TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A She is more attractive then her sister.

B She is more attractive than her sister.

- 1 A She finds history lessons bored.
B She finds history lessons boring.
- 2 A He was embarrassed by my question.
B He was embarrassing by my question.
- 3 A Janet was exhausted because she had been working hard all day.
B Janet was exhausted because she had been working hardly all day.
- 4 A Everyone in our family enjoys very much cycling.
B Everyone in our family enjoys cycling very much.
- 5 A The children quickly set the table and then went outside to play.
B The children set quickly the table and then went outside to play.
- 6 A Don't jump so highly!
B Don't jump so high!
- 7 A Their new house is larger from their old one.
B Their new house is larger than their old one.
- 8 A Sue was prettier when she was younger.
B Sue was more pretty when she was younger.
- 9 A It was the least expensive coat in the shop.
B It was the less expensive coat in the shop.
- 10 A The Volga is the longer river in Europe.
B The Volga is the longest river in Europe.
- 11 A Peter is the most intelligent from all my friends.
B Peter is the most intelligent of all my friends.
- 12 A It's the fastest car he's ever driven.
B It's the most fast car he's ever driven.
- 13 A The more you complain, you are more annoying.
B The more you complain, the more annoying you are.
- 14 A Is this sofa comfortable enough to buy?
B Is this sofa enough comfortable to buy?
- 15 A There are fewer jobs available this month.
B There are less jobs available this month.
- 16 A Her wedding dress was so beautiful.
B Her wedding dress was too beautiful.
- 17 A Ken is not the same athletic as Steven.
B Ken is not as athletic as Steven.
- 18 A I've never seen so a stylish house before.
B I've never seen such a stylish house before.
- 19 A Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
B Mount Everest is the most highest mountain in the world.
- 20 A He drove too much quickly.
B He drove much too quickly.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Adjectives

Adjectives are used to describe nouns. They normally come before the noun and they do not change.

a **big, hairy** animal

big, hairy animals

-ed / -ing Adjectives

The **-ed** form of the adjective shows how somebody feels about something.

*I was **annoyed** at his behaviour.*

*They were **fascinated** by the lecture.*

The **-ing** form of the adjective refers to the cause of a certain feeling or emotion.

*His behaviour is very **annoying**.*

*They found the lecture **fascinating**.*

Adverbs

Adverbs are used to describe how something is done. There are several types of adverbs and they come in different places in a sentence.

TYPE	POSITION	EXAMPLES
Adverbs of Manner e.g., well, slowly, quickly	usually after the verb or after the verb + object	<i>He ran quickly down the street.</i> <i>You've done your homework well.</i>
Adverbs of Frequency e.g., often, usually, generally, never, seldom, rarely, hardly ever, always	usually before the verb, after the verb <i>to be</i> or after the auxiliary verb	<i>They generally have dinner late.</i> <i>We are always at home.</i> <i>She has never been to Paris.</i>
Adverbs of Place e.g., here, there, everywhere	usually at the end of a sentence or after the verb	<i>We looked everywhere for them.</i> <i>How long are you staying here?</i>
Adverbs of Time e.g., today, now, afterwards, immediately	usually at the beginning or end of a sentence, but can also appear after the verb in the middle of a sentence	<i>Today many people use e-mail.</i> <i>I didn't know her then.</i> <i>He left immediately after the meeting.</i>
Adverbs of Degree e.g., very, really, quite, completely	usually before an adjective or another adverb	<i>She's a really intelligent girl.</i> <i>He's very pleased with his results.</i>

NOTES

1 Many adverbs of manner and degree are formed by adding **-ly** to the adjective, but there are exceptions. (early, far, fast, late, well)

2 Some adverbs have two forms, each with different meanings: late / lately near / nearly close / closely high / highly flat / flatly deep / deeply hard / hardly free / freely
*My parents work **hard**.* *I **hardly** have enough money to pay the rent.*

3 too / enough

Too has a negative meaning (more than is necessary / wanted) and comes before the adjective / adverb.
*He is **only** 15. He is **too** young to drive.*

Enough has a positive meaning (as much as is necessary / wanted) and comes after the adjective / adverb.
*He is 18 now. He is old **enough** to drive.*

Comparatives and Superlatives

ADJECTIVE / ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
one syllable	... -er than <i>thinner than, later than</i>	the ... -est <i>the thinnest, the latest</i>
two syllables ending in -y	... -ier than <i>prettier than, earlier than</i>	the ... -iest <i>the prettiest, the earliest</i>
three syllables or more	more ... than <i>more expensive than</i>	the most ... <i>the most expensive</i>

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVE / ADVERB

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

good / well
bad / badly
many / much
far
little
old

better than
worse than
more than
farther / further than
less than
older than / elder

the best
the worst
the most
the farthest / furthest
the least
the oldest / eldest

NOTES

1 **as . . . as**

We use **as + adjective + as** when we want to show that there is no difference between two things.

*My brother is **as tall as** your brother. This armchair is **as comfortable as** that one.*

We use **not as + adjective + as** when we want to show that two things are not equal.

*My car is **not as old as** your car.*

2 **the + comparative . . . the + comparative**

This construction is used to show changes or processes that take place simultaneously.

*The **harder** we work, the **happier** the teacher is. The **more exciting** the film, the **better** I like it.*

*also: The weather is becoming **colder and colder**. Our lessons are getting **more and more difficult**.*

3 **The following words can come before comparatives:** *much, a bit, a lot, far.*

*Our new house is **far bigger** than our old one.*

so / such

STRUCTURE

USE

EXAMPLES

so

- a. before an adjective
- b. before an adverb
- c. before *much, many, few, little*
- d. with an adjective + (*that*) + result clause

*She is **so anxious** about her results.
They played the music **so loudly**.
He has **so much** money and **so few** friends.
She is **so rich** (*that*) she can buy anything she wants.*

such

- a. before nouns (often before adjective + noun)
- b. followed by (*that*) + result clause

*We had **such a good time**.
You have **such lovely children**.
It was **such a good book** (*that*) I couldn't stop reading it.*

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



1. Everyone says that her cooking is much better from my cooking.

.....

2. We found the long journey exhausted and were pleased to get home.

.....

3. They got up very lately yesterday because they didn't have to go to work.

.....

4. I was too happy about winning the competition!

.....

5. I didn't see her until afterwards a few days.

.....



Grammar Practice

A. Complete the following sentences with the *-ing* or *-ed* form of the adjective in brackets.

- The children were after their long walk. Walking so far is (exhaust)
- The actor's autobiography is Everyone who met him was by him. (fascinate)
- I was when I forgot his name. It was a very situation. (embarrass)
- Hang-gliding is a sport. My brother was the first time he tried it. (terrify)
- The whole town was by the news. It is to hear such things. (shock)
- We had a meal in that restaurant. We were also by the service. (disgust)
- She asked me what her most habit was and was when I told her! (annoy)
- The crowd was at the speed of the athletes. They ran at an speed. (astonish)

B. Put the adverb in brackets into the correct position in the sentence.

- She goes on a trip with her family at the weekends. (sometimes)
.....
- Richard looked for his wallet but he couldn't find it. (everywhere, anywhere)
.....
- They weren't hurt in the accident. (fortunately, seriously)
.....
- We watched a good DVD. (last night, at home)
.....
- She likes cooking meals for her friends. (very much)
.....
- She plays the piano. She practises every day. (beautifully, hard)
.....

C. Circle the correct answer.

- She has **less** / **fewer** clothes and **less** / **fewer** money than she used to have.
- Phillip is six months **older** / **elder** than his best friend.
- She looked **angry** / **angrily** at the manager and demanded her money back.
- They went for a walk along the beach. **After** / **Afterwards**, they had coffee.
- He hit the ball so **high** / **highly** I couldn't catch it.
- I haven't seen my cousins **late** / **lately**.
- My best friend lives very **close** / **closely** to me.
- He tried quite **hard** / **hardly** to hear what they were saying.



D. Complete the following paragraphs with the comparative or superlative form of the adjective or adverb given in brackets.

- My brother William is (1) (young) in our family and also (2) (clever). Nobody in his class is (3) (good) at maths than he is, and his teachers say that he is (4) (brilliant) pupil the school has ever had. He can solve problems (5) (quickly) anyone else, and the (6) (difficult) the problem, the (7) (easy) it seems to be for him.

2. I don't like my new school (1) (much) my old one. First of all, it's (2) (convenient) as it's much (3) (far) from the house and so I have to get up (4) (early) in the morning. The teaching methods in my previous school were (5) (modern); in fact, it was the (6) (good) school in town. The (7) (long) I attend this school, the (8) (dissatisfied) I become.

3. The traffic in our town is now (1) (bad) than ever. Ten years ago, there were (2) (few) cars on the road, and you could drive (3) (fast) from place to place (4) you can now. Our town must be one of (5) (crowded) towns in the country.

E. TOO / VERY / ENOUGH Complete the following sentences with *too*, *very* or *enough*.

1. She's a sensitive person. In fact, she's almost sensitive!
2. Tony is young to take driving lessons. He's only 15, so he won't be old for a couple of years.
3. They are talented artists; they are talented to have their own exhibition.
4. It was late to tell them the news that night.
5. She is fit, but she doesn't train regularly to run competitively.
6. They like reading much.

F. SO / SUCH Complete the following sentences with *so* or *such*.

1. He's annoying yet everyone is tolerant of him.
2. It was a boring lecture. We found it difficult to stay awake!
3. You bought delicious chocolates! They're delicious I've eaten them all!
4. She's a good dancer. She dances well that she could be a professional.
5. We've got many books and little room. We have a small flat.
6. Your children are well behaved! I've never met well-behaved children.



Exam Practice

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. Sandra is too short to reach the top shelf. **tall**
Sandra is reach the top shelf.
2. Tom is a more careful driver than his brother. **drive**
Tom's brother as he does.
3. She was very enthusiastic about the new project. **spoke**
She about the new project.
4. I don't know as much about cars as my brother does. **knowledgeable**
My brother is I am.
5. The shoes you bought were more expensive than the shoes I bought. **cost**
The shoes I bought the shoes you bought.

6. If you exercise a lot, you will be fit. **more**
The you will be.
7. I have such a lot of work to do that I don't know if I can go with you. **so**
I have that I don't know if I can go with you.
8. It was the most embarrassing moment I've ever had. **never**
I've before.

B. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Many people consider Shakespeare dramatist of all times.</p> <p>a. a most great
b. the greater
c. the greatest
d. as a great</p> <p>2. "Did you enjoy the picnic?"
"Yes, we had a"</p> <p>a. good really time
b. time really good
c. really well time
d. really good time</p> <p>3. The more popular a restaurant is, it usually is.</p> <p>a. the more expensive
b. as expensive
c. so expensive
d. the most expensive</p> | <p>4. The weather this winter has been than it usually is.</p> <p>a. more worse
b. more badly
c. much worse
d. much worser</p> <p>5. Helen didn't check her work Judy did. She made more mistakes.</p> <p>a. as careful
b. as carefully as
c. more carefully
d. more careful than</p> <p>6. The puzzle was that I couldn't finish it.</p> <p>a. so difficult
b. such a difficult
c. so much difficult
d. such difficult</p> |
|---|---|

C. OPEN GLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TIP! Make sure the word you choose fits the context of the whole passage.

PRAGUE

Prague, the capital of the Czech Republic, is (1) good choice for a short trip. Prague is not one of the biggest European capitals, but it is certainly one of the (2) fascinating. Some people consider it (3) most beautiful city in Eastern Europe. (4) are two parts to Prague: the newer part with its wide streets and modern buildings, and the historical part (5) the streets are narrower and many of the buildings date from the 16th and 17th centuries. This is the area that the majority of the tourists who come to Prague are interested in seeing. One of the most famous sights (6) the city is the old Town Hall. Its tower has an astronomical clock which is probably Prague's best-known landmark. There are also several castles and museums (7) visit, but the streets themselves are (8) attractive that most tourists are happy just to wander around. Cultural life in Prague is not (9) expensive as in other cities. Theatre and concert tickets are cheaper (10) you would expect. All (11) makes Prague a wonderful tourist city, although some people worry that it is becoming (12) popular – it is incredibly crowded sometimes.



TEST YOURSELF



Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

THE MEDIA

broadcast	commentator	drama	presenter	series
cable TV	commercial	feature	ratings	TV set
celebrity	critic	game show	remote control	viewer
censor	current affairs	gossip column	review	volume
chat show	documentary	horoscope	satellite TV	

- The of the new game show keep going up as it becomes more and more popular.
- If you have or you can get a huge selection of programmes.
- Political events and news discussed in the media are called
- A is a programme which talks about real events and gives the facts about an issue.
- Adverts shown on TV are known as
- The concert will be on TV and radio at 9.30 this evening.
- The authorities decided to the programme as it contained secret information.
- If you have a, you can operate your TV without getting out of your armchair.
- If you are a, you don't have much privacy.
- A new read the weather forecast this evening.
- Many phoned the TV company to complain about last night's film.

IN THE NEWS

burglary	foreign correspondent	journalist	press
crime	headline	kidnapping	press conference
editor	hijacking	murder	reporter
evidence	investigation	newsflash	violence

- Newspapers and the people working for them are often referred to as the
- The is the title of a newspaper article. It is usually printed in big black letters.
- A in the middle of the TV programme announced that there had been a plane crash.
- The prime minister called a for newspaper reporters to explain the government's plan.
- A writes articles about events which are happening in another country.
- The is responsible for what is written in a newspaper.
- The of the aeroplane is the lead story in all the papers today.
- I watched an interesting documentary last night about at football grounds.
- Have you heard about the of that little girl? The ransom is €1 million.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. PHRASAL VERBS Complete the following sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs with *turn*. You will need to use some of the words more than once.

turn away • turn off • turn round • turn up • turn down
turn into • turn out • turn to

1. She was offered a job as a game show host but she it
2. I can't hear the TV very well. Please it
3. It that the whole situation had been exaggerated by the reporters.
4. He heard someone call his name so he to see who it was.
5. Please don't forget to the TV when you've finished viewing for the evening.
6. He was invited to come for an interview but he never
7. If you need help or advice, you can me at any time.
8. The television is far too loud! it immediately!
9. The press are this small incident something major.
10. So many journalists came to the press conference that they had to some of them

B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the words below.

concerned • addict • live • receive • wanted • show • shoot
location • prime • commit • topical • comment • call • have

1. The workers have agreed to **off** their threatened strike.
2. They are going to **a wonderful old film** on TV tomorrow night.
3. Advertisers pay a lot of money if they want their commercials to appear on **-time TV**.
4. He's a real **TV** He sits in front of the TV from morning to night.
5. We went to the TV studio and watched them **a new comedy series**. It was great fun.
6. The World Cup football matches are **broadcast** They are not pre-recorded.
7. Issues which are of interest at the moment are called **issues**.
8. When he was asked if he was going to resign, the mayor answered, "**No**"
9. The documentary about the blue whale was made **on** in Alaska.
10. Many people living abroad can the BBC World Service.
11. He claimed to be innocent, saying he would never **a crime**.
12. The news report described the two men who are **by the police** for questioning.
13. The way a newspaper reports the news can **a great influence on** election results.
14. We should all **be** **about** the effect advertisements have on us.

C. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. The **last** / **latest** news is that negotiations are now taking place.
2. In Britain, there are five main TV **channels** / **canals** besides cable TV.
3. Turn the radio up; the **volume** / **voice** is too low.
4. We decided to stay at home last night and **watch** / **see** TV.
5. We **looked at** / **saw** a very interesting current affairs programme on TV recently.
6. Did you **hear** / **listen** the foreign secretary's speech? It was excellent.
7. I **missed** / **lost** my favourite programme last night because I got home late.

D. **PREFIXES** Use one of the prefixes below to form the opposite meaning to the adjectives used in the following sentences. You will need to use some of the prefixes more than once.

dis- • il- • im- • in- • ir- • mis- • non- • un-

- The newspaper report was not very **accurate**. In fact, it was quite
- The new TV series was not given a **favourable** review. It was very
- The politician claimed he was not properly **understood**. He said that he was
- It was very of the editor to write such an article. An editor should be more **responsible**.
- It is for a public figure to say such things. Such behaviour is not **acceptable**.
- In general, people are not **satisfied** with the government. They are very
- According to the programme, 10% of the population are not **literate**. They are
- The demonstration was not **violent**. It was a demonstration.
- The article was not **complete**. It was because some facts were missing.
- It is not **legal** to forge someone's signature. It is
- I don't consider horror films **suitable** for my children. They are for young people.
- It is not **practical** to take such a big radio with us. It is completely



Exam Practice

A. Read the following extract from a TV magazine. Some words are missing. Decide what they are. Choose from among the words in the table below by marking the corresponding letter. (Use each item only once. There are two you won't need.)

A miss	B live	C up	D series	E commentator	F current
G reporter	H chat	I told	J celebrity	K last	L presenter

8.00 Westsiders

In the (1) episode of this soap opera, Samantha announced that she was pregnant. In tonight's, the father of her child turns (2) looking for her. Don't (3) it!

8.30 Get Lucky

This popular (4) show returns tonight with (5) guests in front of a studio audience. The show is broadcast (6) from the Royal Theatre and the (7) , Simon Hall, invites you, the viewers, to submit questions to his guests.

9.00 Truth Time

This documentary is the next in the (8) that investigates subjects of interest and (9) affairs. Our (10) looks at World Nutrition Day: Is the food we eat safe?

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

TELEVISION

Nowadays, the television (1) is an essential part of most homes and our most important source of (2) Whether we want (3) , drama or comedy, all we have to do is turn (4) the television. Television provides the (5) with topical issues for discussion and, at its best, challenges both our minds and our emotions. However, television also has its problems. Because of DVDs, (6) and an increasing number of (7) , people are spending more and more time in front of the television (8) We should feel some concern at the (9) television now has on people's lives. This is especially true of children, who come home from school and watch TV for hours without any adult supervision. This young (10) is exposed to ideas which they are not mature enough to deal with. They may watch programmes which are (11) for their age group. For example, TV is often accused of showing too much violence, which is blamed for the rise in teenage crime. Our educational system gets a lot of (12) , but we ignore the effect of TV on children.



- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. A set | B camera | C video | D box |
| 2. A documentary | B emotion | C intelligence | D information |
| 3. A remote control | B newflash | C current affairs | D chat show |
| 4. A up | B on | C out | D off |
| 5. A editor | B actor | C producer | D viewer |
| 6. A cable TV | B series | C headlines | D editorials |
| 7. A antennas | B aerials | C channels | D canals |
| 8. A screen | B frame | C location | D features |
| 9. A power | B control | C contact | D influence |
| 10. A reporter | B audience | C spectator | D reviewer |
| 11. A unsuitable | B illegal | C incomplete | D unfavourable |
| 12. A critics | B criticism | C reviews | D ratings |

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! If you don't know an answer, go on to the next one. You can complete any you missed when you have finished.

SHOULD WE CENSOR?

(1) of the press and TV is a very controversial subject – one that people are always arguing about. Of course, sometimes it is

CENSOR

(2) to keep military information secret, but this is often considered (3) in democratic countries.

NECESSITY

ACCEPT

Many people choose to find out what is happening in the world from a daily newspaper. There are many of these, so newspaper (4) have to make their papers attractive to readers. They do this by writing interesting (5) They want these to catch the reader's eye. They also include (6) stories.

EDIT

HEAD

DRAMA

Television producers worry about their (7) so they try to produce programmes that will appeal to their (8) , who often complain if they feel that a film shown on TV has been censored.

RATE

VIEW

(9) , in Europe the media does not face many restrictions, even on (10) topics.

FORTUNE

POLITICS

Review 11

A. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TOO MUCH NEWS?

Before the days of TV, radio and the Internet, the only (1) to get information about current affairs was to buy a newspaper. Newspapers (2) only printed once a day so people often didn't find (3) about important events until the next day. Today news spreads much (4) quickly. As (5) as something happens, it is reported on the television as a newsflash. Internet sites (6) report the news are constantly updated so that what you read is the latest news. Many people worry that we are now receiving (7) much information so fast that we cannot take it all in. As a result we can become confused or lose interest in what's happening in the world.

Another issue is how reliable the news (8) There is a lot of pressure on reporters to be the first (9) get a story. Unfortunately, sometimes editors are so keen to broadcast the news that they do not check all the facts carefully (10) and mistakes are (11) For some TV channels, it is more important to get high ratings (12) to report serious news. Strangely enough, new media technology is actually making it more difficult to know what is really going on.

B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- When we arrived, the TV studio was practically empty. **hardly**
When we arrived, there in the TV studio.
- This is the tastiest food I've ever eaten. **such**
I've as this.
- We wanted to stay longer because we were enjoying ourselves so much. **time**
We were having that we wanted to stay longer.
- Our dining room is as big as the Watsons', isn't it? **same**
The Watsons' dining room is , isn't it?
- I feel like eating something before we go out. **bite**
I feel like before we go out.
- There are very few bakeries in the town that are better than this one. **of**
This is in the town.
- The unemployment figures are worrying for the prime minister. **concerned**
The prime minister the unemployment figures.
- He doesn't have the experience to be promoted. **experienced**
He be promoted.

Review 11

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

1. "Did you read today's *New York Times*?"
"No. that paper."
a. I don't ever get
b. I never get
c. I get never
d. I don't never get
2. The article was to write than I expected.
a. much easy
b. more easier
c. much easier
d. more easy
3. She is certainly journalist we have on the newspaper staff.
a. the more talented
b. the most talented
c. a very talented
d. a much talented
4. "What did you think of the program?"
"It wasn't the one I saw last week."
a. as informative as
b. as more informative than
c. as much informative as
d. the most informative
5. His book about China was really
a. disappointment
b. disappoint
c. disappointed
d. disappointing
6. "..... the documentary?"
"Yes, very much. It was the best I've ever seen."
a. Have you enjoyed
b. Did you enjoy
c. Do you enjoy
d. Had you enjoyed
7. "Did you hear the editor's comments?"
"Yes, I didn't know she could be so"
a. critically
b. critic
c. critical
d. criticized
8. The new editor has the same ideas the old one.
a. from
b. with
c. of
d. as
9. His story was to be believed.
a. improbable
b. enough improbable
c. very improbable
d. too improbable
10. It was interesting trial that we stayed in court all day.
a. such an
b. a so
c. such
d. a such

VOCABULARY

11. Today's newspaper had a on good local restaurants.
a. headline
b. feature
c. broadcast
d. commercial
12. The crime was between 9 and 10 o'clock last night.
a. shot
b. murdered
c. acted
d. committed
13. He has a new job as a talk show
a. celebrity
b. star
c. host
d. reporter
14. There was not enough to prove he was guilty.
a. evidence
b. violence
c. investigation
d. accuracy
15. The president didn't for the press conference.
a. turn to
b. turn out
c. turn down
d. turn up
16. If you can't hear the TV, all you have to do is increase the
a. voice
b. set
c. volume
d. noise
17. Millions of watched the game on TV.
a. audience
b. viewers
c. listeners
d. spectators
18. Leaving a baby alone in the house would be so
a. irresponsible
b. illiterate
c. impractical
d. unfavorable
19. Our correspondent has sent us this report from India.
a. remote
b. foreign
c. alien
d. satellite
20. There was an article about her in yesterday's gossip
a. cable
b. report
c. article
d. column

TEST YOURSELF



Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: **A** She said me, "I'll feel ill today."

B She said to me, "I feel ill today."

- 1 **A** He asked to me, "Can I borrow your CD?"
B He asked me, "Can I borrow your CD?"
- 2 **A** I will tell them that you will give them your answer as soon as possible.
B I will tell to them that you will give them your answer as soon as possible.
- 3 **A** The boys told they had broken the window.
B The boys told us they had broken the window.
- 4 **A** They promised that they will phone me the following day.
B They promised that they would phone me the following day.
- 5 **A** I informed them that I would visit them the following week.
B I informed them that I would visit them the week before.
- 6 **A** Alison says that she doesn't enjoy reading horror stories anymore.
B Alison says that she didn't enjoy reading horror stories anymore.
- 7 **A** Could you tell me what time the next train leaves?
B Could you tell me what time does the next train leave?
- 8 **A** She asked were we staying at home.
B She asked if we were staying at home.
- 9 **A** They said me to look after my brother.
B They told me to look after my brother.
- 10 **A** They ordered him not to tell anyone.
B They ordered him to not tell anyone.
- 11 **A** Jan said she has found the dog yesterday.
B Jan said she had found the dog the previous day.
- 12 **A** He asked what books she liked reading.
B He asked what books does she like reading.
- 13 **A** He asked where did she buy those shoes.
B He asked where she had bought those shoes.
- 14 **A** The teacher wanted to know which exercises the pupils had done.
B The teacher wanted to know which exercises had done the pupils.
- 15 **A** She suggested me to find a good job in advertising.
B She suggested I find a good job in advertising.
- 16 **A** Dave told me don't phone him after six o'clock.
B Dave told me not to phone him after six o'clock.
- 17 **A** I replied that I was waiting for a phone call.
B I replied that I am waiting for a phone call.
- 18 **A** We said that we would leave later this day.
B We said that we would leave later that day.
- 19 **A** The doctor advised the patient to taking a holiday.
B The doctor advised the patient to take a holiday.
- 20 **A** They said they had arrived the month before.
B They said they had arrived the month ago.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Indirect Speech

DIRECT SPEECH

PRESENT SIMPLE

They said, "We **like** this neighbourhood."

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

I said, "I **am writing** a composition."

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

She said, "I **have finished** my homework."

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

He said, "I **have been tidying** my room."

PAST SIMPLE

We said, "We **saw** a good film last night."

PAST CONTINUOUS

Judy said, "I **was preparing** dinner for you."

FUTURE

The boys said, "We **will leave** at 8.00 a.m."

He said, "I **will be watching** the game on TV."

Tony said, "I **am going to sell** my bike."

IMPERATIVE

I said, "**Tell** me the truth, Alice!"

She said, "**Don't phone** me too early!"

MODAL / SEMI-MODAL

He said, "I **can't go out** tonight."

She asked, "**Shall I close** the door?"

They said, "We **may go** to Spain this summer."

We said, "We **have to buy / must buy** some milk."

FIRST CONDITIONAL

"If we **see** him, we **will tell** him," they said.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

now

today

yesterday

tomorrow

next week / month

last week / month

a week ago

here

this

these

NO CHANGE

Past Perfect Simple / Continuous

They said, "We **had been planning** the move for months."

could / should / would / might / ought to

Dad said, "You **should** study harder."

Second and Third Conditional

Mary said, "If I **had** time, I'd **meet** you for lunch."

INDIRECT SPEECH

PAST SIMPLE

They said (that) they **liked** that neighbourhood.

PAST CONTINUOUS

I said (that) I **was writing** a composition.

PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

She said (that) she **had finished** her homework.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

He said (that) he **had been tidying** his room.

PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

We said (that) we **had seen** a good film the night before.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Judy said (that) she **had been preparing** dinner for me.

FUTURE IN THE PAST

The boys said (that) they **would leave** at 8.00 a.m.

He said (that) he **would be watching** the game on TV.

Tony said (that) he **was going to sell** his bike.

TELL + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I **told Alice to tell** me the truth.

She **told us not to phone** her too early.

PAST FORM OF MODAL

He said (that) he **couldn't go out** that night.

She asked if she **should close** the door.

They said (that) they **might go** to Spain that summer.

We said (that) we **had to buy** some milk.

SECOND CONDITIONAL

They said (that) if they **saw** him they **would tell** him.

then

that day

the day before, the previous day

the next / following day, the day after

the next / following week / month

the previous week / month, the week / month before

the week before

there

that

those

They said (that) they **had been planning** the move for months.

Dad said (that) I **should** study harder.

Mary said (that) if she **had** time, she'd **meet** me for lunch.

NOTES

- The most common verbs used to report what others say are **say, tell and ask**. Be careful not to confuse them.
She said (that) she was hungry. She told me she was hungry. She asked me if / whether I was hungry.
 - When we report questions, we change the word order to that of a regular sentence.
Wh- Questions: "Where do you live?" → *She asked me where I lived.*
Yes / No Questions: "Will you please phone me?" "Yes, I will."
 → *He asked whether / if I would phone him and I replied that I would.*
 - Indirect questions are not only used to report what others say. We use phrases like **Could you tell me ... and I would like to know ...** to introduce questions in a more polite way. Regular sentence word order is used after these phrases.
I would like to know if there are any tickets available for the show. (not: I would like to know are there ... X)
Could you tell me how much a double room costs? (not: Could you tell me how much does a double room cost? X)
 - If the reporting verb is in Present Simple or Present Perfect, the tense of the verb in the main clause does not change.
Dad says, "I smoke too much." → Dad says (that) he smokes too much.
 - When we want to report the general meaning of a sentence and not the exact words someone said, we use certain verbs that have a similar meaning to the action or function in the sentence. (see list below)
"Why don't we go out for lunch?" she asked. → She suggested going out for lunch. (verb + gerund)
"We will definitely come and help," she said. → She promised to come and help. (verb + infinitive)
"First you have to enter a password," he said. → He explained that I had to enter a password. (verb + that + clause)
"It's dangerous to swim after eating!" my mum said. → My mum warned me not to swim after eating. (verb + object + infinitive)
- verb + gerund:** accuse someone of, admit, advise someone against, blame someone for, deny, insist on, suggest
verb + infinitive: agree, decide, demand, offer, prefer, prepare, promise, refuse
verb + that + clause: agree, complain, explain, suggest
object + infinitive: beg, instruct, invite, persuade, warn
- When there is a change of subject following the verbs **suggest, recommend, insist, demand and request**, word order is as follows: **verb + (that) + subject + bare infinitive**.
"Give me the keys!" he demanded. → He demanded (that) she give him the keys.

COMMON MISTAKES



The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.

1. I told that I would meet them outside.

.....

2. Danny said that he will meet me later that evening, but he never came.

.....

3. I suggest you to go to the new museum.

.....

4. She asked me where did I put her coat and bag.

.....

5. He asked whether to take an umbrella.

.....



Grammar Practice

A. INDIRECT STATEMENTS Change the following sentences from direct to indirect speech.

- Helen said, "I intend to have my hair cut tomorrow."
Helen said
- "Your new bike will be delivered on your birthday," his parents promised.
His parents promised
- "I am going to the bank because I must cash a cheque," she explained.
She explained
- Our teacher often says, "You must all read a lot if you want to improve your vocabulary."
Our teacher often says
- My parents said to me, "You can go out with your friends if you don't come home too late."
My parents said
- "I was watching TV between 9.00 and 10.00 last night," the boy told his friend.
The boy told his friend

B. DIRECT STATEMENTS Change the following sentences from indirect to direct speech.

- She reminded him that he had promised to help her move house the following week.
".....," she reminded him.
- He informed us that he had been working there for 10 years.
".....," he informed us.
- I said that I might phone those people who wanted to buy my house.
".....," I said.
- We announced that in two days' time we would be flying to London.
".....," we announced.
- They told me that they had gone to visit their grandparents the week before.
They said to me, "....."
- The lady claimed that her car had been stolen two days before.
".....," the lady claimed.

C. INDIRECT QUESTIONS Form indirect questions from the following direct questions.

- Where do you live? Would you mind telling me
- How do I apply for a loan? I'd like to know
- Does this bus stop outside the library? Could you tell me
- Have you ever done this kind of work before? Can you tell me
- How much does a return ticket cost? Please let me know

D. INDIRECT QUESTIONS Change the following questions into indirect speech.

- "Are you meeting your friends?" she asked us.
She asked
- "Where did you put the book I was reading?" my son wanted to know.
My son wanted to know
- "Can we send them an e-mail tonight?" he inquired.
He inquired

4. "Were these houses built last year?" I wanted to know.
I wanted to know
5. "Does your sister want to borrow this book?" I asked him.
I asked him
6. "Have you ever thought of studying medicine?" we asked her.
We asked her
7. "Where will the concert be held?" I wondered.
I wondered
8. "Were you working while I was out?" she asked.
She asked

E. INDIRECT COMMANDS Change the following commands into indirect speech using the word given.

1. "Take the dog out for a walk," her father said strictly. **ordered**
Her father
2. "Don't make so much noise!" their parents said. **told**
Their parents
3. "Please concentrate on your work," our teacher kept saying. **insisted**
Our teacher
4. "Don't forget to turn off the TV before you go to bed," his mother said. **told**
His mother
5. "Be careful crossing the road, children," the woman said. **warned**
The woman
6. "Don't leave the dishes on the table, Paul," she said. **asked**
She



Exam Practice

- A.** Use the words in Table A to complete the sentences in Table B so that they have the meaning indicated in Table C. (Use each item in Table A only once. There are two words that you won't need.)

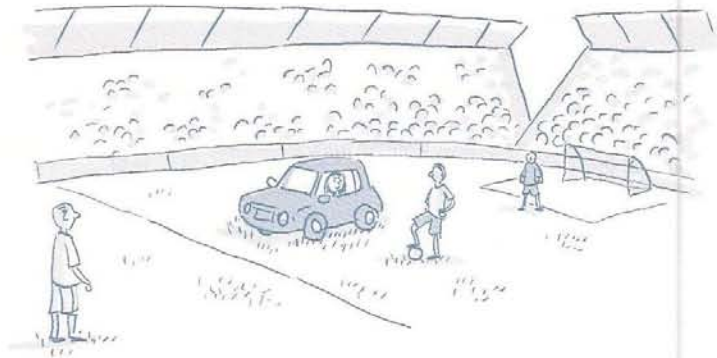
TABLE A			
A suggested	B wanted	C ordered	D tell
E inquired	F said	G advised	H let

TABLE B		TABLE C
1.	He to know where I lived.	<i>reporting a question</i>
2.	Could you me know what I should do?	<i>asking a question politely</i>
3.	She me to contact a lawyer.	<i>reporting a recommendation</i>
4.	She me to tidy the room.	<i>reporting a command</i>
5.	He whether we had received the package.	<i>reporting a question</i>
6.	Could you me if I have passed the test?	<i>asking a question politely</i>

B. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

AN AMUSING INCIDENT

I read a very amusing article in the newspaper a few days (1) about an incident at a football match in England. The article said that a woman (2) become very angry when she arrived home and (3) that a football supporter had blocked the driveway to her house by parking his car right in (4) of it. The woman was (5) angry that she decided to drive her car onto the football pitch in the middle of the game and park it there! She actually thought that the problem could (6) solved in this way. She (7) the crowd that if people parked on her ground, then she would park on (8) She also refused to move her car (9) the guilty fan had been found and moved his car. The astonished crowd looked around and wondered (10) the guilty supporter might be. The referee begged the woman (11) to hold the game up any more but she would not listen. The referee then (12) the crowd who the car belonged to, and someone finally admitted that it was his. He left the stadium, moved his car and the game continued.



C. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. "They were very impolite and unhelpful," said Sam. **complained**
Sam very impolite and unhelpful.
2. "Do I have to pay to join the club?" **if**
"I would like to pay to join the club."
3. "Don't play the piano when I'm trying to sleep," his mother said. **not**
His mother the piano when she was trying to sleep.
4. His dentist thinks that it's a good idea to have his teeth checked twice a year. **recommends**
His dentist his teeth checked twice a year.
5. "I will need your credit card number," the hotel receptionist said to me. **that**
The hotel receptionist said credit card number.
6. "Why don't we invite Sue for dinner?" Paula asked. **suggested**
Paula Sue for dinner.
7. "What time does the bus leave tomorrow?" I asked. **when**
Could you tell me tomorrow?
8. "Yes, I can run faster than anyone else in the class," Mary said. **agreed**
Mary faster than anyone else in the class.

TEST YOURSELF



Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

THE WEATHER

breeze	earthquake	forecast	lightning	season	sunshine
climate	flooding	heatwave	mist	shower	temperature
drought	fog	humidity	puddle	storm	thunder

- There is a in London at the moment; it is unusually hot for this time of year.
- My shoes are soaking wet because I stepped in a
- There was a light summer last night, just a gentle wind.
- The torrential rain caused widespread in many parts of the country.
- A is a long period of time in which there is no rain and the land is very dry.
- It didn't rain all day long; there were just a few short
- in the summer can reach 40°C.

THE ENVIRONMENT

acid rain	ecology	global warming	litter	ozone layer	recycle
atmosphere	extinct	greenhouse effect	nature	pollution	rubbish
bottle bank	famine	habitat	nuclear energy	protect	smog
conservationist	fumes	industrial waste	overpopulation	rainforest	solar energy

- is the name given to the study of the environment.
- are people who want to protect the environment.
- is a major problem in cities today. It can be caused by smoke from factories.
- Car exhaust are harmful to the environment.
- Instead of throwing out old bottles and tins, you should them.
- It is terrible how much people throw in the street.
- We must not fall behind in our efforts to save the of Brazil.
- The protects us from the dangerous rays of the sun.
- Power which is obtained by using the rays of the sun is called
- The problem of means that there are too many people living in an area.
- There was a in the country and many people starved to death.
- The dinosaur is an example of an animal which is ; that is, it no longer exists.
- You can't hunt gorillas because they are by law.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

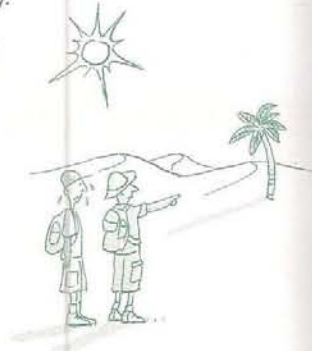
0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. Cars **harm** / **hurt** the environment by releasing dangerous exhaust fumes.
2. Because of the bad weather, the football match has been **cancelled** / **postponed** till next Saturday.
3. When the hurricane had **past** / **passed**, they discovered that the roof had been blown away.
4. The weather **prediction** / **forecast** for tomorrow says that it will be warm and sunny.
5. We should all **care about** / **care for** the problem of famine in developing countries.
6. The strong **air** / **wind** blew down several trees in the park.
7. There will be a considerable **raise** / **rise** in temperature tomorrow.
8. It is important to **conserve** / **preserve** water in case of drought.
9. The long drought had a terrible **affect** / **effect** on the countryside.
10. Fortunately, no one was **damaged** / **injured** in the earthquake.
11. The number of gorillas left in the wild has **reduced** / **fallen** dramatically.
12. It's too hot to be in the sun. Let's go and sit in the **shade** / **shadow**.



B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the words below.

below • heavy • pour • flash • clap • keep • aware • natural
strong • die • endangered • captivity • danger • result

1. The blue whale is an **species**. It will **out** if we don't protect it.
2. Earthquakes and floods are **disasters**.
3. It is dangerous to sunbathe. You should **out of the sun** as much as possible.
4. Many animals will be in **of extinction** if we don't stop hunting and killing them.
5. It was freezing cold last night. It was at least two degrees **zero**.
6. Just when we were ready to leave, it began to **with rain**.
7. The ferry could not leave because of the **winds**.
8. Hunting may **in** the extinction of rare bird species.
9. There was a **of lightning** followed by a **of thunder**; then the storm started.
10. Keeping wild animals in is considered cruel by many people.
11. People are becoming more **of** environmental issues.
12. The **rain** beat against the windows and made a terrible noise.

C. ADJECTIVES Circle the correct adjective.

1. I think you should put a warm coat on. It's quite **chilly** / **humid** outside.
2. It's going to rain. The sky is **windy** / **cloudy** and **wet** / **overcast**.
3. The weather in India is very **humid** / **cool** and uncomfortable in the summer.
4. The rain had frozen during the night so the streets were very **cool** / **icy**.
5. It was so **foggy** / **stormy** yesterday that we could hardly see the road in front of us.
6. In autumn and winter, it is often rather **sunny** / **misty** outside.
7. It was a really **wet** / **chilly** day so we took our umbrellas.
8. I love cold, **frosty** / **muddy** winter mornings.
9. It was **boiling** / **freezing** outside and we soon started shivering from the cold.
10. The climate is **extreme** / **mild** if it is neither too hot nor too cold and it is **extreme** / **mild** if it is the opposite.

D. **PHRASAL VERBS** Complete the following sentences by replacing the words in bold with the correct form of a phrasal verb with *fall*. You will need to use one phrasal verb more than once.

fall apart • fall behind • fall for • fall into • fall over • fall out • fall through

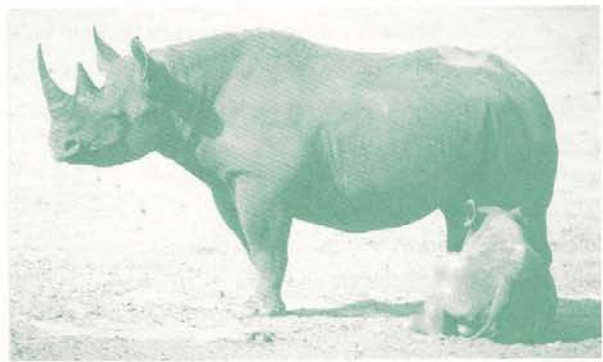
1. Problems of pollution can be **divided into** different categories.
2. She has **developed a strong romantic feeling for** a very handsome man.
3. The strong winds caused several trees to **blow over to the ground**.
4. He has **had an argument** with his cousin.
5. Some European countries are **failing to keep up with** others in dealing with pollution.
6. They planned a picnic, but because of the bad weather their plans **failed to happen**.
7. Please pick up your toys before someone **trips over** them.
8. The alarm clock fell off the shelf and **broke into pieces**.



Exam Practice

A. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. After the storm, the whole area was severely flooded. **there**
After the storm, in the whole area.
2. If I were you, I wouldn't sit in the sun. **out**
If I were you, I the sun.
3. It was -10°C in Siberia yesterday. **zero**
It was in Siberia yesterday.
4. Their plan to open a bottle bank failed despite all their work. **fell**
Their plan to open a bottle bank despite all their work.
5. There was heavy rain when we left the house. **pouring**
It when we left the house.
6. The streets were very icy early this morning. **covered**
The streets early this morning.
7. We were sweating because it was quite humid last night. **humidity**
We were sweating last night.
8. The rhinoceros is threatened with extinction at the moment. **species**
The rhinoceros at the moment.



B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

TEENAGERS IN ACTION

Recently, a group of teenagers at a secondary school in the south of England decided it was time to do something for the (1) They had never taken an interest in such (2) until they saw an advert placed in their local newspaper by a group of (3) The article pointed out the dangers of pollution from landfills and rubbish dumps and the damaging (4) it has on the quality of our lives. They decided they would start by (5) recycling in their school. Nobody really cared about such matters, but finally they persuaded their headmaster to place a (6) bin in the school. They convinced other pupils to take their (7) paper from the classrooms and put it in the bins. To make sure their plans didn't fall (8) , they put on a series of short plays to make students aware of environmental problems. One of the plays was about tourists who admire the beauty of the (9) , but leave (10) behind wherever they go, which not only (11) animals but also ruins the beauty they enjoy. The teenagers are now planning to make their fellow pupils more aware (12) the dangers of using aerosol sprays. These teenagers realise that the efforts of a few people can make a difference.



- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. A energy | B ecology | C environment | D atmosphere |
| 2. A issues | B comments | C objects | D articles |
| 3. A preservation | B protectors | C critics | D conservationists |
| 4. A conclusion | B result | C affect | D effect |
| 5. A introducing | B presenting | C showing | D providing |
| 6. A bottle | B saving | C waste | D recycling |
| 7. A thrown | B unused | C waste | D harmless |
| 8. A down | B behind | C through | D over |
| 9. A nature | B countryside | C weather | D forecast |
| 10. A litter | B smog | C puddle | D layer |
| 11. A destroys | B damages | C harms | D reduces |
| 12. A to | B from | C about | D of |

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

TIP! Be prepared to add suffixes and prefixes where necessary.

ANIMALS IN DANGER

The world has always had to face (1) disasters such as floods, volcanoes and earthquakes. But now the world, (2) the animal world, is being (3) by man-made disasters.

In the past, the greatest problem for wildlife was that of being hunted or caught and kept in (4) in zoos or similar places such as wildlife parks. Today, the (5) of the environment by man's activities is affecting the habitat of wildlife. As they cannot survive in (6) areas, several species of animals are facing possible (7) If we believe that the survival of these animals is important, then such (8) species deserve our (9) Ecologists have warned that the destruction of the rainforests is a serious threat to world climate and their (10) seems to be coming true.

- NATURE
PARTICULAR
THREAT

CAPTIVE
DESTROY

POLLUTE
EXTINCT
DANGER
PROTECT

PREDICT

Review 12

A. Match the sentences (items 1-8) with their source (letters A-J) in the table below. (There are two letters you won't need.)

TABLE A		TABLE B	
1.	It will be generally overcast, with some light showers.	A.	<i>a report about water conservation</i>
2.	Overpopulation has resulted in a shortage of food.	B.	<i>predictions about global warming</i>
3.	Even with light clouds, the water will still be heated by the light of the sun.	C.	<i>a weather forecast</i>
4.	Bottles, tins and waste paper should be placed in the appropriate bins for collection.	D.	<i>a travel guidebook</i>
5.	When temperatures exceed 38°C, stay in the shade whenever possible and drink plenty of fluids.	E.	<i>a leaflet giving advice about heatwaves</i>
6.	The enclosures are designed to resemble each species' natural habitat.	F.	<i>an article about earthquakes</i>
7.	The climate is tropical, with high humidity and thunderstorms in the rainy season.	G.	<i>a leaflet on recycling</i>
8.	The greenhouse effect looks set to cause a rise of 2-5 degrees over the next 20 years.	H.	<i>a report about famine</i>
		I.	<i>a zoo information leaflet</i>
		J.	<i>information about solar energy</i>

B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- "We will leave tomorrow," they said. **they**
They said that day.
- People say that exhaust fumes are a major cause of air pollution. **said**
Exhaust fumes a major cause of air pollution.
- "Do not drop litter in the street, Dan," his mother said. **not**
Dan's mother litter in the street.
- Could you tell me the price of a flight to Berlin? **much**
I'd like would cost to fly to Berlin.
- They couldn't go on holiday as they'd planned because of a strike at the airport. **fell**
Their holiday plans result of a strike at the airport.
- "Have you heard the weather forecast, Anne?" asked Mrs Blair. **heard**
Mrs Blair asked Anne the weather forecast.
- The pupils discussed what to do about the environment. **discussion**
The pupils to do about the environment.
- There is a danger that many animals will become extinct in the near future. **extinction**
Many animals are in the near future.

Review 12

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- "I to bring an umbrella."
"I'm sorry, I forgot."
 - told
 - told you
 - said you
 - said to you
- The weather forecast said that it next weekend.
 - rains
 - rained
 - was raining
 - would rain
- I asked you paper in the street.
 - not to throw
 - to not throw
 - don't throw
 - whether you throw
- "Why didn't you come to the talk on ecology?"
"I didn't know where"
 - was it being held
 - it will be held
 - it was being held
 - that it was being held
- We suggested transportation.
 - them to provide
 - that they will provide
 - that they providing
 - that they provide
- "What did they say about pollution?"
"They said that a problem for many years."
 - it was being
 - it had been
 - it is being
 - it was
- I couldn't understand why to prevent the famine.
 - they didn't try
 - they haven't tried
 - didn't they try
 - haven't they tried
- He recommends all our used paper.
 - to recycle
 - that we will recycle
 - that we recycle
 - on us recycling
- We use aerosols anymore.
 - don't never
 - hardly never
 - not ever
 - hardly ever
- Starting an environmental group at school was idea we've ever had.
 - the smarter
 - the smartest
 - the smart
 - the most smart

VOCABULARY

- It was raining when we left, but it was just a light
 - breeze
 - flash
 - shower
 - wetness
- We'll be cooler if we sit in the of the trees.
 - shade
 - shadow
 - fumes
 - air
- Despite the clouds in the morning, it to be a sunny day.
 - died out
 - kept out
 - fell out
 - turned out
- The climate is very ; you either sweat or freeze.
 - mild
 - extreme
 - misty
 - chilly
- The destruction of the rainforest is having a serious on the world's climate.
 - conclusion
 - cause
 - effect
 - result
- Many places in the Third World are
 - extinct
 - overpopulated
 - crowding
 - dissatisfied
- The recent drought was a natural
 - harm
 - damage
 - accident
 - disaster
- There was all over the streets after the parade.
 - litter
 - waste
 - recycling
 - smog
- Some endangered species are kept in
 - conservation
 - habitat
 - captivity
 - nature
- My feet got wet when I accidentally stepped in a in the street.
 - puddle
 - flooding
 - pool
 - fog

Gerunds, Infinitives and Bare Infinitives; *be / get used to, would rather, it's time*

TEST YOURSELF

Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: A I am delighted being able to help you.

B I am delighted to be able to help you.



- 1 A Eating too much junk food is bad for you.
B To eat too much junk food, it is bad for you.
- 2 A We always try to avoid to drive in heavy traffic.
B We always try to avoid driving in heavy traffic.
- 3 A She went upstairs without to make a sound.
B She went upstairs without making a sound.
- 4 A We persuaded him to take the job.
B We persuaded him that he take the job.
- 5 A They are too young to remember that.
B They are too young for remembering that.
- 6 A You are enough old for taking driving lessons.
B You are old enough to take driving lessons.
- 7 A Would you mind buying me a newspaper when you go shopping?
B Would you mind to buy me a newspaper when you go shopping?
- 8 A They insisted to give me a lift to the airport.
B They insisted on giving me a lift to the airport.
- 9 A She suggested going out for dinner.
B She suggested to go out for dinner.
- 10 A I'll never forget to meet Madonna in 2005.
B I'll never forget meeting Madonna in 2005.
- 11 A They reminded me to return the book.
B They reminded me returning the book.
- 12 A Our parents make us to help with the housework.
B Our parents make us help with the housework.
- 13 A Her parents did not let her go out at night on her own.
B Her parents did not let her to go out at night on her own.
- 14 A He couldn't get used to live away from home.
B He couldn't get used to living away from home.
- 15 A We aren't used to stay up late.
B We aren't used to staying up late.
- 16 A I'd rather you go home now.
B I'd rather you went home now.
- 17 A We'd prefer you to come tomorrow.
B We'd prefer you coming tomorrow.
- 18 A You'd better do your homework before you go out.
B You better to do your homework before you go out.
- 19 A It's time to send out the invitations.
B It's time for sending out the invitations.
- 20 A It's high time to leave.
B It's high time we left.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Gerunds, Infinitives and Bare Infinitives

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
GERUND verb+ing	<p>a. functions as a noun as the subject of a sentence as the object of a sentence</p> <p>b. after prepositions</p> <p>c. for activities after the verb <i>go</i></p> <p>d. after certain verbs and expressions (see list 1 below)</p>	<p><i>Smoking is bad for you.</i> <i>We hate swimming.</i></p> <p><i>Thank you for coming.</i></p> <p><i>They go sailing regularly.</i></p> <p><i>I don't mind helping you.</i></p>
INFINITIVE to + verb	<p>a. after certain adjectives</p> <p>b. after <i>too / enough</i> + adjective</p> <p>c. after certain verbs and expressions (see lists 2 and 3 below)</p>	<p><i>I am surprised to see you here.</i></p> <p><i>Are you old enough to drive?</i></p> <p><i>It's difficult to say why she cried.</i> <i>We advised him to be there early.</i></p>
BARE INFINITIVE verb without to	<p>a. after modals</p> <p>b. with certain verbs (see list 5 below)</p>	<p><i>She should eat more fruit.</i></p> <p><i>They made him clear up the mess.</i> <i>You'd better not forget again.</i></p>

1 Verbs and expressions followed by a gerund (verb+ing):

admit	consider	enjoy	it's no use / good	miss	resist
appreciate	delay	fancy	it's worth	postpone	risk
avoid	deny	feel like	keep	practise	spend (time)
can't help	discuss	finish	look forward to	recall	suggest
can't stand	dislike	go	mention	recommend	understand
complete	end up	imagine	mind	resent	

He denies breaking the dish. *She feels like eating out tonight.* *John doesn't mind going on foot.*

2 Verbs and expressions followed by an infinitive (to + verb):

afford	claim	forget	learn	pretend	volunteer
agree	consent	have a chance	manage	promise	wait
appear	decide	help	mean	refuse	want
arrange	demand	hesitate	need	seem	wish
ask	deserve	hope	offer	swear	would like
beg	expect	it's difficult / easy	plan	the idea is	would prefer
be willing	fail	it's time	prepare	threaten	

I can't afford to buy a car. *We'll manage to find the street.* *They'd prefer to live in the country.*

3 Verbs followed by a noun / pronoun + infinitive:

advise	challenge	expect	instruct	persuade	tell
allow	convince	forbid	invite	prefer	urge
ask	dare	force	need	remind	want
beg	enable	help	order	require	warn
cause	encourage	hire	permit	teach	

She advised me to talk to you. *They persuaded me to wait.* *He begged his friend to lend him £5.*

4 Verbs followed either by a gerund or an infinitive without a change in meaning:

begin	continue	intend	prefer
can't bear	hate	love	start

I intend to study art. *I can't bear to walk in the rain.* *They started to laugh.*
I intend studying art. *I can't bear walking in the rain.* *They started laughing.*

5 Verbs and expressions followed by the bare infinitive:

had better	help	let	make	would rather
------------	------	-----	------	--------------

They let me stay up late. *I'd rather not attend the lecture.*

6 Verbs followed by a gerund or infinitive with a change in meaning:

forget regret remember stop try

We'll never **forget speaking** to him. (forget what happened; usually in negative sentences)

Don't **forget to speak** to her about it. (forget to do something)

I **regret lending** him my camera. (be sorry about what happened)

I **regret to tell** you that you have failed the exam. (be sorry about what you must do)

I **remember getting** the money from the bank. (remember what happened)

Remember to get money from the bank! (remember to do something)

I **stopped eating** chocolates. (I no longer eat chocolates.)

I **stopped to eat** a chocolate. (I stopped what I was doing in order to eat a chocolate.)

We **tried to see** the new film but it was sold out. (attempted)

Have you **tried using** this vegetable in soups? It's delicious. (experimented)

7 When there is a change of subject after the following verbs / expressions, we use the bare infinitive.

demand insist it's important it's necessary recommend request suggest

He **suggested** that the candidate **take** a test.

It's important that she **know** all the details.

8 The verb *let* is not used in the passive voice. Instead we use *be allowed* + infinitive.

They didn't **let me watch** horror films.

I **was not allowed to watch** horror films.

Make is followed by the infinitive in the passive voice, not by the bare infinitive.

They **made** the students **stay** after school.

The students **were made to stay** after school.

Special Structures

FORM

USE

EXAMPLES

be used to + noun / gerund

be accustomed to something (can be used in all tenses)

I **was used to** my old school.
She's **not used to eating** late.
I **am used to working** at the weekend.

get used to + noun / gerund

the process of becoming accustomed to something (can be used in all tenses)

Bob **got used to** his school quickly.
We'll soon **get used to living** in this flat.

I'd rather + bare infinitive

preference about the present / future (one subject)

I'd **rather speak** to him myself.

I'd rather + past tense

preference (two subjects)

I'd **rather you came** earlier tomorrow.

I'd rather + past perfect

preference about the past (two subjects)

I'd **rather you hadn't kept** it a secret.

it's (about / high) time + 2nd subject + past tense

for emphasis, criticism or complaint about something that should be done

It's time we were leaving – it's late.
It's high time he started studying for his exam!

COMMON MISTAKES

The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.



1. She let me to borrow her MP4 for the day.

.....

2. We are looking forward to meet him.

.....

3. Tom was used to live in his new home.

.....

4. I stopped to smoke five years ago.

.....

5. I would rather you to not read my diary.

.....



Grammar Practice

A. GERUND, INFINITIVE OR BARE INFINITIVE Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- The little girl was afraid (leave) the house because of the big dog in the street.
- I don't feel like (go) out tonight. I'd really prefer (stay) at home.
- How can I be old enough (get married) but too young (vote)?
- We've invited our American cousins (stay) this summer. I'm really looking forward to (see) them again.
- They had better (borrow) an umbrella. Please remind them (bring) it back.
- Instead of (attend) school that day, he pretended (be) ill.
- It is difficult for us (advise) you without (know) all the details.
- That film is worth (see). Will you promise (take) me to see it?
- As well as (spend) their summer holidays at the beach, they also go (ski) every winter.
- It's no use (get) upset. I can't help (feel) angry with you if you do stupid things. Please apologise for (behave) so unpleasantly.
- The youngsters have denied (draw) the graffiti on the wall, but have offered (help) find the people who did it.
- It is impossible (give) an exact date, but we expect (finish) the project sometime next year.

B. GERUND OR INFINITIVE Circle the correct form of the verb.

- If you get tired **to sit** / **sitting** at the computer all day, you should stop **to take** / **taking** a break.
- They regret not **to come** / **coming** with us, because they ended up **to feel** / **feeling** bored all evening.
- I regret **to tell** / **telling** you that he is ill. I recommend **to call** / **calling** the doctor.
- He remembers **to meet** / **meeting** me somewhere before, but he doesn't know where.
- I'll never forget **to fly** / **flying** my own plane for the first time. I was so nervous!
- Please stop **to ask** / **asking** me questions. I recommend **to ask** / **asking** Tom.
- You forgot **to pay** / **paying** the phone bill again. I insist you **do** / **doing** it tomorrow.
- Did you remember **to turn off** / **turning off** the electricity when you went on holiday?
- You must try **to do** / **doing** better. I demand that you **working** / **work** harder.
- She tried **to use** / **using** a different cream, but she was allergic to that too.



C. BE USED TO / GET USED TO Circle the correct form of the verb.

- They **are used to** / **get used to** working a five-day week and they like it.
- At first, Julie found teaching very tiring, but after a few weeks, she **is used to** / **got used to** it.
- By the time he left school, he **was used to** / **used to** studying nearly every evening.
- I don't think I will ever **be used to** / **get used to** living on the tenth floor.
- He **is not getting used to** / **is not used to** making important decisions, but he will have to do it in his new job.
- It was very difficult for us at first, but we **have got used to** / **are being used to** life in a small village.
- Having to train every day was a problem for me at first, but I **used to** / **am getting used to** it now.
- Just when they **were getting used to** / **are used to** the idea, their plans changed.

D. Rewrite the second sentence so that the meaning is the same as in the first. Begin as shown.

1. It's not a good idea to sit in the sun too long.
You had better
2. It would be better if we gave Judy more time to reach her decision.
Judy would rather
3. Please contact us as soon as possible.
We'd prefer
4. They haven't paid their phone bill yet, but they'd better pay it soon.
It's about time
5. He didn't want to go to Liverpool yesterday but he couldn't put it off.
He'd rather
6. Don't you think we should prepare something to eat?
Hadn't we better ?
7. I really think Jason should buy some new clothes.
It's time
8. Why did you give away that old clock? I wanted it.
I'd rather you



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. I prefer my own cakes to buying ready-made ones.
 - a. I make
 - b. I made
 - c. make
 - d. making
2. We had better them we'll be late.
 - a. to tell
 - b. tell
 - c. we told
 - d. telling
3. Everyone is going to the gate. It's time the plane.
 - a. boarding
 - b. boarded
 - c. to board
 - d. for us boarding
4. When we drove up to the lake, we stopped a picnic lunch in a beautiful spot.
 - a. having
 - b. to have
 - c. us to have
 - d. us having
5. In the past, children in many societies to speak freely.
 - a. were not allowed
 - b. didn't allow
 - c. didn't let
 - d. were not let
6. "I'm going to tell him what I think of him!"
"..... you didn't."
 - a. I prefer
 - b. I'd prefer
 - c. I rather
 - d. I'd rather
7. "Did you get your money back at the store?"
"No, they refused me a refund."
 - a. to give
 - b. giving
 - c. give
 - d. that they give
8. School starts at 8.00 a.m. so I am up early.
 - a. usually getting
 - b. used to get
 - c. used to getting
 - d. get used to get

B. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- Doctors say that it is unhealthy to smoke. **bad**
Doctors say that our health.
- She said she was sorry she had not remembered his birthday. **apologised**
She his birthday.
- She saw nothing she wanted to buy and left the shop. **without**
She left the shop that she wanted to buy.
- Anita, please don't take the car without asking first. **rather**
Anita, I take the car without asking first.
- You will have to learn to think for yourself. **used**
You will have to for yourself.
- They made him wash the car before he went out. **was**
He the car before he went out.
- Sometimes they let us look through their old photograph albums. **we**
Sometimes through their old photograph albums.
- You know, Frank, you ought to find a better job. **time**
You know, Frank, it a better job.

C. OPEN CLOZE Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

TIP! Never leave a blank. If you don't know the answer, try to make a reasonable guess.

CAN'T SING? JOIN A CHOIR!

Many people think that they have singing talent just waiting to (1) recognised. Every time another talent show is advertised on television, thousands of people apply (2) take part, hoping that they (3) be lucky enough to be chosen. But (4) course, at the same time there are many people who believe that they have no ability at all. They may be (5) shy about singing in front of others that they never even sing along with the radio because they are worried about (6) laughed at. Some say they (7) rather die than open their mouths to sing! These are the people (8) might join a very unusual group of singers called the Can't Sing Choir. The leader believes that (9) can learn to make a good sound. Through physical and vocal exercises, she teaches people how to improve their voices by (10) simple things such as dropping their shoulders or relaxing their faces. The Can't Sing Choir even gives concerts, and its members gain a lot of confidence from (11) together as a group. There's nothing we can't do (12) we try!



TEST YOURSELF



Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

SCIENCE

achievement	cell	gas	physicist	scientific
astronomy	chemical	genetics	procedure	solid
biologist	cloning	laboratory	progress	telescope
breakthrough	experiment	liquid	research	theory

- is the study of how children inherit characteristics from their parents.
- Scientists hope that one day soon they will make a in the fight against cancer.
- The room where scientists work is called a
- The air we breathe is a mixture of several, including oxygen and nitrogen.
- He got a grant from the government to carry out his on air pollution.
- Every living thing is made up of
- A is a substance which can be poured (e.g., water).
- is the production of an identical animal or plant from the cells of another animal or plant.

TECHNOLOGY

appliance	device	hardware	laptop	robotics	surf
automation	download	install	mechanical	service	technician
computer chip	faulty	inventor	monitor	software	user-friendly
development	gadget	keyboard	reliable	sophisticated	virtual reality

- Our new DVD player is simple to use. It is really
- Their products are very They don't break down.
- A is a person who knows how to repair all kinds of machinery.
- Many people like to the Internet looking for information.
- A small, useful object is called a
- The of modern technology takes place at an amazing rate.
- Technology is much more advanced and than it used to be.
- Computer programs are also called
- The part of the computer that we type on is the
- John deleted all the programs from his computer and a new operating system.
- We complained about the new camera we bought because it was
- An Englishman called James Watt was the of the steam engine.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?
0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

- At the moment, they are involved in **research** / **researches** into water pollution.
- Christopher Columbus **invented** / **discovered** America.
- Charles Darwin developed the theory of the **evolution** / **development** of man.
- One day** / **Nowadays**, nothing can be done without a computer.
- In his work, he has to read all the **last** / **latest** books on computer technology.
- Our new camera is great. It's **up-to-date** / **out-of-date** and user-friendly.
- What was the **reason** / **cause** of the severe flooding last night?
- We asked a technician to come and **repair** / **alter** the washing machine.



B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with one of the words below.

artificial • plug • carry • keep • made • order
power • press • cut • issue

- They intend to **out** several experiments using the latest equipment.
- Over the last 50 years, they have great **progress** in all areas of technology.
- All you have to do to operate this piece of machinery is to this **button**.
- The microwave won't work unless you it **in** first.
- The public telephone in the community centre is not working. It is **out-of-**
- **intelligence** is the technology which tries to make computers think like people.
- It is difficult to **up with** the developments in modern technology.
- The possibility of creating human clones is a very **controversial**
- Have they found out what caused the **cut** yesterday?
- Our electricity was **off** for several hours while they installed some new equipment.

C. PREPOSITIONS Circle the correct preposition.

- Many people do not *approve* **from** / **of** / **with** experiments on animals.
- They have *succeeded* **to** / **for** / **in** making a breakthrough in this field of scientific research.
- She is *concentrating* **in** / **for** / **on** her research and has no time for anything else.
- Their service department is not very reliable. You cannot *depend* **on** / **in** / **from** them.
- The new laboratory has been *divided* **in** / **into** / **by** three main areas.
- Everybody *laughed* **over** / **at** / **about** John Baird when he talked about his invention of the television.
- Lack of money *prevented* them **for** / **to** / **from** continuing their research.
- Technological research of the 20th century has *resulted* **in** / **on** / **by** the expanded use of lasers.
- I don't *believe* **in** / **to** / **about** miracles. I think there is a scientific explanation for everything.
- Recently, scientists have been doing a lot of *experiments* **into** / **on** / **of** cloning.

D. PHRASAL VERBS Circle the correct ending to the sentence based on the phrasal verb with *break*.

- Apparently somebody *broke into* the laboratory last night and opened the animals' cages / **made a breakthrough.**
- My car keeps *breaking down* so I probably need to replace it / which makes it easier to drive.
- The boy's parents *broke down* when they saw his untidy bedroom / were told the bad news.
- "Didn't Sue and Paul *break up*?" "Yes, and they're not talking to each other." / "Yes, they got married last week."
- A fight *broke out* over a video game when the company repaired the faulty machine / **one boy accused another of cheating.**
- The meeting *broke up* at 8.00 and we all went out to dinner / spent the evening discussing our ideas.

E. Circle the odd one out in each line.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. sophisticated | advanced | basic | up-to-date |
| 2. researcher | theory | biologist | astronomer |
| 3. breakthrough | achievement | invention | concentration |
| 4. liquid | gadget | device | machine |
| 5. results | findings | conclusion | cause |
| 6. power | procedure | energy | electricity |
| 7. man-made | artificial | natural | synthetic |
| 8. unusual | typical | normal | ordinary |



Exam Practice

A. Read six different extracts from advertisements for different objects (items 1-6) and decide which object is being described. Use each of the items (letters A-H) below only once. (There are two items you won't need.)

A software	B laptop	C machinery	D computer chip
E telescope	F washing machine	G monitor	H keyboard

1.	Your children will enjoy finding out about the natural world with our interactive encyclopaedia on CD-ROM.	
2.	Smaller than your fingernail yet with the capacity to store millions of pieces of information.	
3.	The 19-inch screen is fitted with special filters to protect your eyesight and it comes with its own desk stand.	
4.	So reliable that we guarantee it will still be getting your clothes superclean in 15 years' time!	
5.	Perfect for business trips – with this you can surf the Net or access your e-mail wherever you are.	
6.	Its incredibly powerful lens will allow you to see into faraway galaxies.	



B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

TIP! Eliminate any choices which you are sure are incorrect.

A SHEEP THAT MADE HISTORY

In 1996, a sheep called Dolly was born at a research institute in Britain. Dolly was no (1) sheep; she was a clone and the first animal clone to be born. Scientists working in their (2) had found a way to take a cell from an adult sheep and to create a second sheep which was (3) to the first because it had exactly the same DNA. Dolly's birth was a great (4), but many people were concerned (5) what scientists might be able to do in the (6) Would it soon become possible to make human clones using the same procedure? Many people feel that cloning is immoral. They do not (7) of it because they consider it unnatural. Others worry that scientists are actually (8) problems because cloning is not safe. Dolly the sheep survived only six years – she did not live as (9) as sheep normally do, possibly because she was a clone of an adult sheep. Maybe it is (10) of scientists to continue cloning when they cannot know if the results of their experiments will be normal. Despite these objections, research into cloning is still being (11) out. It seems certain that cloning will continue to be a controversial (12)



- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A unusual | B ordinary | C faulty | D new |
| 2. A equipment | B offices | C laboratories | D machines |
| 3. A identical | B same | C like | D exact |
| 4. A progress | B alteration | C evolution | D achievement |
| 5. A to | B about | C with | D for |
| 6. A future | B nowadays | C time | D beginning |
| 7. A approve | B believe | C depend | D appeal |
| 8. A doing | B resulting | C making | D creating |
| 9. A far | B late | C long | D many |
| 10. A irresponsible | B inedible | C inaccurate | D illiterate |
| 11. A done | B taken | C broken | D carried |
| 12. A reality | B issue | C feature | D crime |

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

PROGRESS

Over the years, there have been many remarkable (1), both technological and (2), which have changed our lives.

The (3) of television, for example, has allowed us all to become better (4) and has changed our concept of entertainment. The (5) of nuclear energy, which has many applications, has transformed the way we create (6)

The gadgets and appliances we use in our homes are more efficient and user-friendly, and our methods of (7) have been completely changed by the computer.

For example, many people today prefer e-mail to letters, and would claim that the post can be an (8) means of contacting someone.

An e-mail is less likely to go missing. Our workplaces, too, have become (9) computerised. Over the years, we have come to depend more and more on the sophisticated (10) that does most of our work for us.

DEVELOP
SCIENCE

INVENT
INFORM
DISCOVER
ELECTRIC

COMMUNICATE

RELY

INCREASE
MACHINE

Review 13

A. **WORD FORMATION.** Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

SCIENCE OR FICTION?

Experts are always making (1) about how our lives will be different in the future and what (2) in technology are likely to become a (3)

PREDICT
DEVELOP
REAL

Here are some of the new ideas that scientists and (4) are working on at the moment. They may seem rather strange to you now but in the very near future they will probably not seem that (5)

INVENT

It is said that we will soon give up using money as we will do all our (6) with special cards. Computers may also replace humans in many (7) For instance, instead of turning to a doctor for (8), we will use sophisticated new computer software to diagnose a medical problem. Some advances will be more (9), and someday we may be able to alter our babies (10)

USUAL
SHOP
PROFESSIONAL
ADVISE
CONTROVERSY
GENETIC

B. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- I don't want to go to my exercise class today. **rather**
I to my exercise class today.
- They should do more exercise. **high**
It's more exercise.
- You ought to read the instructions before you use that new appliance. **without**
You shouldn't use that new appliance first.
- Jim prefers not to come to the gym with us. **feel**
Jim to the gym with us.
- It is difficult for us to understand computer technology. **difficulty**
We computer technology.
- I live in the city now but I'll never feel at home here. **used**
I'll never in the city.
- Our car is very unreliable and it keeps on breaking down. **depend**
We our car because it keeps on breaking down.
- Her responsibility is to organise the research programme. **charge**
She the research programme.

Review 13

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- "Where are you in your research project?"
"Oh, I stopped on that a few weeks ago."
 - the work
 - to work
 - being working
 - working
- "Do you like your new computer?"
"I love it, I didn't so easy to use."
 - expect it to be
 - expect it will be
 - expect to be
 - expect that it was
- I can't stand reports on experiments.
 - I have to write
 - having to write
 - having written
 - me having to write
- The technician made what the problem was.
 - us to show
 - to show him
 - us show him
 - to show
- It took me a long time to get used to all day in a laboratory.
 - have to spend
 - having spent
 - spend
 - spending
- "When are you starting your physics course?"
"Well, I've decided until next year."
 - to not start
 - not to start
 - not starting
 - I don't start
- "Would you like me to buy you a sweater?"
"..... I'd like to choose it myself."
 - I don't rather
 - I'd rather you wouldn't
 - I'd rather you didn't
 - I'd rather you don't
- Won't you let us you with your project?
 - helping
 - to be helping
 - to help
 - help
- Isn't it time a vacation?
 - you took
 - you would take
 - you will take
 - you did take
- They suggested to a lecture on robotics.
 - that we will go
 - us going
 - going
 - us to go

VOCABULARY

- The scientist said he had made a in his experiments.
 - research
 - advance
 - progress
 - breakthrough
- The fax machine again. It needs fixing.
 - broke up
 - broke out
 - broke down
 - broke away
- This information is Can you give me the latest facts?
 - out-of-date
 - out-of-stock
 - out-of-order
 - out of the ordinary
- Her colleagues all of her claim to have found a new drug.
 - laughed
 - made fun
 - amused
 - amusing
- He is the of a new cure for the flu.
 - explorer
 - technician
 - inventor
 - researcher
- The new car factory is fully
 - automated
 - artificial
 - sophisticated
 - genetic
- I have fun songs and games from the Internet.
 - dividing
 - cloning
 - downloading
 - surfing
- He could see everything he wrote on the of the computer.
 - keyboard
 - screen
 - hardware
 - software
- I can't on my work if you talk to me all the time.
 - concentrate
 - pay attention
 - depend
 - investigate
- Jill the dress to fit her younger sister.
 - repaired
 - researched
 - evolved
 - altered

TEST YOURSELF



Read the pairs of sentences below and circle the sentence which is correct.

EXAMPLE: **A** Even she studies hard, she doesn't do well in tests.

B Even though she studies hard, she doesn't do well in tests.

- 1** **A** She went out for a walk although the rain.
B She went out for a walk although it was raining.
- 2** **A** They were late because of they were caught in traffic.
B They were late because they were caught in traffic.
- 3** **A** In spite of the fact that she was ill, she went out.
B In spite of she being ill, she went out.
- 4** **A** What you will be doing this time tomorrow?
B What will you be doing this time tomorrow?
- 5** **A** As a result of he lost his credit card, he had to pay cash.
B He lost his credit card, and as a result he had to pay cash.
- 6** **A** The school trip was cancelled due to bad weather.
B The school trip was cancelled due to the weather was bad.
- 7** **A** However the meal was expensive it was not of a high quality.
B The meal was expensive. However, it was not of a high quality.
- 8** **A** Everyone was late except Kevin. He was the only one to arrive on time.
B Everyone was late except from Kevin. He was the only one to arrive on time.
- 9** **A** Melanie not only writes children's books but she also draws the pictures.
B Melanie also writes children's books but she too draws the pictures.
- 10** **A** As well as running the shop, Sheila also designs all the dresses she sells.
B In addition running the shop, Sheila also designs all the dresses she sells.
- 11** **A** Since you speak German, you're the best person to meet Mr Schmidt.
B You speak German since you're the best person to meet Mr Schmidt.
- 12** **A** She studied chemistry in order that she qualified for medical school.
B She studied chemistry in order to qualify for medical school.
- 13** **A** She is training hard so that she will be fit for the race.
B She is training hard so to be fit for the race.
- 14** **A** Despite she exercises regularly, she is not very fit.
B Despite exercising regularly, she is not very fit.
- 15** **A** Jeff didn't phone him and I didn't neither.
B Jeff didn't phone him and neither did I.
- 16** **A** I don't like fish and I don't like seafood either.
B I don't like fish. Neither I like seafood.
- 17** **A** Never I have seen such a terrible sight.
B Never have I seen such a terrible sight.
- 18** **A** Rarely do you hear a politician admit a mistake.
B You rarely do hear a politician admit a mistake.
- 19** **A** Only after did he repeat himself I understood him.
B Only after he repeated himself did I understand him.
- 20** **A** No sooner had she closed her eyes than she fell asleep.
B No sooner she closed her eyes, she fell asleep.

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Connectors

FORM	USE	EXAMPLES
even though / although + subject + verb	to show contrast	<i>Even though I like sport, I don't get much exercise.</i> <i>She felt cold although she was wearing a winter coat.</i>
despite / in spite of + noun / gerund	to show contrast	<i>Despite her qualifications, she found it hard to get a job.</i> <i>In spite of feeling unwell, she went to school.</i> <i>They still hope to find a cure despite the fact that the experiment failed.</i>
despite the fact that ...		
because / since / as + subject + verb	to show reason	<i>I went to see the film because I love that actor.</i> <i>Since / As we don't have much money, we won't take a holiday this year.</i>
because of / due to + noun	to show reason	<i>The ferry was cancelled because of / due to the bad weather.</i>
so that + subject + modal	to show purpose	<i>I'll wear a red top so that you can recognise me.</i> <i>I phoned home so that my parents wouldn't worry.</i>
in order to + bare infinitive	to show purpose	<i>They worked overtime in order to finish the project.</i>
as well as / in addition to / besides + noun / gerund	to add information / an idea	<i>He delivers pizzas as well as working at a factory.</i> <i>In addition to / Besides starring in films, he is the lead singer of a rock band.</i>
not only ... (but) also	to emphasise two actions / ideas	<i>He not only plays football, but he is also a champion golfer.</i>
apart from / except (for) / instead of + noun / gerund	to show exception	<i>Everyone had fun except (for) / apart from Cathy.</i> <i>What else can we do instead of / apart from going for coffee?</i>

NOTES

- Words like *however*, *furthermore*, *moreover*, *in addition*, *as a result* are used in formal English. They connect ideas in different sentences or paragraphs and are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.
The council planned to build a sports centre. However, it proved to be too expensive.
Television does not encourage you to think. Furthermore, programmes are often unsuitable for young people.
- The connectors *as well as* and *besides* add more information.
The town has large hotels as well as numerous guest houses. (commonly used towards the end of the sentence)
I'm too tired to go out tonight. Besides, we haven't got much money. (introduces a stronger argument)

Inversion (auxiliary verb + subject + main verb)

We use the inversion form in the following cases:

1 to form questions

Does she want to apply for the course?

How long have you been learning English?

2 with *so / neither / nor* we add auxiliary verb + subject to agree with a statement

They've finished and so have I.

I won't come and neither / nor will Sue.

"I love rap music." "So do I!"

I didn't feel well and neither / nor did Tim.

3 with negative adverbs for emphasis in formal or written English

Hardly ... when

No sooner ... than

Rarely

Under no circumstances

Never

Not only ... but also

Seldom

Rarely does she fail a test.

No sooner had I got home than visitors arrived.

Under no circumstances will she agree to sign this contract.

NOTE

After the following phrases, the inversion comes in the main clause, not in the clause that begins with that phrase.

only after only by only if only when not until

Only after I had closed the door did I realise that I had left my keys in the house.

Not until I was much older was I allowed to drive my father's car.

COMMON MISTAKES



The following sentences contain mistakes commonly made by students. Rewrite them correctly.

1. However sport is good for you, it can also cause injury.

.....

2. Sandra went out despite her father told her not to.

.....

3. Everyone had pizza apart for Rob, who wanted spaghetti.

.....

4. Only if you study hard you will succeed.

.....

5. I come from Crete and so does my best friend come from Crete too.

.....

6. Why exactly you want to become a policeman?

.....

7. Never I would tell you a lie!

.....



Grammar Practice

A. Rewrite the second sentence so that the meaning is the same as in the first. Begin as shown.

1. In spite of the heavy traffic, we arrived on time.

Although

2. We didn't believe him but we didn't say anything.

Even

3. They were rich but they weren't happy.

Despite

4. Despite the risk, Jane loves bungee-jumping.

Although

5. We planned the trip in great detail but things still went wrong.

In spite of

6. She isn't tall but she has had a successful modelling career.

Despite

B. Circle the correct answer.

Did you know that there are some things you can do 1. so that / in order to make yourself smarter? First of all, 2. since / due to it is said that the brain uses 30% of our daily energy, it's important to eat well. Eat more vegetables like spinach and carrots, brown bread and red meat 3. so as / so that you increase the amount of B vitamins, folic acid and iron you consume. 4. In addition, / In addition to, make sure you get enough sleep 5. because / because of lack of sleep reduces your problem-solving abilities. But the brain doesn't only need food and rest, it 6. also / too needs exercise. Physical exercise is important 7. not only / since it increases the blood supply, and therefore the oxygen, to the brain. 8. Apart from / Because of this, the brain also needs mental exercise – reading or solving crosswords can increase your brain power by keeping your brain sharp, 9. as well as / also adding to your knowledge. And 10. apart / besides making you smarter, following this advice will probably make you healthier and happier as well.

C. **INVERSION** Circle the correct word order.

1. Not since **he went** / **went he** to Florence **he had visited** / **had he visited** such a fascinating city.

2. Under no circumstances **you should** / **should you** go out in weather like this.

3. Never **I had witnessed** / **had I witnessed** such a moving scene.

4. Only if **he earns** / **he does earn** more money **he will buy** / **will he buy** a better car.

5. Little **they did know** / **did they know** what consequences their actions would have.

6. Not once **she mentioned** / **did she mention** to me that her mother was ill.

7. Only after hearing her son's explanation **she decided** / **did she decide** to forgive him.

8. Not until **you receive** / **receive you** permission **you can** / **can you** build on this piece of land.

9. Seldom **I have met** / **have I met** such an unpleasant person.

10. Not only **the performance started** / **did the performance start** late, but **the audience was** / **was the audience** also very noisy.

D. SO / NEITHER Complete the following sentences using the correct expression with *so* or *neither*.

- I'm not a very energetic person and my brother.
- We enjoy playing basketball and Margaret.
- He didn't pay any attention to her demands and we.
- Tomorrow they're going to the new shopping centre and I.
- When we arrived, Brian hadn't finished dinner yet and his parents.
- By next year, I'll have finished school and you.
- I've never been abroad and my sister.
- The pizza was burnt and the garlic bread.

E. INVERSION Rewrite the second sentence so that the meaning is the same as in the first. Begin as shown.

- It was the first time I had met such an interesting person.
Never had
- You should never accept lifts from strangers.
Under no circumstances
- As soon as I got home I started unpacking.
No sooner had
- The only way you will make her forgive you is by sending her flowers.
Only by
- Crimes are not committed very often in this area.
Rarely



Exam Practice

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- Why don't you send e-mails instead on the phone for so long?
 - of talking
 - that you talk
 - from talking
 - for you to talk
- Not until all the facts can we make a decision.
 - have we heard
 - we have heard
 - hearing
 - that we hear
- Jenny's late. Where she could be?
 - you think
 - think you
 - do you think
 - you do think
- We took a taxi it was quite late.
 - as
 - because of
 - due to
 - as well as
- Despite expensive, the hotel was not very luxurious.
 - it was
 - of being
 - being
 - the fact being
- I went to bed early so that plenty of sleep.
 - to get
 - for getting
 - I will get
 - I could get
- "Charlie doesn't like his new school much."
"..... at first, but I grew to like it."
 - Neither did I
 - So did I
 - Nor did
 - So I did
- Nancy studies Latin and French, German and English.
 - also
 - as well as
 - too
 - beside

- B. Use the words in Table A to complete the sentences in Table B so that they have the meaning indicated in Table C. (Use each item in Table A only once. There are two you won't need.)

TABLE A					
A only if	B not only	C no sooner	D in order to	E under no circumstances	
F apart from	G since	H even though	I however	J moreover	

TABLE B		TABLE C
1.	..... are large cars expensive to buy, but they also cost a lot to run.	<i>adding an idea</i>
2.	Milk from our factory is tested carefully protect our customers.	<i>explaining why something is done</i>
3.	..... we knew who the killer was, we enjoyed the film.	<i>showing two opposite ideas</i>
4.	..... had we moved in than our neighbours started complaining about our dog.	<i>showing that two actions happened one shortly after the other</i>
5.	..... must this door be left open.	<i>expressing strong prohibition</i>
6.	I should punish you for breaking the rules. , I am prepared to give you another chance.	<i>showing contrast between two statements</i>
7.	..... we book today will we get the 50% discount.	<i>emphasising that there is no other way</i>
8.	All the countries voted in favour of the plan France.	<i>talking about an exception</i>

- C. **KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- Although the jacket was expensive, Ryan decided to buy it. **even**
Ryan decided to buy the jacket a lot of money.
- It started to rain as soon as we arrived at the beach. **sooner**
No at the beach than it started to rain.
- Sharon was the only person who didn't enjoy the concert. **from**
Everyone the concert.
- He felt nervous during the interview but he still got the job. **feeling**
He got the job during the interview.
- If I take my mobile phone, I'll be able to contact you. **so**
I'll take my mobile phone in touch with you.
- The children couldn't go to school that day as it was snowing heavily. **because**
It was that the children couldn't go to school that day.
- George not only broke his leg but he cut his head too. **well**
George broke his leg cutting his head.
- Both Anna and Andrew didn't enjoy the book. **neither**
Anna didn't enjoy the book Andrew.



TEST YOURSELF

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word below. There are more words than you need. Make sure you understand all the words in the vocabulary boxes, not just the correct answers.

HEALTH

ache	cough	faint	pain	surgeon
anaesthetic	cure	fatal	patient	treatment
bleed	disease	infectious	prescribe	vaccination
clinic	drug	injection	recover	virus
consult	epidemic	operation	sprain	X-ray

If you need to (1) a doctor, you should go to the (2) or medical centre – just phone for an appointment. They will refer you to the hospital to see a surgeon if you need to have an (3)

Unfortunately, many (4) like meningitis, influenza and measles still exist. They are (5), so if one person has it, others can catch it too, and there may be an (6) if many people are affected. Children are usually given (7) to protect them against some of these illnesses.

Jack is having problems with his teeth and goes for dental (8) once a week. Because he doesn't want to feel any (9), the dentist gives him an (10) before he starts.

Yesterday I (11) my ankle falling over a stone in the road. I went to hospital for an (12) but I hadn't broken anything. The doctor put a bandage on it and I'm still limping.

FITNESS

aerobics	equipment	health club	regime	trainer
bodybuilding	exercise bike	instructor	stamina	vigorous
coach	fit	jogging	strenuous	weightlifting
energetic	gym	muscle	tracksuit	well equipped

13. Running a long distance requires a lot of
14. Taking regular exercise is essential if you want to be
15. The new sports centre has just opened. It is and has everything you need.
16. If you are not used to or exercise, you should be careful.
17. They go every morning before breakfast.
18. Our new keep-fit is very good. She runs the class well.
19. The exercises that bodybuilders do are intended to make their bigger.
20. Since I took up swimming, I've been feeling much more

Check your answers with your teacher. How many of them are correct?

0-6: Start studying! 7-9: Try harder! 10-12: Quite good! 13-15: Good! 16-20: Excellent!



Vocabulary Practice

A. PHRASAL VERBS Write the correct form of the phrasal verbs with *come* to replace the words in bold. You will have to use one phrasal verb twice.

come across • come down with • come out • come round • come to • come up against • come over • come up

- The family's membership fees for the health club **amounted to** £500.
- I **found** our membership cards by chance. I thought we had lost them.
- A new book about infectious diseases **is being published** next month.
- He has **met** a problem in his training schedule, but I'm sure it will be OK.
- Why don't you **visit us** after you've been jogging?
- The subject of tropical diseases **was mentioned** at the conference.
- At first he argued against going to the gym but he finally **agreed**.
- John **got sick with** flu last week. His body ached and he felt awful.

B. USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS Complete the following sentences with the words below. You will need to use one word more than once.

breath • do • get • have • heavy • make • better • sore • strict • feel

- He seems to a very **high temperature**. We'd better call the doctor.
- She's a very **smoker**; she smokes at least 30 cigarettes a day.
- After doing aerobics for an hour, I was quite **out of**
- If you want to **fit**, you should take regular exercise. It would you **good**.
- They a lot of **exercise**, so they're in really good shape.
- They're trying to lose weight, so they're on a very **diet**.
- I think I have a cold; my nose is running and I have a **throat**.
- I **dizzy** – I think I'm going to faint.
- If you **feel** ill, you should **an appointment** to see the doctor.
- It took her a long time to **get** after the operation.

C. PREPOSITIONS Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition.

- She is not **accustomed** doing so much exercise. She's exhausted!
- He's **addicted** chocolates. No wonder he's overweight!
- I'm **ashamed** my laziness, but I hate physical exercise.
- The only thing we **care** is keeping fit.
- Vince closed his eyes because he is **afraid** heights.
- Many people **die** cancer every year.
- I'm **delighted** my new doctor. He's excellent.
- She's been **complaining** backache for some time.
- Have you **heard** anything the new gym?
- I'm very **impressed** his physical condition.
- She is **suffering** pneumonia and is in hospital.
- We were **trembling** cold and put on our tracksuits.



D. EASILY CONFUSED WORDS Circle the correct answer.

1. The doctor gave me a **recipe** / **prescription** for medicine to help my cough.
2. It is an accepted fact that smoking is one of the **reasons** / **causes** of heart disease.
3. If you climbed the stairs instead of taking the lift, you'd get more **exercise** / **gymnastics**.
4. Doctors are **concerned about** / **concerned with** the appearance of a new virus.
5. I don't feel very well; I think I'll go and **lay** / **lie** down for an hour.
6. After his operation, he was off **sick** / **ill** for several weeks.
7. You should **breathe** / **breath** deeply when you exercise.
8. You'd better **remember** / **remind** him to take his medicine now.
9. He has bruised his **leg** / **foot** badly just below the knee.
10. Unfortunately, I **put on** / **took on** a lot of **weight** / **kilos** while I was studying for my exams.



Exam Practice

A. KEY WORD TRANSFORMATIONS Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. He smokes a lot but we can't persuade him to smoke less. **smoker**
He but we can't persuade him to smoke less.
2. They were breathless after doing so many exercises. **breath**
They after doing so many exercises.
3. I wanted to go to the party but I got chickenpox so I couldn't. **came**
I couldn't go to the party because I chickenpox.
4. They were faced with several problems in the building of the new sports centre. **came**
They several problems in the building of the new sports centre.
5. She is very fit because she exercises regularly. **shape**
She because she exercises regularly.
6. The doctors operated on Keith last week. **had**
Keith last week.
7. You should arrange to see the doctor. **make**
You should the doctor.
8. The new medical centre made a great impression on me. **impressed**
I the new medical centre.

B. MULTIPLE CHOICE CLOZE Read the text below and decide which answer, A, B, C or D, best fits each space.

ADVICE ON EXERCISING

Following a (1) exercise programme is an excellent idea if you want to avoid health problems when you are older. Many people who complain about having to (2) up some form of physical activity soon (3) when they realise how much good it does them. After (4) exercises for a few weeks, they are usually delighted (5) the improvement they feel in their general (6) and wonder why they did not start sooner.

Aerobics, for example, is an excellent activity which strengthens the muscles in your body, particularly in your back, helping to prevent injury in many (7) of the body. Aerobic exercises also release certain chemicals in the body which can relieve (8) naturally, providing a welcome alternative to drugs which can often be (9) Jogging is also excellent, but try to avoid jogging on hard surfaces, as this can cause injury to ankles or knees. Many people worry that aerobics or jogging are too (10) and may be harmful, but if you start off (11) , there should be no problem. Both activities have the advantage of not needing any special (12) , apart from the correct shoes for jogging and perhaps a tracksuit to put on afterwards to keep warm.



- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A regular | B routine | C usual | D fatal |
| 2. A set | B turn | C take | D bring |
| 3. A come across | B come out | C come over | D come round |
| 4. A making | B doing | C training | D having |
| 5. A in | B from | C with | D of |
| 6. A breath | B bodybuilding | C fitness | D recovery |
| 7. A places | B parts | C pieces | D sizes |
| 8. A pain | B ache | C sickness | D causes |
| 9. A rigorous | B addictive | C attractive | D anaesthetic |
| 10. A strong | B gymnastic | C infectious | D strenuous |
| 11. A gently | B occasionally | C softly | D mildly |
| 12. A instructor | B equipment | C trainer | D coach |

C. WORD FORMATION Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. Write your word in the space.

MODERN MEDICINE

Thanks to modern medicine, there are many new (1) for diseases which in the past were (2) Many childhood (3) , for instance, have now disappeared. This is due to the use of vaccinations.

TREAT
CURE
ILL

Medical advances have also changed the way surgical operations are carried out. These are less (4) for the patient than they used to be. But, unfortunately, in Third World countries, a high number of (5) diseases are still common because of overpopulation and poor (6) conditions. Malnutrition, which is caused by (7) food, is one of the many problems which can (8) children's lives in these countries.

PAIN
INFECTION
LIFE
SUFFICIENT
THREAT

With today's technology, there is no reason that a (9) to these problems should be beyond our (10)

SOLVE
CAPABLE

Review 14

A. **OPEN CLOZE** Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

CYCLING

Fitness experts are now telling us that cycling is one of the (1) forms of exercise. As (2) as making you stronger and (3) energetic, cycling also helps to improve breathing. Not only (4) correct breathing help your lungs to develop, but it is also good for general well-being. But if cycling is to have the right effect (5) the body, you should cycle as often as you can because the more cycling you do, the better the results (6) be.

For people who are not accustomed to (7) exercise, cycling is a pleasant introduction. It also has other advantages. Being an outdoor sport, it allows you (8) spend time in the open air, and the idea of (9) able to escape from traffic and pollution is very attractive to many people. In countries like Holland and Germany, (10) cycling is popular, special cycle tracks are often provided along the side of the road. This not only gives the cyclist more freedom, but it also prevents accidents, which are frequently caused (11) impatient drivers. More and more people are taking (12) cycling in other countries too, even where there are no special cycle tracks.

B. **These comments were made by different people talking about health and fitness problems. Complete the sentences below by changing the form of the word in parentheses when this is necessary.**

1. The doctor wrote me a (**prescribe**) for some sleeping tablets.
2. I find it very difficult to (**breath**) when I get a cold.
3. My yoga (**instruct**) showed me how to do more advanced exercises.
4. I used to be more (**energy**), but lately I've been getting tired easily.
5. The cut on my leg was (**blood**) quite heavily.
6. I can't give up coffee. I think I'm (**addict**) to it.
7. I have to watch my (**weigh**) quite carefully – I can't eat whatever I want.
8. I may have to have an (**operate**) on my injured knee.

Review 14

C. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

GRAMMAR

- "I've lost my gym bag."
"I'll help you look for it. ?"
 - What it looks like
 - What does it look like
 - How does it look
 - How it looks
- he is studying medicine, he doesn't want to be a doctor.
 - However
 - Instead of
 - Although
 - Even
- Carl bought the jeep the high price.
 - despite
 - despite of
 - in spite
 - since
- Judy's not going to start coming to the gym, ?
 - doesn't she
 - does she
 - isn't she
 - is she
- Never before such a good speech.
 - I have heard
 - do I hear
 - have I heard
 - I heard
- "We don't have our membership cards yet."
"Neither"
 - we don't
 - do we
 - we haven't
 - have we
- She doesn't belong to a gym and we
 - not either
 - don't neither
 - don't too
 - don't either
- They left early be late for class.
 - so that they wouldn't
 - in order not
 - because they wouldn't
 - so to not
- "What do the dentist's patients think of him?"
"..... like him very much."
 - The more of them
 - The most of them
 - More of them
 - Most of them
- There's no point membership fees if you don't go to the gym any longer.
 - to pay
 - you to pay
 - in paying
 - for paying

VOCABULARY

- The common cold is very ; one person can easily catch it from another.
 - vigorous
 - strenuous
 - infectious
 - continuous
- She's a lot of weight since I last saw her.
 - gained
 - got over
 - taken on
 - carried out
- Doctors have learned to cure many which used to be fatal.
 - epidemics
 - diseases
 - hurts
 - sprains
- this evening and we'll do some yoga together at my place.
 - Come across
 - Come out
 - Come through
 - Come over
- Our ski in Switzerland was excellent.
 - coach
 - surgeon
 - instructor
 - referee
- She's had the flu but she seems to be
 - going well
 - getting better
 - coming around
 - doing good
- He received very good in the hospital.
 - treatment
 - operation
 - cure
 - drug
- We're of the fact that we're not in good shape.
 - accustomed
 - afraid
 - ashamed
 - embarrassed
- He fell down the steps and himself badly.
 - destroyed
 - injured
 - damaged
 - harmed
- Exercising will help you stay fit.
 - generally
 - typically
 - usually
 - regularly

GLOSSARY and APPENDICES

Glossary	176
Irregular Verbs	206
British and American English	208
Prefixes and Suffixes	209
Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases	210

GLOSSARY

Please note: The definitions provided in this glossary reflect the context in which the words and phrases are used in the book.

ABBREVIATIONS

adj	adjective (επίθετο)
adv	adverb (επίρρημα)
n	noun (ουσιαστικό)

phr v	phrasal verb (περιφραστικό ρήμα)
prep	preposition (πρόθεση)
v	verb (ρήμα)

UNIT 2 Language and Communication

TEST YOURSELF

FORMS OF LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION

accuse (v) say that someone has done something wrong or dishonest: κατηγορώ. *She accused him of stealing her purse.*

admit (v) agree that something is true: παραδέχομαι. *He admitted that he had made a mistake.*

advise (v) recommend something to somebody: συμβουλεύω. *She advised me to go to bed early before the test.*

announce (v) give information publicly: ανακοινώνω. *The teacher announced the names of the prizewinners.*

apologise (v) say you are sorry for doing something: ζητώ συγγνώμη, απολογούμαι. *I apologised for keeping him waiting for so long.*

argue (v) disagree in an angry way: λογομαχώ, καβγαδίζω. *He argued with his parents because they would not allow him to buy a motorcycle.*

chat (n) an informal conversation: κουβεντούλα. *We had a very pleasant chat about all sorts of things.*

chat (v) have an informal conversation: κουβεντιάζω (φιλικά). *My friend and I chatted for hours last night.*

communicate (v) get across information: επικοινωνώ. *Many people who don't hear well use sign language to communicate.*

complain (v) express dissatisfaction about something: παραπονιέμαι. *She complained that the heating in her room didn't work.*

confess (v) admit doing something wrong: ομολογώ. *The thief confessed to committing several robberies in the neighbourhood.*

contact (n) written or oral communication: επαφή. *I maintain contact with my old school friends, even though I live in a different city now.*

contact (v) write to or phone someone: έρχομαι σε επαφή, επικοινωνώ. *I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.*

criticise (v) express disapproval: κάνω κριτική. *He criticised everything about her – the way she spoke, the way she dressed and the way she worked.*

declare (v) announce your intentions or feelings: δηλώνω, κηρύσσω. *The trade union declared a strike.*

discuss (v) talk about something: συζητώ. *We discussed the possibility of taking a holiday in May.*

exclaim (v) speak emphatically: αναφωνώ. *"How dare you say such things about me!" he exclaimed.*

excuse (n) an explanation for a situation: δικαιολογία. *She had no excuse for being late.*

excuse (v) forgive / pardon someone: δικαιολογώ, συγχωρώ. *Excuse me; I didn't mean to interrupt.*

express (v) make known your feelings or opinions: εκφράζω. *It's hard for me to express myself in English.*

gesture (n) a movement of the body intended to express meaning: χειρονομία. *She waved to us in a friendly gesture.*

gesture (v) make movements in order to express oneself: χειρονομώ, γνέφω. *She gestured "goodbye" with her hand.*

get across (phr v) communicate an idea successfully to people: γίνομαι κατανοητός, κάνω (κάτι) σαφές. *He spoke well and got his ideas across to his audience.*

grumble (v) complain about something, usually in a bad-tempered way: γκρινιάζω. *She keeps grumbling that she has no free time.*

interrupt (v) say or do something to stop someone from completing an activity: διακόπτω. *Don't interrupt me while I'm talking!*

interview (n) a meeting where you are asked questions about yourself: συνέντευξη. *I had a job interview at the bank.*

interview (v) ask someone a series of questions: παίρνω συνέντευξη. *The journalist interviewed the pop star about her private life.*

object (n) something that you can see and touch that is not alive: αντικείμενο. *The museum has many objects on display from prehistoric times.*

object (v) express your opposition to something: αντιτίθεμαι, φέρνω αντίρρηση. *She objected to having so much extra work.*

persuade (v) talk to somebody to try to make them do or think something: πειθώ. *He didn't want to go out, but in the end we persuaded him to join us.*

pronounce (v) say the sounds of a word or letter: προφέρω. *I find it difficult to pronounce the word "arthritis".*

protest (n) a strong complaint or disagreement: διαμαρτυρία. *I have sent a formal protest to the police about the lack of security at football games.*

protest (v) say or show that you are against something: διαμαρτυρούμαι. *The students protested against the increase in tuition fees.*

regret (n) a feeling of sadness about something that has happened: λύπη. *Mary expressed regret that she had not taken school more seriously.*

regret (v) be sorry about something: μετανιώνω. *He regretted what he said and apologised.*

threaten (v) say that you are going to do something unpleasant to someone: απειλώ. *Tom threatened to tell my parents about my bad test marks.*

warn (v) make someone aware of a possible danger or problem: προειδοποιώ. *The doctor warned him about the dangers of smoking.*

whisper (n) a quiet way of speaking so that no one can hear you: ψιθυρισμός. *She spoke in a whisper so that no one would learn her secret.*

whisper (v) say something quietly: ψιθυρίζω. *"I don't like her dress," she whispered.*

DESCRIBING LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION

bilingual (adj) able to speak two languages fluently: δίγλωσσος. *He is bilingual; he speaks English and Italian.*

conversational (adj) (of a language) informal, as used when talking: που αφορά τη συνομιλία. *She went to a summer school to improve her conversational English.*

expressive (adj) showing one's feelings or thoughts: εκφραστικός. *She writes very expressive poems.*

fluent (adj) able to speak a language easily and accurately: με ευχέρεια στον προφορικό λόγο, ευφραδής. *It took me many years to become fluent in French.*

foreign (adj) belonging to a country that is not your own: ξένος, αλλοδαπός. *She speaks several foreign languages.*

multilingual (adj) able to speak several different languages: πολύγλωσσος. *She's multilingual; she speaks English, French and German.*

native (adj) having been born in a particular country or city: ντόπιος, εκ γενετής. *He is looking for a native English speaker to do the translations for him.*

noisy (adj) making many loud sounds: θορυβώδης. *The children were very noisy and woke up the baby.*

oral (adj) spoken rather than written: προφορικός. *At university, I had to pass an oral exam as well as a written one.*

talkative (adj) describing a person who talks a lot: ομιλητικός. *In school he was very quiet, but at home he was quite talkative.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

PHRASAL VERBS

get on with – continue, carry on: συνεχίζω. *While I am shopping, I would like you to get on with the cooking.*

get by – manage: τα καταφέρνω. *It is hard to get by on a low salary.*

get (someone) down – make someone feel unhappy or pessimistic: αποκαρδιώνω, στενοχωρώ (κάποιον). *His constant complaining is getting me down.*

get away with – manage to do something without being caught / found out: κάνω κάτι κακό χωρίς να τιμωρηθώ. *We let him get away with all sorts of naughty behaviour.*

get down to – put an effort into doing something: καταπιάνομαι, ασχολούμαι σοβαρά με. *Now that I've had a rest, I can get down to my homework.*

get out of – avoid doing something: αποφεύγω να κάνω κάτι. *He is so lazy; he always tries to get out of helping me.*

get on – succeed: πετυχαίνω. *He wants to get on in his new job so he is working very hard.*

get over – start to feel happy or well again after something bad: ξεπερνάω, συνέρχομαι. *He's very disappointed with his exam results, but he'll get over it in time.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

at the top of (my) voice – in a very loud voice: (μιλάω, φωνάζω) πολύ δυνατά. *Quiet! Don't shout at the top of your voice!*

make a speech – deliver a talk to a group of people: βγάζω λόγο. *Jack was nervous about making a speech at the meeting.*

get the point – understand the main idea: καταλαβαίνω, πιάνω το νόημα. *Can you explain what he was saying? I didn't get the point.*

speak up – talk clearly and loudly: μιλώ καθαρά και δυνατά. *Please speak up! We can't hear you.*

get in touch – make contact: ερχομαι σε επαφή. *We got in touch with an expert who gave us advice.*

make (myself) understood – make what you are saying clear to others: γίνομαι κατανοητός. *It is difficult to make oneself understood in a foreign language.*

have an argument – disagree angrily with someone else: λογομαγιά, διαφωνώ. *Bob and Tom had an argument about who should wash the car.*

tell the time – know what time it is by looking at a clock: λέω την ώρα. *I am teaching my little brother how to tell the time. (AmE: tell time)*

haven't a clue – not know anything: δεν έχω ιδέα. *I haven't a clue where he lives or what his address is.*

make conversation – talk to someone (in a polite way): συζητώ, ανοίγω κουβέντα. *Shy people find it difficult to make conversation.*

make an excuse – give a reason for something you have done wrong: βρίσκω δικαιολογία. *He's always making excuses for being late.*

talk (something) over – discuss something in the hope of finding a solution: συζητώ για να βρω λύση. *It's best to talk things over and try to solve the problem.*

have a conversation – speak to someone about a subject: συζητώ. *I didn't have time to have a conversation with him.*

lower (my) voice – speak less loudly: χαμηλώνω τη φωνή (μου). *Lower your voice – I don't want anyone else to hear.*

talk (someone) into (something) – persuade someone to do something: πείθω (κάποιον) να κάνει (κάτι). *I didn't want to go to the party at first, but he talked me into it.*

get to the point – express the main idea: μπαίνω στο θέμα. *I don't have much time to listen, so please get to the point.*

tell a lie – say something that is not true: λέω ψέματα. *People who are dishonest find it very easy to tell a lie.*

on the tip of (my) tongue – unable to remember something that you know: στην άκρη της γλώσσας (μψ. όταν δε θυμόμαστε κάτι). *Her name is on the tip of my tongue, but I just can't remember it now.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

language (n): γλώσσα (που μιλάμε). *It is difficult to learn a foreign language.*

mother tongue (n): μητρική γλώσσα. *She was born in Italy; Italian is her mother tongue.*

speech (n): λόγος, ομιλία. *The politician made an interesting speech.*

talk (v): μιλώ. *Please don't talk during the test.*

tell (v): λέω. *The patient must tell the doctor what is troubling him.*

keep in touch: διατηρώ επαφή (με). *She has kept in touch with us ever since she moved to Rome.*

(body) language (n): γλώσσα (του σώματος). *Body language can be very expressive.*

sign (n): σήμα, νεύμα. *Start running when I give you a sign.*

giggle (v): χαχανίζω, γελώ ανόητα. *She giggled when I tickled her.*

mumble (v): μουρμουρίζω. *He mumbled to himself, and we couldn't make out what he was saying.*

refuse (v): αρνούμαι (να κάνω κάτι). *I asked him to call me, but he refused.*

deny (v): αρνούμαι (ότι έκανα κάτι). *The teacher thought Ben had cheated in the test, but he denied it.*

reject (v): απορρίπτω. *His application for university was rejected, so he is very disappointed.*

news (n): νέα, ειδήσεις. *We turned on the radio to listen to the news.*

information (n): πληροφορίες. *Tom asked for more information about the camera before he decided to buy it.*

advice (n): συμβουλή, -ές. *I didn't know what to do so I asked my mother for advice.*

say (v): λέω. *The teacher said we had not done our homework properly.*

mention (v): αναφέρω. *I mentioned to him that we were going out tonight, and he said he'd like to come too.*

inform (v): πληροφορώ. *The teacher informed us that there would be an exam soon.*

fault (n): σφάλμα, λάθος. *It's not my fault you're late.*

fault (v): κατηγορώ, επικρίνω. *You can't fault the team – they played a good game.*

blame (n): φταιξιμο, ευθύνη. *No one wanted to take the blame for the mistake.*

blame (v): ρίχνω το φταιξιμο. *The taxi driver blamed Jim for the accident.*

wrong (n): λάθος. *Don't be angry with her – she's too young to know right from wrong.*

wrong (v): αδικώ. *I have been wronged and I want an apology.*

agree (v): συμφωνώ. *I suggested we meet, and she agreed.*

agree to (phr v): συμφωνώ να (κάνω κάτι). *They agreed to our suggestions.*

agree with (phr v): συμφωνώ με (κάποιον). *I agree with you that boxing is a violent sport.*

UNIT 4 People and Relationships

TEST YOURSELF

RELATIONSHIPS

adolescent (n) a young person / teenager between the ages of 13-18: έφηβος. *Being an adolescent is difficult; you are neither an adult nor a child.*

adopt (v) to agree to bring up someone else's child legally as your own: υιοθετώ. *They have just adopted a baby girl.*

adult (n) a fully grown, mature person: ενήλικος. *This film is for adults only; children aren't allowed to see it.*

bride (n) a woman who is getting married: νύφη. *The bride walked into the church with her father. (masculine form: groom)*

bridesmaid (n) a girl or woman who helps a bride at her wedding: παράνυμφος. *I was a bridesmaid at Meg's wedding.*

couple (n) two people, often a husband and wife: ζευγάρι. *They were the only couple who were not dancing.*

divorced (adj) not married any longer: διαζευγμένος. *After many unhappy years together, the couple are now divorced.*

(get) engaged agree to marry: αρραβωνιάζομαι. *She has just got engaged to a very nice man.*

ex-wife (n) someone's former wife: (η) πρώην σύζυγος. *He has remarried, but he still has a good relationship with his ex-wife.*

father-in-law (n) the father of your husband or wife: πεθερός. *My father-in-law says that his son is very lucky to have such a talented wife!*

fiancée (n) the woman a man is going to marry: αρραβωνιαστικιά. *Greg introduced us to his fiancée at the party. (masculine form: fiancé)*

infant (n) a very young child: βρέφος. *You should request a special seat when travelling on a plane with an infant.*

niece (n) your brother or sister's daughter: ανιψιά. *I have two nieces, Sally and Karen. (masculine form: nephew)*

only child (n) someone who has no brothers or sisters: μοναχοπαιδί. *An only child learns to be independent.*

orphan (n) someone whose parents are dead: ορφανός. *The child's parents were killed in a car accident, and he was left an orphan.*

relative (n) a member of your family: συγγενής. *Her relatives came from all over the country to her wedding.*

separated (adj) no longer living together: χωρισμένος (σε διάσταση). *Because they are separated, they don't live in the same house.*

single (adj) 1. not married: ανύπαντρος. *Her daughter isn't married; she's still single.* 2. only one: ένας, μόνος. *There isn't a single cloud in the sky.*

stepfather (n) a man who marries a child's mother after the death of or divorce from the child's father: πατριός. *Betty's mother remarried recently and Betty likes her stepfather.*

widow (n) a woman whose husband has died: χήρα. *Our neighbour is a widow whose husband died last year. (masculine form: widower)*

APPEARANCE

bald (adj) having no hair: φαλακρός. *My uncle is completely bald.*

beard (n) the hair on a man's face: μούσι. *Brad is trying to grow a beard because he wants to look older.*

complexion (n) the natural appearance of the skin on someone's face: επιδερμίδα. *Drinking a lot of water is good for your complexion.*

elderly (adj) old: γέρος, ηλικιωμένος. *My grandmother is very active for an elderly person – she still plays tennis once a week.*

feature (n) a part of your face, such as eyes or nose: χαρακτηριστικό (προσώπου). *His dark, expressive eyes are his best feature.*

freckle (n) small brown dot on someone's skin: φακίδα. *Ann has got freckles on her cheeks.*

middle-aged (adj) no longer young but not yet old: μεσήλικος. *Jack is middle-aged. He looks like he's at least 50.*

moustache (n) hair that grows on a person's upper lip: μουστάκι. *After Dan shaved off his moustache, he looked younger.*

pretty (adj) attractive, usually used for females: όμορφος, χαριτωμένος. *Her youngest daughter is very pretty.*

slim (adj) attractively thin: αδύνατος, λεπτός. *I keep slim by exercising and watching my diet.*

slim (v) lose weight by going on a diet: αδυνατίζω. *Ted won't have any cake; he is slimming right now.*

straight (adj) without curves or curls: ίσιος. *She has long, straight black hair.*

wavy (adj) having a lot of waves or loose curls: κυματιστός, σγουρός. *Barbara's hair is long and wavy.*

PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS

conscientious (adj) a person who works carefully and thoroughly: ευσυνείδητος. *His sister is very conscientious about doing her homework.*

considerate (adj) thoughtful, thinking about the feelings and wishes of other people: που σκέφτεται και υπολογίζει τους άλλους. *He's such a considerate person; he never puts himself first.*

enthusiastic (adj) excited about something: ενθουσιώδης. *The children are very enthusiastic about going to the Far East next year.*

faithful (adj) being loyal and true: πιστός. *They say that a dog is always faithful to its owner.*

hospitable (adj) making people feel welcome in your home: φιλόξενος. *They are very hospitable – they always invite people for dinner.*

independent (adj) preferring to do things by yourself: ανεξάρτητος. *She's very independent; she prefers travelling alone.*

obedient (adj) doing what you are told: υπάκουος. *The pupils are a pleasure to teach when they are so obedient!*

outgoing (adj) friendly, not shy: φιλικός, εξωστρεφής. *She is a very outgoing girl who has many friends.*

self-centred (adj) concerned only with yourself: εγωκεντρικός. *She's very self-centred and doesn't think of anyone else's needs.*

stubborn (adj) not willing to listen or change one's ideas: πεισματάρης. *He won't listen to us – he's very stubborn.*

sympathetic (adj) understanding how somebody feels in a certain situation: συμπνετικός. *My mother was sympathetic when I told her that I was upset with my boyfriend.*

tactful (adj) choosing your words carefully so as not to offend someone: διακριτικός. *It wasn't very tactful to say she looks fat!*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

make friends – become friends with other people: κάνω φίλους. *He is such a shy boy – he doesn't make friends easily.*

put up with – willing to accept something unpleasant: ανέχομαι. *The teacher was not willing to put up with his bad behaviour any longer.*

close friend – a good friend: στενός φίλος. *I know Sue well – she is a close friend of mine.*

in a bad mood – feeling irritable and short-tempered: κακοδιάθετος, άκεφος. *Don't ask Dad for money now – he's in a bad mood!*

get on well – relate well to one another: τα πηγαίνω καλά (με κάποιον). *I enjoy spending time with my cousins as we get on well.*

get divorced – become divorced, end a marriage: παίρνω διαζύγιο. *I'm sorry to hear that the Smiths are getting divorced. They've been married for years.*

single-parent family – family where the children live either with the father or the mother: οικογένεια με ένα γονιό. *Nowadays there are many single-parent families.*

in (my) early (thirties) – near the beginning of a 10-year period of someone's life: κοντά στα (τριάντα). *Sam is in his early fifties.*

make up – become friends again: συμφιλιώνομαι. *We had a fight and didn't speak for weeks, but now we've made up.*

look like – have a similar appearance to someone else: μοιάζω με. *My sister looks like me but she has blonde hair.*

fall in love – feel very strong romantic attraction for someone: ερωτεύομαι. *She fell in love with him the moment she met him.*

get married – legally become husband and wife: παντρεύομαι. *They got married two months ago.*

PHRASAL VERBS

bring about – cause something to happen: προκαλώ, προξενώ. *The new school has brought about a change in her behaviour.*

bring down – reduce, lower: μειώνω, κατεβάζω. *The medicine brought down her fever.*

bring in – earn, get money by working: αποδίδω (κέρδος, χρήματα). *She's going to try and find a job to bring in a bit more money.*

bring out – produce, publish something new: παράγω, εκδίδω. *Newer and faster computers are brought out all the time.*

bring back – remind someone of past experiences: επαναφέρω (στη μνήμη), θυμίζω. *These photographs bring back happy memories.*

bring off – do something successfully: πετυχαίνω, φέρω κάτι σε πέρας. *We didn't think she could do it, but she brought off the surprise party for Katie.*

bring on – cause something: προξενώ. *Her coughing attack was brought on by all the dust in the air.*

bring up – raise children: μεγαλώνω, ανατρέφω. *Parents who bring up their children with love are often loved in return.*

ADJECTIVES

flexible – able to change easily: εύκαμπτος, ευέλικτος. *I'm quite flexible about the plans – I'll do whatever the group decides.*

rude – speaking or behaving in a hostile manner: αγενής. *Did you hear him? He was so rude to me!*

pessimistic – having a negative attitude to life: απαισιόδοξος. *Ed's so pessimistic – he always thinks something bad will happen.*

ambitious – wanting to be successful: φιλόδοξος. *She's ambitious and hopes to become a doctor.*

generous – giving more than is expected: γενναιοδωρος. *They're a generous couple and give a lot of money to charity.*

selfish – caring only about yourself: εγωιστής. *He's so selfish – he refuses to share.*

introverted – somebody who is quiet, shy: εσωστρεφής. *Kim is such an introverted person that it is difficult to have a conversation with her.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

fit (v): ταιριάζω (σε μέγεθος). *This coat doesn't fit me; it's too big.*

suit (v): πηγαίνω, ταιριάζω. *The colour pink really suits you. You should wear it more often.*

match (v): ταιριάζω (με). *The colour of that shirt matches his blue eyes.*

grow up (phr v): μεγαλώνω, ωριμάζω. *I want to be a pilot when I grow up.*

look after (phr v): φροντίζω. *My mother will look after the baby when I go to the dentist.*

take after (phr v): μοιάζω. *She takes after her mother – she has the same mannerisms and habits.*

married (adj): παντρεμένος. *My parents have been married for 20 years.*

alone (adj): μόνος, μοναχός. *I went to the party alone last night because Ted was ill.*

unique (adj): μοναδικός. *Her paintings are unique – I've never seen anything like them.*

PREFIXES

disobedient – refusing to do what you are told: ανυπάκουος. *The disobedient pupils refused to do their homework.*

irresponsible – careless: ανεύθυνος. *I gave her the money but she lost it – she's so irresponsible!*

insensitive – not being caring and kind: αναισθητός. *He is so insensitive! He said I'm overweight!*

unfamiliar – not recognisable: άγνωστος, ξένος. *I think we're lost. This area looks very unfamiliar to me.*

immature – not grown up: ανώριμος. *She's not the right girl for him. She's very young and immature.*

unpopular – not liked: μη δημοφιλής. *That boy is very unpopular because he bullies the other children.*

dishonest – not honest or truthful: ανέντιμος. *Stealing that money was a very dishonest thing to do.*

impatient – not being patient / not able to wait: ανυπόμονος. *Dad gets impatient with us when we don't listen.*

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

short-sleeved – having short sleeves: κοντομάνικος. *I wore a short-sleeved blouse because it was warm.*

well-built – having an attractive, strong body: γεροδεμένος. *Matthew is strong and well-built.*

well-dressed – wearing nice-looking clothes: καλοντυμένος. *Pamela is a well-dressed woman whose clothes really suit her.*

good-looking – attractive: εμφανισιμος, ωραίος. *Her new boyfriend is good-looking.*

brand-new – completely new: ολοκαίνουργιος. *We've just bought a brand-new car.*

hard-working – diligent: εργατικός. *She does well at school because she's hard-working.*

easy-going – not easily annoyed or upset: βολικός, ανέμελος. *She's very easy-going; she's always calm and relaxed.*

fair-haired – having light-coloured hair: ξανθός, ανοιχτόχρωμος. *Everyone in my family is fair-haired except Bob, who has dark hair.*

fair-skinned – having a light complexion: με ανοιχτόχρωμη επιδερμίδα. *Fair-skinned people should always use sunblock.*

tight-fitting – fitting the body very closely: στενός, εφαρμοστός. *She wore a tight-fitting jacket.*

half-price – at half the usual price: (στη) μισή τιμή. *These boots were on offer at half-price.*

blue-eyed – having blue eyes: με μπλε μάτια. *I have a blue-eyed cat named Sasha.*

UNIT 6 Living Conditions, Services and Places

TEST YOURSELF

LIVING CONDITIONS

accommodation (n) a place to live or stay: στέγη, κατάλυμα. *She'll be staying with us as she has no other accommodation in this city.*

apartment (n) (AmE) a set of rooms for living in, usually on one floor of a building: διαμέρισμα. *We live in a five-room apartment on the third floor. (BrE: flat)*

bungalow (n) a house which has only one storey: μονώροφο (εξοχικό) σπίτι, μπάνγκαλου. *I prefer a two-storey house to a bungalow.*

construct (v) build: κατασκευάζω, οικοδομώ. *How much time will it take to construct this building?*

convert (v) change from one form or use to another: μετατρέπω. *We are going to convert our garage into an art studio.*

cottage (n) a small house in the country: μικρό εξοχικό σπίτι. *They are building a cottage at the foot of the mountain.*

countryside (n) land that is outside the city: εξοχή, ύπαιθρος. *Jean's house is surrounded by beautiful countryside.*

demolish (v) to destroy completely: κατεδαφίζω, γκρεμίζω. *This old building is going to be demolished.*

furnished (adj) a place which has furniture in it: επιπλωμένος. *It's easier to find an unfurnished flat than a furnished one.*

hall of residence (n) a building where students live: φοιτητική εστία. *The halls of residence in this college are comfortable.*

high-rise (adj) tall building with a lot of floors: πολυώροφος (για κτήριο). *There are many high-rise buildings in this town.*

holiday home (n) a house where people spend their holidays: εξοχικό. *Sara and Derrick bought a holiday home in Spain.*

homeless (adj) having no place to live: άστεγος. *There are many homeless people on the streets of New York.*

industrial (adj) connected to industry: βιομηχανικός. *Industrial areas have many factories.*

location (n) a place: θέση, τοποθεσία. *This is an ideal location for a picnic.*

mortgage (n) money lent by a bank to buy property: υποθήκη. *It will take us many years to pay back the mortgage on this house.*

neighbourhood (n) a part of town where people live: γειτονιά. *This neighbourhood has lots of trees.*

populated (adj) lived in: κατοικημένος. *This neighbourhood is populated by new immigrants.*

renovate (v) renew, repair: ανακαινίζω. *They are renovating the office to make it a more pleasant place to work.*

resident (n) a person who lives in a place: κάτοικος. *Most of the residents are in favour of painting the building.*
rural (adj) in the country: αγροτικός. *We spent our holiday in rural France.*

slum (n) a very poor neighbourhood of a city: υποβαθμισμένη συνοικία. *The flats in the slum are in poor condition.*

suburb (n) part of the city far from the centre: προάστιο. *They moved to the suburbs to get away from the noise of the city.*

surroundings (n) the place and conditions in which one lives: περιβάλλον. *Are you happy with your new surroundings?*

urban (adj) of a city or a town: αστικός. *Urban areas are often noisy and polluted.*

SERVICES AND PLACES

car park (n) a place where cars can be parked: χώρος στάθμευσης αυτοκινήτων (γκαραζ). *We left our car in the car park and walked to the riverside.*

community centre (n) a building where people from a certain area or group meet for social, educational or other purposes: πολιτιστικό κέντρο. *The community centre has interesting activities for senior citizens.*

emergency services (n) public organisations that deal with emergencies (fire brigade, police, ambulance service): υπηρεσίες έκτακτης ανάγκης. *The emergency services in our town are quick and reliable.*

escalator (n) a moving staircase which takes a person from one level of a building to another: κυλιόμενη σκάλα. *When I go shopping, I never use the escalators; I always walk up the stairs.*

facilities (n) buildings, shops or services provided for a particular purpose: εγκαταστάσεις. *The university's sports facilities include an Olympic-size swimming pool.*

health centre (n) a place providing medical services: κέντρο υγείας. *There's no hospital in this town, but there's a health centre where you can see a doctor.*

lift (n) a machine which carries you up and down tall buildings: ανελκυστήρας. *We took the lift to the top floor.* (AmE: elevator)

pedestrian crossing (n) a special place for people to cross the road: διάβαση πεζών. *You should always cross the road at the pedestrian crossing.*

pedestrian precinct (n) a shopping area where cars are not allowed: πεζόδρομος. *This area is a pedestrian precinct where people can walk around.* (AmE: pedestrian mall)

public transport (n) transport for use by the general public (bus, train, underground): μέσα μαζικής μεταφοράς. *To save fuel, people should use public transport to go to work.* (AmE: public transportation)

sports complex (n) an area or building containing sports facilities: αθλητικές εγκαταστάσεις. *We are going to play tennis at the sports complex this afternoon. Why don't you join us?*

tourist information (n) an office giving information to tourists about things to see, places to stay: γραφείο εξυπηρέτησης τουριστών. *The tourist information office can recommend places to visit in the city.*

town council (n) an elected group of people responsible for providing public services such as roads, rubbish collection, public parks, etc: δημοτικό συμβούλιο. *The town council has voted to build a new high school.*

town hall (n) a public building used by the town's local government and the community: δημαρχείο. *The mayor met with the press at the town hall.*

welfare services (n) government services providing help to people with social problems: κοινωνική πρόνοια. *Children are placed with foster families by the welfare services.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

COMPOUND NOUNS

city centre – the central part of a city: κέντρο της πόλης. *Office space in the city centre is quite expensive to rent.*

estate agent – a person who assists in buying, selling and looking after other people's property: μεσίτης, κτηματομεσίτης. *The estate agent helped us sell our house.*

air conditioning – a system to keep the temperature in a room cool: κλιματισμός. *It's very hot in here; turn on the air conditioning!*

central heating – a system for providing heating in buildings: κεντρική θέρμανση. *The central heating broke down this morning, and we are all freezing.*

parking space – a place to leave your car: χώρος στάθμευσης (οχήματος). *It is impossible to find a parking space in the city centre on a Friday night.*

town centre – part of a town where most of the shops, restaurants and places of entertainment are found: εμπορικό κέντρο (μικρής) πόλης. *We stayed in a hotel near the town centre.*

letter box – a box for receiving mail delivered by the postman: γραμματοκιβώτιο. *When we came home from our holiday, the letter box was full.*

burglar alarm – an apparatus that makes a loud noise when a thief breaks into a building: συναγερμός. *The thief ran away when the burglar alarm went off.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

comfortable (adj): άνετος. *I'm going to sit in this comfortable chair and read a book.*

convenient (adj): βολικός. *The bus is very convenient for me to catch because it stops near my home.*

easy (adj): εύκολος. *Fortunately our end-of-term test was quite easy.*

floor (n): πάτωμα, όροφος. *The family living on the second floor of the building is very noisy.*

stair (n): σκαλοπάτι. *We climbed the stairs to her flat.*

level (n): επίπεδο. *Our house has three levels.*

area (n): περιοχή, έκταση. *This area behind our house is going to become a vegetable garden.*

(a) room (n): δωμάτιο. *I wish I had a room of my own.*

room (n): χώρος. *The boot of the car is full so there is no room for any more luggage.*

house (n): σπίτι (κτήριο). *Simon lives in a big house with five rooms.*

home (n): σπίτι (το μέρος που κατοικούμε). *I'm tired. Can we go home now?*

hire (v): νοικιάζω, μισθώνω. *We hired a car during our stay in Greece and visited many sites of historical interest.*

rent (v): νοικιάζω (κτήριο). *David has decided to rent a flat of his own.*

book (v): κάνω κράτηση. *The restaurant is very popular so you must book a table well in advance.*

interior (n): εσωτερικό (ενός χώρου). *The outside of the house looks old and neglected, but its interior is well cared for and lovely.*

inner (adj): εσωτερικός, εσώτερος. *We eat the inner part of a nut and throw away the outer part called the shell.*

internal (adj): εσωτερικός. *The man suffered internal bleeding and died on the way to hospital.*

limit (n): όριο. *If we don't set a limit for our spending, our expenses will soon be more than our income.*

edge (n): άκρη. *Don't stand on the edge of that rock – it's dangerous!*

border (n): σύνορο. *France and Germany share a border.*

near (prep): κοντά. *The library is near our school.*

nearly (adv): σχεδόν. *We're nearly finished cleaning the kitchen. What shall we do next?*

nearby (adv): εδώ / εκεί κοντά. *They took us to eat at a nice restaurant nearby.*

burgle (v): κάνω διάρρηξη. *Their house has been burgled twice in the past year.*

break (v): σπάζω. *I accidentally dropped the dish and it broke.*

steal (v): κλέβω. *Her camera was stolen from her car.*

scene (n): σκηνή, τοπίο. *He always paints scenes of country life.*

view (n): θέα. *We have a lovely view of the sea from our hotel window.*

scenery (n): τοπίο. *They had their country house built at a lovely spot where the scenery is breathtaking.*

PHRASAL VERBS

do without – manage in spite of not having: τα καταφέρνω χωρίς. *People can do without food for a few days, but not water.*

make of – understand to be the meaning of: καταλαβαίνω, ερμηνεύω. *What do you make of his statement?*

make off with – leave with something not belonging to you: κλέβω κάτι και το σκάω. *The bank robbers made off with €10 million.*

make out – manage to see, hear, understand something: διακρίνω. *Without my glasses I can only make out the shape of things.*

make up – 1. invent / imagine a story: επινοώ μια ιστορία. *He has a wonderful imagination; he's always making up stories.* 2. become friends again: συμφιλιώνομαι. *We had a fight and didn't speak for weeks, but now we've made up.*

make up for – compensate; replace: επανορθώνω, αποζημιώνω. *Tom had to study hard to make up for the time lost during his illness.*

make for – go towards: κατευθύνομαι προς. *As soon as he saw me, he made for the door.*

do away with – get rid of: απαλλάσσομαι από, ξεφορτώνομαι. *Let's do away with formalities, shall we? Call me by my first name, Jack.*

do with – need; would like: χρειάζομαι, θέλω. *It's so hot; I'm sure our guests could do with some ice-cold lemonade.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

make room – create space by moving things: κάνω χώρο. *You need to make room in the cupboard for your new clothes.*

block of flats – a large building divided into flats: πολυκατοικία. *I live in a large block of flats.*

on the corner of – at the spot where two streets cross or meet: στη γωνία (που σχηματίζουν δύο δρόμοι). *The shop is on the corner of Panepistimiou and Voukourestiou Streets.*

feel at home – be comfortable: νιώθω άνετα (σα στο σπίτι μου). *Although Sue is a foreigner, she feels at home because she knows the language.*

move house – leave one house and go live in another house: μετακομίζω. *Since we moved house, much of our mail has got lost.*

make a lot of noise – be very noisy: κάνω πολύ θόρυβο. *This washing machine makes a lot of noise when it is spinning.*

do the housework – do all the tasks connected with the care of a house: κάνω τις δουλειές του σπιτιού. *I hate doing the housework!*

make (the) bed – arrange a bed neatly: στρώνω το κρεβάτι. *First I am going to make the beds, and then I will have some coffee.*

take long – require a lot of time: παίρνω πολύ χρόνο. *It didn't take us long to solve the puzzle.*

have a view of – be able to see something: έχω θέα (προς). *We had a beautiful view of the sunset from our hotel window.*

UNIT 8 Work and Employment

TEST YOURSELF

APPLYING FOR A JOB

advertisement (n) an announcement about a job, a product or an event: διαφήμιση, αγγελία. *He placed an advertisement in the newspaper because he is looking for a secretary.*

applicant (n) a person making an official request for a job, entrance to a school or university: αιτών, υποψήφιος. *Applicants for the job must be over 21.*

apply (v) request something officially: κάνω αίτηση. *I am applying for a place at London University.*

appointment (n) a meeting at an agreed time and place: ραντεβού. *Judy has an appointment with the personnel manager of the company.*

career (n) an occupation: καριέρα. *He chose a career in law.*

contract (n) a formal written agreement: συμβόλαιο. *We will start working when the contract is signed.*

CV (n) a document describing your education and work experience: βιογραφικό σημείωμα. *I sent in my CV to the personnel officer. (AmE: résumé)*

efficient (adj) able to work well without wasting time or energy: αποδοτικός, αποτελεσματικός. *Betty is very efficient; she always meets her deadlines.*

employ (v) give someone work: προσλαμβάνω, απασχολώ. *This company employs over 200 workers.*

experience (n) 1. knowledge and skill gained from practice or with time: πείρα. *The new clerk has no previous experience. This is her first job.* 2. something that happens to you: εμπειρία. *She wrote a book about her experiences in China.*

firm (n) a business or company: εταιρεία. *Sarah works for a small electronics firm in town.*

full-time (adj / adv) work or study that takes all of your regular working hours: πλήρους απασχόλησης. *A full-time job leaves you with little free time.*

interview (n) a formal meeting for a job or course of study at which you are asked questions: συνέντευξη. *Jack had an interview for the position of assistant manager at that shop.*

interview (v) ask someone questions: παίρνω συνέντευξη. *We have interviewed several people for the job.*

part-time (adj / adv) working only a part of the regular working week: μερικής απασχόλησης. *I got a part-time job washing dishes at a restaurant.*

permanent (adj) lasting a long time or forever: μόνιμος. *He is not looking for a permanent job; just one for the summer.*

personal assistant (n) a senior secretary employed to look after the affairs of just one person: ιδιαίτερα γραμματέας. *A personal assistant should be efficient and loyal.*

personnel officer (n) a person who deals with employees and their problems: υπεύθυνος προσωπικού. *The workers complained to the personnel officer.*

promotion (n) a rise to a higher position or rank: προαγωγή. *There are no prospects of promotion in this job.*

qualification (n) an ability or quality that makes a person suitable for a job: προσόν. *One of the qualifications required for this job is the knowledge of at least two languages.*

reference (n) information, usually a letter, about somebody's character or abilities from a former employer: σύσταση, συστατική επιστολή. *Her references are very good; she should find a job easily.*

salary (n) the amount of money you earn each month or year: μισθός. *Her salary is £100,000 a year.*

skills (n) abilities gained through training and experience: δεξιότητες. *His technical skills are very good, but he doesn't get along well with his boss.*

temporary (adj) lasting for a limited time: προσωρινός. *Ann had a temporary job during the summer before she found a permanent one.*

train (v) learn how to do a particular job or teach someone to do it: εκπαιδεύω, -ομαι. *She trained as a graphic artist.*

EMPLOYMENT AND BUSINESS

benefit (n) money you get from your employer or the government in addition to your salary: επίδομα. *A woman who has given birth to a baby is entitled to maternity benefit.*

branch (n) a part or division of an organisation: υποκατάστημα, παράρτημα. *The company has branches all over the country.*

chairperson (n) the person in charge of a meeting, committee or organisation: πρόεδρος συμβουλίου. *The chairperson of ABC Industries announced that business was good.*

colleague (n) a person one works with: συνάδελφος. *John is a colleague of mine at the hospital.*

company (n) an organisation that makes or sells goods for money or provides a service: εταιρεία. *Ed works for a high-tech company.*

director (n) a member of a group of top managers running a company: διευθυντής. *The company directors will decide today on a very important matter.*

employee (n) a person who works for someone: εργαζόμενος, υπάλληλος. *All employees will receive a bonus at the end of the year.*

management (n) the people in charge of a business: διοίκηση, διεύθυνση. *Management is meeting with staff to discuss the budget.*

overtime (n) time spent working beyond the usual working time: υπερωρία. *He's been working overtime all this week and is exhausted.*

pension (n) money paid regularly by a government or private company to someone who is too old or ill to work: σύνταξη. *He is no longer working. He lives on his pension.*

profit (n) money you gain by doing business: κέρδος. *We sold our house at a huge profit.*

reputation (n) an opinion held about someone by other people: φήμη. *He has a reputation for being a tough negotiator.*

supervisor (n) someone who makes sure that the work is done correctly: επίτητής. *The supervisor checks all the products before they leave the factory.*

union (n) an organisation formed by workers to protect their rights: ένωση, σωματείο. *The union threatened to strike unless the workers received a pay rise.*

workplace (n) where one works: χώρος εργασίας. *Many workplaces have their own dining room.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

OCCUPATIONS

nurse (n) a professional person who cares for people who are ill or injured: νοσοκόμος (-α). *Teri is a nurse in the hospital.*

estate agent (n) a person who assists with the buying and selling of property: μεσίτης, κτηματομεσίτης. *The estate agent helped us sell our house. (AmE: realtor)*

surgeon (n) a doctor who performs operations: χειρουργός. *Her father is a well-known heart surgeon.*

doctor (n) a person trained in medicine who treats people who are ill: γιατρός. *She asked the doctor what to do about her back pains.*

(hospital) consultant (n) a senior hospital doctor who is an expert in a particular area of medicine: ειδικός νοσοκομειακός γιατρός. *The orthopaedic consultant discussed the possibility of trying a new procedure with the patient. (AmE: specialist)*

PE instructor (n) a physical education teacher: καθηγητής σωματικής αγωγής. *Our PE instructor made us run 10 km in the rain.*

headmaster (n) a person in charge of a school: διευθυντής (σχολείου). *The headmaster spoke to our class about our behaviour at the football match. (AmE: principal)*

secretary (n) someone who does office work: γραμματέας. *My secretary has excellent office skills.*

greengrocer (n) someone who owns or works in a fruit and vegetable shop: μανάβης. *Our greengrocer sells great fruit and vegetables.*

caretaker (n) a person who looks after a building such as a school, an office building or a block of flats: επιστάτης, θυρωρός. *The caretaker fixed the broken window in our classroom. (AmE: janitor, custodian)*

receptionist (n) someone who works in an office answering the phone and greeting people when they arrive: υπάλληλος υποδοχής, ρεσεψιονίστ. *The receptionist gave me an appointment with the doctor for the following day.*

farmer (n) someone who grows crops or raises animals: αγρότης. *A farmer rises before sunrise to begin his day.*

chambermaid (n) a woman who cleans the bedrooms in a hotel: καμαριέρα. *The chambermaid will bring you clean towels in a few minutes.*

porter (n) a person who helps you with your luggage in a station, airport or hotel: αχθοφόρος. *The porter brought our suitcases to our room.*

cook (n) someone who prepares food for eating: μάγειρας. *She is a cook in an Italian restaurant.*

cashier (n) a person who receives and gives money in a shop, bank, etc: ταμίας. *The customer took his bill to the cashier and paid it.*

manager (n) a person responsible for running part of or the whole business: διευθυντής, μάντζερ. *She is the manager of the sales department.*

assistant (n) a person who helps someone in their work: βοηθός, υπάλληλος. *She works as an assistant to the director of a high-tech company.*

lawyer (n) a person who gives people legal advice: δικηγόρος. *The lawyer prepared the contract.*

delivery boy (n) a person who brings goods to someone's house: διανομέας. *The delivery boy uses a motorbike to deliver pizzas.*

inspector (n) an officer in the police department: (αστυνομικός) επιθεωρητής. *The inspector is investigating the kidnapping.*

teller (n) someone who handles money at the bank: ταμίας τράπεζας. *The teller was very careful when counting the money.*

detective (n) a police officer who investigates crimes: ιδιωτικός αστυνομικός, ντετέκτιβ. *The detective found the missing child.*

constable (n) a police officer of the lowest rank: αστυφύλακας. *The constable gave the tourists directions to Hyde Park.*

police officer (n) a member of the police force: αστυνομικός. *The police officer arrested the thief.*

flight attendant (n) a person who takes care of passengers on a plane: αεροσυνοδός. *The flight attendant brought me a cup of hot tea.*

pilot (n) a person who operates an aeroplane: πιλότος. *The pilot landed the plane safely.*

customs officer (n) a person who collects the tax on goods that have been brought into the country: τελωνειακός υπάλληλος. *The customs officer opened her suitcase and found several diamond rings hidden in her shoes.*

security guard (n) a person who protects a building: φρουρός ασφαλείας. *The security guard checked our bags before we entered the building.*

plumber (n) someone who connects or repairs water pipes: υδραυλικός. *The plumber repaired the leaking pipes.*

SYNONYMS

sack (v) remove someone from a job: απολύω. *Jim was sacked for falling asleep on the job.*

rise (n) an increase in salary: αύξηση. *All the workers got a rise at the end of the year. (AmE: raise)*

out of work without a job: άνεργος. *She has been out of work for two months.*

export (v) send goods overseas: εξάγω. *The American company exports clothing to Europe.*

position (n) a job: θέση. *I am interested in applying for the position of salesman.*

fire (v) tell someone to leave his / her job: απολύω. *The woman was fired for stealing from the company.*

human resources (n) the department in a company that deals with its staff: ανθρώπινο δυναμικό. *Send your job application to the director of human resources.*

import (v) bring goods into a country from overseas: εισάγω. *Bananas are not grown in Britain. They are imported.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

job (n): επάγγελμα. *She has an interesting job which she enjoys.*

work (n): δουλειά. *I looked for work in town.*

employment (n): απασχόληση, εργασία. *The number of people seeking employment is on the increase.*

retire (v): συνταξιοδοτούμαι. *My grandfather retired last year.*

resign (v): παραιτούμαι. *The minister resigned after the scandal.*

dismissal (n): απόλυση. *A man who received an unfair dismissal sued his firm and won the case.*

notice (n): προειδοποίηση. *Your employers must give you at least one month's notice before they can dismiss you.*

resignation (n): παραίτηση. *When his secretary handed in her resignation, the boss was upset.*

win (v): κερδίζω. *Our team won the game.*

earn (v): κερδίζω (χρήματα). *You can't earn much money in this job.*

gain (v): κερδίζω, αποκτώ. *He gained a lot of experience in his last job.*

profession (n): επάγγελμα. *She is a musician by profession; she plays the piano in an orchestra.*

employer (n): εργοδότης. *He is a very kind employer; he treats his staff well.*

experiment (n): πείραμα. *The experiment shows that the medicine can help people who are in pain.*

PHRASAL VERBS

set about – begin to do something in an energetic way: αρχίζω (να κάνω κάτι). *The very next day I set about finding a new job.*

set back – 1. cost someone a large amount of money: κοστίζω, στοιχίζω. *She couldn't resist buying the bag, but it set her back quite a few pounds.* 2. delay the advance or development of something: καθυστερώ. *Construction of the Metro has been set back a year.*

set (someone) apart – show to be clearly different: κάνω (κάποιον) να ξεχωρίζει. *His ambition sets him apart from the rest of the employees.*

set up – 1. start a business / organisation: ιδρύω (επιχείρηση, οργανισμό). *Her ambition is to set up her own company.* 2. make something ready: τοποθετώ, στήνω. *Once they had set up all their equipment, they were ready to begin.*

set aside – save for a special purpose: εξοικονομώ (χρόνο ή χρήμα). *No matter how busy she is, she always sets aside time to spend with her children.*

set off – cause to start happening: ενεργοποιώ, κάνω κάτι να ξεκινήσει. *The bomb was set off by remote control.*

set out – state in a clear, organised way: παραθέτω, λέω ξεκάθαρα. *The contract sets out the terms of the agreement.*

put across – explain your ideas: εξηγώ. *John put across his arguments clearly.*

put away – put something where it is usually kept: βάζω κάτι στη θέση του. *He put away the books when he was finished.*

put off – arrange to do something at a later time: αναβάλλω. *The meeting was put off till next week.*

put out – to stop a fire from burning: σβήνω (φωτιά). *Put out your cigarette. Smoking is not allowed in here.*

put through – connect you to someone on the telephone: συνδέω (στο τηλέφωνο). *I asked the receptionist to put me through to the manager immediately.*

put up with – accept an unpleasant situation or person without complaining: ανέχομαι. *I don't know how you put up with Arthur. He's always late.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

run the company – manage, take charge of a business: διευθύνω εταιρεία. *He runs the company very efficiently.*

be made redundant – lose your job: απολύομαι (λόγω περιορισμού θέσεων εργασίας). *Twenty workers were made redundant because the company is in financial difficulty.*

go on strike – refuse to work because of a disagreement over pay or working conditions: απεργώ. *The factory workers have gone on strike because they are unhappy about their wages.*

responsible for – have an obligation or duty: υπεύθυνος για. *Jim is responsible for checking all the orders.*

do for a living – work: εργάζομαι. *What he does for a living has nothing to do with what he studied at university.*

make a living – earn money: κερδίζω τα προς το ζην. *She makes a good living as a tour guide.*

do business with – buy from or sell to someone goods or services: έχω εμπορική συναλλαγή με. *They are very good customers; doing business with them is always a pleasure.*

make a profit – make money in business: βγάζω κέρδος. *If you sell an item at a price higher than it has cost you, you make a profit.*

in charge of – responsible for: υπεύθυνος για. *The customer wanted to know who was in charge of this department.*

day off – a day when you don't have to work: άδεια, ρεπό. *George isn't in the office today; he has the day off.*

capable of – able to do something: ικανός για. *I think Will is capable of becoming the manager.*

good at – clever or skilful: καλός σε. *Jean is very good at maths.*

look for work – try to find a job: ψάχνω για δουλειά. *I have been looking for work for the past month.*

make (a) decision – choose something after thinking about it carefully: παίρνω (μια) απόφαση. *I made the decision to go back to school and get my degree.*

UNIT 10 Education

TEST YOURSELF

EDUCATION

absent (adj) not at a place: απών. *The child was absent from school because he was ill.*

attend (v) be present at; go to: παρακολουθώ. *I am not attending the lecture tonight.*

boarding school (n) a school where pupils live as well as study: σχολείο με οικοτροφείο. *He was sent to a boarding school and went home only during the holidays.*

certificate (n) an official paper stating that one has successfully completed a course of study or training: βεβαίωση, πιστοποιητικό. *At the end of the three-month computer course, she was given a certificate.*

cheat (v) behave in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage: εξαπατώ, αντιγράφω (σε διαγώνισμα). *Students who cheat in the exams will be punished.*

course (n) a series of lessons in a particular subject: σειρά μαθημάτων. *Sam is taking a course in computer programming.*

discipline (n) method of training to produce obedience and self-control: πειθαρχία. *Young men and women are taught discipline in the army.*

evening class (n) a lesson held in the evening: απογευματινό μάθημα. *He attends evening classes in order to learn English.*

expel (v) send away permanently from school for behaving in an unacceptable way: αποβάλλω (μαθητή). *He was caught photocopying test papers and was expelled.*

fee (n) a sum of money paid for tuition or professional services: διδάκτρα. *The fees for the two-week intermediate course in English are £1,000.*

nursery (n) a place where young children are taken care of while their parents are at work: παιδικός σταθμός. *My little brother loves playing with the other children at the nursery.*

present (adj) being at a place: παρών. *All the students were present for the exam.*

primary school (n) a school for children between 5 and 11 years old: δημοτικό σχολείο. *Her son will begin primary school next fall. (AmE: elementary school)*

punishment (n) treatment given to someone who has done something wrong: τιμωρία. *What punishment did you get for coming late to class?*

qualification (n) a degree or diploma showing successful completion of studies: προσόν. *His qualifications are excellent, but he has no work experience.*

scholarship (n) a sum of money given to a student to help pay for a course of study: υποτροφία. *She won a scholarship to university.*

secondary school (n) a school for children between the ages of 11 and 18 years old: γυμνάσιο. *In Britain, students attend secondary school from the age of 11, but in the US, they attend from the age of 14. (AmE: high school)*

special education (n) schools or classes for people who have special needs because of physical or mental handicaps: ειδική σχολική αγωγή. *Debbie teaches special education; she works with blind children.*

state school (n) a school which receives money from the government to provide free education: δημόσιο σχολείο. *I went to a state school, and from there I won a scholarship to Cambridge. (AmE: public school)*

strict (adj) must be obeyed completely: αυστηρός. *We had better not be late for football practice because our coach is very strict.*

LEARNING AND TESTING

assess (v) consider and make a judgement about a person or situation: αξιολογώ. *Your score in this test will help us to assess your level of English.*

compulsory (adj) obligatory; something which must be done: υποχρεωτικός. *Class attendance is compulsory.*

degree (n) a qualification or certificate given by a university or college to a student who has completed a course of study successfully: πτυχίο, δίπλωμα. *She has a degree in psychology.*

gifted (adj) talented: χαρισματικός, ταλαντούχος. *She is a gifted pianist. She plays extremely well.*

graduate (n) someone who has a university degree: απόφοιτος. *He is an Oxford graduate.*

graduate (v) obtain a degree at a university: αποφοιτώ. *He graduated from Oxford in 1998.*

illiterate (adj) unable to read or write: αναλφάβητος. *The number of illiterate people in this country has decreased.*

learning disability (n) a condition that limits your ability to read or write: μαθησιακή δυσκολία. *He has difficulty reading because he has a learning disability.*

lecturer (n) a person who holds the lowest teaching rank at a British or American university: λέκτορας. *He has just been appointed lecturer at Harvard University.*

literacy (n) the ability to read and write: στοιχειώδης εκπαίδευση. *The government's aim is to achieve 100% literacy for all citizens.*

memorise (v) learn by heart: απομνημονεύω. *I had to memorise a poem for homework.*

optional (adj) available or possible to have: προαιρετικός. *The computer course is optional, but it will be very useful.*

report (n) a written statement by teachers about a child's work at school: έλεγχος (προόδου). *He didn't show his report to his parents because his marks were bad. (AmE: report card)*

revise (v) review lessons or a subject already learnt, usually before an examination: κάνω επανάληψη. *They have been revising history all day because the exam is tomorrow. (AmE: review)*

school days (n) the time in your life when you go to school: σχολικά χρόνια. *My dad has very happy memories of his schooldays in Canada.*

staff (n) people who work for a company / institution / organisation: προσωπικό. *The teaching staff at our school are all well qualified.*

syllabus (n) a list of subjects in a course of study: ύλη, μαθήματα σχολικού προγράμματος. *Latin is not on this year's syllabus.*

term (n) any period of time into which the teaching year is divided: ακαδημαϊκή / σχολική περίοδος. *The school year in England is divided into three terms.*

tutor (n) 1. a teacher who gives private instruction to one or two pupils: καθηγητής (σε ιδιαίτερο μάθημα). *I am looking for a maths tutor. Can you recommend someone?* 2. in British universities and colleges, a teacher who directs / advises a small number of students: επιμελητής, επίτοπος σπουδών (σε πανεπιστήμιο ή κολλέγιο). *David meets with his tutor to discuss his studies.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

learn (v): μαθαίνω. *Most children learn to read in first grade.*

teach (v): διδάσκω. *The teacher taught them to read.*

explain (v): εξηγώ. *The teacher explained to the students how to do the maths problem.*

know (v): γνωρίζω. *Do you know how to program a computer?*

speak (v): μιλάω. *The pupil was afraid to speak in class.*

study (v): μελετώ, σπουδάζω. *The girls were up late studying for their exam.*

give an exam: βάζω διαγώνισμα σε μαθητές. *Our maths teacher gave us an exam yesterday.*

sit an exam: δίνω εξετάσεις. *We are sitting the First Certificate exam in May.*

mark (n): βαθμός. *The highest mark in the test was 15 out of 20.*

point (n): πόντος, βαθμός. *This exam question is worth 5 points.*

rise (v): ανεβαίνω, υψώνομαι. *As she was describing her experience, her voice rose with excitement.*

raise (n): (AmE) increase in salary: αύξηση αποδοχών. *Workers got a raise at the end of the year. (BrE: rise)*

raise (v): ανεβάζω, σηκώνω. *If you want to say something in class, raise your hand.*

lift (v): σηκώνω. *The package was too heavy to lift.*

be right: έχω δίκιο. *You were right about Jack! He was lying to me.*

do right: κάνω το σωστό. *She did right to return the wallet to the person who had lost it.*

have a right: έχω το δικαίωμα. *I have a right to express my opinion.*

pass (v): περνάω, επιτυγχάνω (σε εξετάσεις). *I passed the test with a high mark.*

fail (v): αποτυγχάνω. *The boy failed the exam and has to take lessons from a private tutor.*

professor (n): καθηγητής πανεπιστημίου. *The university professor is well liked by his students.*

trainer (n): προπονητής. *His personal trainer helps him exercise regularly and properly.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

do homework – complete the work assigned by the teacher to be done at home: κάνω τις εργασίες μου. *I hate doing homework – I prefer watching TV.*

make mistakes – make errors: κάνω λάθη. *Don't be afraid of making mistakes. Try and learn from them.*

pay attention – listen carefully and concentrate: ακούω προσεκτικά. *Please pay attention to what I have to say.*

do exercises – complete particular tasks: κάνω ασκήσεις. *The teacher told us to do all the exercises in unit 1.*

make progress – advance, improve: κάνω πρόοδο. *He has been working hard and has really made progress in his work.*

do (my) best – try with all your ability: βάζω τα δυνατά (μου). *He didn't win but he did his best.*

make an effort – make a serious attempt: κάνω προσπάθεια. *I know this is difficult for you, but please make an effort to do it.*

take notes – write down what you hear: κρατώ σημειώσεις. *I won't be at the lesson today; please take some notes for me.*

PHRASAL VERBS

look back on – remember: θυμάμαι, αναπολώ. *Whenever I look back on the holiday we took to Venice, I smile.*

look down on – consider as lower / less important than you: περιφρονώ. *It is wrong to look down on people who are not well educated.*

look out – be careful, take care: προσέχω. *Look out! There's a red light!*

look up – try to find some information: αναζητώ πληροφορίες (σε βιβλίο, κατάλογο κ.λπ.). *I looked up her phone number in the telephone directory.*

look after – take care of: φροντίζω, προσέχω. *In the evenings, she looks after her sister's baby.*

look for – search for: ψάχνω. *I am looking for my dog. Have you seen him by any chance?*

look forward to – anticipate with great pleasure or excitement: περιμένω με ανυπομονησία. *We all look forward to the Christmas holidays.*

look up to – respect: σέβομαι, θαυμάζω. *A younger child often looks up to his big brother or sister.*

UNIT 12 Sports and Other Free-time Activities

TEST YOURSELF

SPORTS

achievement (n) something successfully finished or gained: κατόρθωμα, επίτευγμα. *It is a great achievement to break a world record.*

amateur (n) a non-professional; a person who does something for pleasure, not for money: ερασιτέχνης. *In the past, footballers were amateurs who played because they loved sport, not because they were being paid to do so.*

athletics (n) track and field sports such as running, jumping, etc.: αγωνίσματα στίβου. *She is a good runner; in fact, she is good at all kinds of athletics.*

beat (v) defeat; do better than: νικώ (αντίπαλο). *Whenever I play tennis with him, he beats me!*

champion (n) a person that has won a competition: πρωταθλητής. *Her ambition is to become the world champion.*

coach (n) a person who trains athletes for games and competitions: προπονητής. *Our basketball team has a new coach.*

contestant (n) someone competing in a contest: διαγωνιζόμενος. *Have you ever been a contestant in a TV game show?*

court (n) an area specially prepared and marked for a ball game such as tennis, basketball, volleyball or squash: γήπεδο (τένις, μπάσκετ κτλ.). *Let's meet at the tennis court at 9.00.*

draw (n) a result with neither side winning: ισοπαλία. *The game ended in a 1-1 draw. (AmE: tie)*

event (n) a planned and organised occasion such as a sports competition: (αθλητικό) γεγονός. *This is one of the main sporting events of the year.*

gymnastics (n) special exercises that develop strength and balance: γυμναστική. *In order to excel in gymnastics, you have to practise hours every day.*

lose (v) not win: χάνω. *Our team lost by 20 points.*

match (n) a game or sports event where teams or people compete: αγώνας, παιχνίδι. *Are you going to watch today's football match on TV?*

medal (n) a round, flat piece of metal which is given to a person in honour (memory) of something important: μετάλλιο. *Our Olympic team won several gold, silver and bronze medals.*

participate (v) take part in: συμμετέχω. *Our team participated in the competition.*

professional (n) someone who makes a living at an activity: επαγγελματίας. *You are so good at tennis; you could be a professional.*

race (n) a competition in speed: αγώνας ταχύτητας. *He is participating in the 100-metre race and has a good chance of winning.*

record (n) the best someone has done in a sport: ρεκόρ. *She holds the world record for 200-metre free-style swimming.*

referee (n) an official who ensures that players follow the rules in sports matches: διαιτητής. *At the end of a football match, the defeated team blamed the referee.*

runner-up (n) the person or team that comes second in a race or competition: δεύτερος (κατά σειρά επιτυχίας). *The winner will get £10,000 and the runner-up £4,500.*

score (n) the number of points, runs or goals made in a game: αποτέλεσμα, βαθμολογία. *Ten seconds before the end of the basketball game, the score was 62-62.*

score (v) win points for your team in a sport: σκοράρω, βάζω γκολ / καλάθι. *The team scored two points at the last minute and won the match.*

supporter (n) a fan: οπαδός. *The supporters of the winning team cheered and applauded.*

team (n) a group of people who play together: ομάδα. *Harry is on the school football team.*

tournament (n) a series of games in which the winner of each game plays in the next game until there is one player or team left: αθλητικοί αγώνες, τουρνουά. *She won the Wimbledon tennis tournament last year.*

track (n) a piece of ground on which athletes, cyclists, cars or horses race: στίβος, πίστα. *The 100-metre race was held at the track in the park.*

trainer (n) a person who prepares athletes for competition: προπονητής, εκπαιδευτής. *His personal trainer helps him exercise regularly and properly.*

trophy (n) a prize given for winning a race or a competition: τρόπαιο, κύπελλο. *The famous tennis champion keeps her trophies in a glass cabinet.*

umpire (n) an official who ensures that players follow the rules in sporting events: διαιτητής (τένις, μπέιζμπολ κτλ.). *The baseball player disagreed with the umpire's decisions.*

victory (n) winning a game or a war: νίκη. *We are having a party to celebrate our school team's victory in the championship.*

win (v) be best or first in something: νικώ, κερδίζω. *Our team won the game.*

HOBBIES AND PASTIMES

arts and crafts (n) arts that involve making things by hand: χειροτεχνία. *She teaches arts and crafts at the community centre.*

board game (n) any game played on a specially made board of wood or other material: επιτραπέζιο παιχνίδι. *Most board games are for two to four players.*

carpentry (n) the art of making and repairing wooden objects: ξυλουργική. *He took up carpentry as a hobby and has made some beautiful things.*

chess (n) a board game involving two people who move black and white pieces strategically in order to win: σκάκι. *Julie likes to play chess with her grandfather.*

choir (n) a group of people who sing together: χορωδία. *Both of my sisters sing in the school choir.*

collect (v) to gather and keep things of one type as a hobby: συλλέγω, συγκεντρώνω. *She enjoys collecting stamps as a hobby.*

DIY (do-it-yourself) (n) doing repairs or jobs by yourself which are often done by a workman: φτιάξ' το μόνος σου. *He loves DIY; he never pays to have anything done that he can do himself.*

folk dancing (n) the dancing of traditional local dances, usually by a set of dancers: παραδοσιακοί χοροί. *I enjoy watching folk dancing, especially when the dancers are dressed in local costumes.*

hiking (n) taking long walks in the country, especially over rough ground, for pleasure: πεζοπορία. *Hiking in the countryside this weekend was fun.*

knitting (n) making things to wear out of wool with the help of two long needles: πλέξιμο. *My grandmother loves knitting; she made me a lovely pullover for my birthday.*

martial art (n) sport concerned with self-defence techniques developed in the Far East: πολεμική τέχνη. *Judo and karate are martial arts.*

pottery (n) the art of making pots and other objects out of baked clay; ceramics: αγγειοπλαστική, κεραμική. *She has just taken up pottery and has already made some beautiful dishes.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

PHRASAL VERBS

go back on (my promise / word) – break a promise: αθετώ την υπόσχεσή (μου) / το λόγο (μου). *It is not like him to go back on his word; if he has promised to help you, he will.*

go off – explode; make a loud noise: εκρήγνυμαι, σκάω. *When the fireworks went off, the baby woke up.*

go over – repeat; explain again: επαναλαμβάνω, εξηγώ πάλι. *Let's go over the details again.*

go on with – continue without stopping or without change: συνεχίζω (να κάνω κάτι). *Don't mind me – go on with what you were doing.*

go by – pass: περνά (για χρόνο). *When you are happy, you feel that time goes by very quickly, don't you?*

go out – (of fire) stop burning; (of light) stop shining: σβήνω (για φως, φωτιά). *The lights often go out during a storm.*

go through with – complete something which has been agreed on or planned, often with difficulty: ολοκληρώνω, φτάνω μέχρι τέλους (συχνά με δυσκολία). *I don't advise you to go through with your plans.*

go with – look good together with something else: ταιριάζω / πηγαίνω με (για αντικείμενα). *The colour of your scarf goes with your eyes.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

keep fit – stay healthy: διατηρούμαι σε φόρμα. *She goes to exercise classes twice a week in order to keep fit.*

go (swimming) – go somewhere in order to (swim): πηγαίνω για κολύμπι. *We love to go swimming in the lake in the summer.*

take part in – do an activity with other people: παίρνω μέρος σε. *Everyone in our class is taking part in the school play.*

(be) fond of – like; be very interested in: μου αρέσει κάτι, ενδιαφέρομαι για. *She's very fond of country music.*

(be) keen on – love; be extremely interested in; be enthusiastic about: αγαπώ, μου αρέσει κάτι πολύ. *Brad is very keen on computers.*

hold the record – have the best time or score that has been achieved in a particular sport or activity: κατέχω το ρεκόρ. *He has held the record for the long jump for three years.*

(be) interested in – wanting to know or hear more about something or somebody: ενδιαφέρομαι για. *She is interested in studying genetics.*

take up – become interested in a particular activity or subject and begin doing it: αρχίζω (χόμπι). *He said he is going to take up swimming.*

indoor sport – a sport which is played inside a building: άθλημα κλειστού χώρου. *She likes indoor sports such as Ping-Pong.*

(be) disqualified from – no longer be allowed to take part in the game: αποκλείομαι από (αγώνα). *He was disqualified from the race after two bad starts.*

break the record – achieve something better than was achieved before: κάνω ρεκόρ. *He broke the world record for breaststroke – he's the fastest swimmer in the world!*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

cancel (v): ακυρώνω. *She cancelled our lunch date because she was ill.*

postpone (v): αναβάλλω. *She postponed her appointment till next week.*

call off (phr v): ακυρώνω, ματαιώνω. *The lecture has been called off because the professor is ill.*

pleasure (n): ευχαρίστηση. *It's a pleasure to finally meet you.*

pastime (n): ευχάριστη ενασχόληση. *Reading books is my favourite pastime.*

leisure (n): ελεύθερος χρόνος. *His new job leaves him little time for leisure.*

break up (phr v): χωρίζω, διαλύω (σχέση). *Maggie and Tom have broken up. They don't even speak to each other.*

give up (phr v): σταματώ, κόβω (συνήθεια). *He's given up smoking at last!*

do (ballet): κάνω μπαλέτο. *Sue has been doing ballet for years.*

go (jogging): πηγαίνω για τρέξιμο. *We go jogging early in the morning.*

practise (v): εξασκοῦμαι. *He practises the piano for at least an hour every day.*

test (v): εξετάζω, δοκιμάζω. *The players are all tested for drugs before a game.*

control (v): ελέγχω. *The police tried to control the football supporters who were behaving badly.*

examine (v): εξετάζω. *The doctor examined my eyes and said that I need new glasses.*

viewer (n): τηλεθεατής. *Saturday night football games on TV are popular with viewers.*

audience (n): κοινό, θεατές. *The audience applauded enthusiastically.*

spectator (n): θεατής. *Half an hour before the Cup Final started, the stadium was filled with spectators.*

wound (v): τραυματίζω, πληγώνω (με όπλο). *Several soldiers were wounded in the attack.*

injure (v): τραυματίζω. *Fortunately, nobody was injured in the crash.*

damage (v): προκαλώ ζημιά, χαλάω. *He had an accident but his car wasn't damaged.*

play (n): παιχνίδι, τρόπος παιξίματος. *Rain stopped play at Wimbledon for two hours.*

game (n): παιχνίδι. *Let's play a game of Monopoly this evening.*

strength (n): (σωματική) δύναμη. *I don't have enough strength to lift that heavy box.*

power (n): δύναμη, ισχύς. *You need to have a great deal of power in your arms if you want to lift weights.*

effort (n): προσπάθεια, κόπος. *She put a lot of effort into writing her report.*

UNIT 14 Entertainment and the Arts

TEST YOURSELF

ENTERTAINMENT AND THE ARTS

announce (v) make an official statement: ανακοινώνω. *The teacher announced the names of the prize winners.*

applaud (v) show that you enjoy a performance by clapping your hands: χειροκροτώ. *At the end of the concert, everybody applauded.*

audience (n) people watching a performance: κοινό, θεατές. *The audience applauded enthusiastically.*

box office (n) a place in a theatre where the tickets are sold: ταμείο (θεάτρου, κινηματογράφου). *There was a long line of people outside the box office waiting to buy tickets.*

cast (n) the actors in a play or film: ομάδα ηθοποιών, θίασος. *The cast includes some famous actors.*

clap (v) bring one's open hands together with a quick movement and make a loud sound, especially to show approval of a performance: χειροκροτώ. *When her child appeared on the stage, her mother began clapping her hands in delight.*

costume (n) clothes worn by an actor in a film / play: ενδυμασία, στολή. *The costumes in the play are very impressive.*

exhibition (n) a display: έκθεση. *There is a wonderful art exhibition at the museum.*

fiction (n) stories about imaginary people and events: πεζογραφία, μυθιστορήματα. *I'm fond of fiction, particularly books written by Charles Dickens.*

hit (n) a musical or theatrical performance which is successful: επιτυχία (καλλιτεχνική). *All the songs he sings become hits overnight.*

interval (n) a period of time / break between the parts of a play or concert: διάλειμμα (σε θέατρο, συναυλία). *They had a drink during the interval. (AmE: intermission)*

masterpiece (n) a great work of art: αριστούργημα. *The Mona Lisa is a masterpiece.*

novel (n) a long fictional story: μυθιστόρημα. *I took a novel with me to read during the long journey.*

performance (n) the act of performing in a show: παράσταση. *Oliver's performance as Othello was outstanding.*

publish (v) have one's work printed and put on sale: εκδίδω. *Her last book was published by VEGA Press.*

rehearsal (n) a practice performance to prepare for a public performance of a play or other entertainment: πρόβα. *We usually have 20-30 rehearsals before the opening night.*

rehearse (v) practise for performance: κάνω πρόβα. *She rehearsed her lines till she knew them perfectly.*

review (n) a critical evaluation of a film, play, book, etc.: κριτική (ταινίας, βιβλίου κ.λπ.). *After the first performance, we waited anxiously for the reviews.*

review (v) give a critical evaluation of a film, play, book, etc.: γράφω κριτική (ταινίας, βιβλίου κ.λπ.). *He is a literary critic and reviews novels.*

role (n) a part in a performance: ρόλος. *His role as King Lear was challenging.*

screen (n) the surface on a computer, TV or in a cinema on which pictures or words are shown: οθόνη. *I sit close to the screen when I go to the cinema.*

script (n) the text of a film or play: σενάριο. *The producer gave each of the actors the script and asked them to learn their lines by the next day.*

special effects (n) unusual pictures or sounds that are created using special techniques: ειδικά εφέ. *Science-fiction films always have great special effects.*

spectacle (n) a remarkable sight; a large public show: θέαμα. *The New Year's Eve spectacle in downtown Athens was attended by thousands of people.*

stage (n) an area or platform on which performances are presented: σκηνή. *When the young actor got on stage, he forgot his lines.*

ticket (n) a piece of paper that shows you have paid to go into a place or to travel: εισιτήριο. *We bought tickets for the new play which opens tonight.*

PEOPLE IN ENTERTAINMENT AND THE ARTS

actress (n) a woman who acts in film and theatre: ηθοποιός (γυναίκα). *The actress in the film played her role perfectly.*

artist (n) a person who practises one of the fine arts, such as painting or sculpture: καλλιτέχνης. *We enjoyed the artist's exhibition of his work.*

author (n) a writer: συγγραφέας. *Who is the author of this short story?*

comedian (n) a professional entertainer who makes people laugh: κωμικός (ηθοποιός). *The comedian told some of the funniest jokes I've ever heard.*

composer (n) a person who creates and writes musical works: συνθέτης. *Theodorakis is a well-known Greek composer.*

conductor (n) the leader of an orchestra: μαέστρος, διευθυντής ορχήστρας. *The attention of the orchestra was focused on the conductor.*

critic (n) someone who analyses or judges another's work: κριτικός. *The critic wrote some very unkind things about the film.*

director (n) a person who directs a play or film by instructing all the participants: σκηνοθέτης. *Steven Spielberg is a great director.*

musician (n) a person who performs music, especially as an occupation: μουσικός. *He is a very gifted musician; he plays many instruments.*

painter (n) a person who paints pictures: ζωγράφος. *Picasso is a well-known painter.*

performer (n) a person who acts in film, theatre or the circus: ηθοποιός, μουσικός. *The performer juggled five balls.*

playwright (n) a writer of plays: θεατρικός συγγραφέας. *Shakespeare is one of England's best-known playwrights.*

poet (n) a writer of poems: ποιητής. *Shakespeare was a poet as well as a playwright.*

producer (n) a person who has general control, especially over the money of a production, but who does not direct the actors: παραγωγός. *Her dream is to become a film producer.*

sculptor (n) an artist who creates works of sculpture out of a variety of materials, such as stone, wood, etc.: γλύπτης. *Praxitelis was the sculptor who created the famous Aphrodite.*

singer (n) a person who sings (usually professionally): τραγουδιστής. *She has a lovely voice – she really should be a singer.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

show (v): δείχνω, προβάλλω. *Which film is showing this weekend at the cinema?*

play (v): παίζω. *He has always dreamed of playing the part of Romeo.*

scene (n): σκηνή (έργου). *The second scene of the play takes place in the woods.*

scenery (n): σκηνικά (παράστασης). *The scenery in the play was so realistic!*

organ (n): εκκλησιαστικό όργανο. *Someone was playing the organ in church.*

instrument (n): μουσικό όργανο. *Violins are string instruments, but trumpets are wind instruments.*

rise (v): ανεβαίνω, σηκώνομαι. *When the curtain rose, the audience cheered for the actors.*

raise (n) (AmE): αύξηση αποδοχών. *Workers got a raise at the end of the year.* (BrE: rise)

raise (v): ανεβάζω, σηκώνω. *If you want to say something in class, raise your hand.*

listen to (v): ακούω προσεχτικά. *Listen to what I am saying, please.*

hear (v): ακούω. *Please don't shout, I can hear you.*

look at (v): κοιτάζω. *He looked at the picture for a long time.*

watch (v): παρακολουθώ, κοιτάζω. *The boys are watching the football match.*

take place: λαμβάνω χώρα, συμβαίνω. *The accident took place right outside the bakery shop.*

take part: παίρνω μέρος. *Both our children are taking part in the school play.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

come out – be published: εκδίδομαι, κυκλοφορώ. *His latest book just came out.*

in the front row – in the first row of seats: στην πρώτη σειρά. *We had expensive seats right in the front row.*

make (someone) laugh – amuse (someone): κάνω (κάποιον) να γελάσει. *She is so funny – she always makes me laugh.*

put on (a production) – produce a play: ανεβάζω παράσταση (στο θέατρο). *The pupils put on a lovely production of My Fair Lady.*

what's on – what is being shown (on TV, in the theatre): τι προβάλεται. *Everybody be quiet; let's hear what's on TV tonight.*

make an impression – cause someone to think in a certain way: κάνω εντύπωση. *He made quite an impression at his interview.*

on display – exhibited; shown: σε έκθεση. *The paintings will be on display at the National Gallery for one more month.*

out of tune – not producing the correct musical notes: σε λάθος τόνο, παράφωνα. *She thinks she is a good singer, but in fact she sings out of tune.*

in (someone's) time – in the past, during the time (someone) was alive: στην εποχή (κάποιου). *In Columbus's time, people believed the earth was flat.*

sold out – all bought, not one remaining: εξαντλημένος, ξεπουλημένος. *The tickets for tonight's performance are sold out.*

put on (a costume) – get dressed in (a costume): φοράω (στολή). *When Eric put on his costume, he really looked like a king.*

appear in – take part in a play, film or show: εμφανίζομαι σε. *She is appearing in the musical Chicago.*

make (an) album – record music for a CD or cassette: βγάζω δίσκο. *My brother's band is so successful, they are already making their third album.*

come on stage – come out in front of the audience: εμφανίζομαι στη σκηνή. *At the end of the fashion show, the designer came on stage and took a bow.*

PHRASAL VERBS

let down – disappoint: απογοητεύω. *I have put my trust in you; don't let me down.*

let off – 1. decide not to punish: αφήνω (κάποιον) ατιμώρητο. *I will let you off this time, but if I catch you cheating again, you will be expelled.* 2. excuse from duty. απαλλάσσω, αποδεσμεύω. *Business was slow, so my boss let me off a half hour early.*

let in – allow to enter: επιτρέπω την είσοδο. *He can't let us in because we're not members of the club.*

let (myself) in for – put yourself in a difficult situation: μπλέκομαι σε απροσδόκητες καταστάσεις. *You are letting yourself in for trouble now that you have trusted him with your money.*

let in on – allow someone to know a secret: εκμυστηρεύομαι. *If you promise not to tell, I'll let you in on a little secret.*

let on – tell a secret: αποκαλύπτω (ένα μυστικό). *I have been trying to find out what they are planning for tonight, but she won't let on.*

let out – allow or make it possible for someone to leave: αφήνω (κάποιον) να φύγει. *Let the cat out before you leave.*

UNIT 16 Travel, Tourism and Transport

TEST YOURSELF

TRAVEL AND TOURISM

abroad (adv) overseas, in another country: στο εξωτερικό. *We are going abroad next summer.*

accommodation (n) buildings or rooms where people may live or stay: στέγη, κατάλυμα. *We hope to find inexpensive accommodation in Paris for the weekend.*

brochure (n) a small magazine that contains information about items or services you can buy: (διοφημιστικό) φυλλάδιο. *We received a brochure about summer cruises in Norway.*

campsite (n) an area where people sleep outdoors in tents: χώρος κατασκήνωσης. *The campsite is located next to a river and has all the necessary facilities for holidaymakers.*

confirm (v) say or prove something is correct or true: επιβεβαιώνω. *The travel agent will check our arrangements and confirm that everything is in order.*

cruise (n) a holiday journey by ship: κρουαζιέρα. *We are going on a Mediterranean cruise.*

cruise (v) travel by ship from place to place: κάνω κρουαζιέρα. *Our ship will cruise to different ports.*

destination (n) a place to which someone is travelling: προορισμός. *After leaving China, my destination is Thailand.*

excursion (n) a short journey, usually for pleasure: εκδρομή. *The school excursion to Athens will leave on Tuesday.*

expedition (n) a journey of discovery with a group, usually for a serious reason: αποστολή, εκστρατεία. *The scientists went on an undersea expedition.*

explore (v) look carefully at or for something: εξερευνώ. *I have always wanted to explore the beaches around Cornwall in England.*

high season (n) time of year when prices are high because many tourists are visiting a place: περίοδος μεγάλης τουριστικής κίνησης. *Hotels are more expensive during the high season.*

luggage (n) bags or cases carried when travelling: αποσκευές. *He has six bags; that's too much luggage!*

package tour (n) a holiday where everything is paid for before leaving: οργανωμένες διακοπές. *Buying a package tour means you know exactly what your expenses are because it is all paid for in advance.*

passenger (n) a traveller who is not the driver in a vehicle: επιβάτης. *The passengers got off the train in London.*

passport (n) an official document you need to show when you enter or leave a country: διαβατήριο. *You must take your passport with you when you go abroad.*

reservation (n) a room or a table which has been booked / saved for a specific person / people: κράτηση (σε ξενοδοχείο, εστιατόριο). *We have a reservation for two at the Seaside Hotel.*

resort (n) a holiday location: θέρετρο, τόπος αναψυχής. *St Moritz is a popular ski resort in the Alps.*

self-catering (adj) providing a place for people to cook their own meals: που παρέχει τον απαραίτητο εξοπλισμό για μαγειρέμα. *A self-catering holiday allows us to shop in markets for local food.*

sightseeing (n) travelling about looking at interesting things: περιήγηση (στα αξιοθέατα). *Sightseeing in Ireland by bicycle was great fun.*

souvenir (n) something by which you remember a place or person: αναμνηστικό. *My friends visited Holland and came back with many souvenirs.*

timetable (n) a list of times at which things will happen: ωρολόγιο πρόγραμμα. *Ask at the information desk for a bus timetable.*

travel agent (n) a person who arranges holidays and travel for people: ταξιδιωτικός πράκτορας. *Our travel agent has suggested a skiing holiday in December.*

trip (n) a journey to a specific place: σύντομο ταξίδι, εκδρομή. *I am going on a trip to Ireland.*

youth hostel (n) a cheap place to stay for young travellers: Ξενώνας νέων. *The students stayed at a youth hostel.*

TRANSPORT

arrival (n) the act of reaching a place: άφιξη. *Our arrival was delayed due to bad weather.*

board (v) go onto a vehicle, such as a bus, ship, plane (but not a car): επιβιβάζομαι (σε λεωφορείο, τρένο, πλοίο, αεροπλάνο). *The group will board the plane in Rome and then fly to London.*

cabin (n) the part of an aircraft where passengers sit or the room on a ship where passengers sleep: καμπίνα, χώρος επιβατών (σε πλοίο, αεροπλάνο). *The family reserved a large cabin on the ship.*

caravan (n) a holiday home on wheels, pulled by a car or other large vehicle: τροχόσπιτο. *They travelled across America in a caravan. (AmE: trailer)*

check-in (n) the desk at the airport where you go to check in: χώρος όπου δηλώνεται η άφιξη σε αεροδρόμιο, ξενοδοχείο. *I'll meet you at the check-in and we'll go through together.*

check in (v) 1. sign your name when you arrive to stay at a hotel: υπογράφω κατά την άφιξη σε ξενοδοχείο. *When we arrive at the hotel, we will check in at the reception desk.* 2. show your ticket and hand in your luggage before flying: τσεκάρω εισιτήρια, αποσκευές στο αεροδρόμιο. *It took us a long time to check in at the airport because there were so many people.*

compartment (n) a section of a train where passengers sit or sleep: βαγόνι. *Their compartment on the Orient Express was really comfortable.*

crew (n) the staff who work on a plane or ship: πλήρωμα. *The captain and the crew welcomed the passengers as they boarded the ship.*

crossing (n) a journey by boat across a river or an ocean: θαλάσσιο ταξίδι, διάπλους. *The weather was stormy so the crossing to Ireland was rough.*

cyclist (n) a person who rides a bicycle: ποδηλάτης. *There are special bicycle lanes for cyclists.*

deck (n) one of the levels on a ship: κατάστρωμα. *We had to climb many stairs to reach the upper deck.*

departure (n) the act of leaving: αναχώρηση. *Their departure was right on time.*

ferry (n) a boat made to carry people or cars a short distance: πλοίο για τη μεταφορά επιβατών και οχημάτων, φερίμπोट. *They took a ferry from Dover to Calais and were able to take their car with them.*

flight attendant (n) a person who takes care of passengers on a plane: αεροσυνοδός. *The flight attendant brought me a cup of hot tea.*

hitchhiking (n) travelling by taking a free ride in someone's vehicle: ταξίδι με μετοστό. *Hitchhiking is not safe; take the train.*

land (v) arrive on the ground from the air: προσγειώνομαι. *Everyone was relieved when the plane landed safely.*

motorist (n) a person who drives a car: οδηγός αυτοκινήτου. *The motorist took a drive in the country.*

platform (n) an area in a railway station where you wait to get on or off a train: αποβάθρα (σταθμού). *The train for Dover will depart from platform 6.*

port (n) an area of water where ships can stop: λιμάνι. *We went to the port to watch the ships being unloaded.*

sink (v) go down under the water: βυθίζομαι, βουλιάζω. *If the boat hits the rocks, it will fill with water and sink.*

take off (phr v) when an aircraft goes up into the air: απογειώνομαι. *Some people become very nervous when a plane takes off.*

terminal (n) a building where you can begin or end a journey by train, air, bus or ship: τέρμα, τελικός σταθμός (λεωφορείων, τρένων, αεροπλάνων). *They are planning to build a new terminal at Gatwick Airport.*

traffic light (n) the green, yellow and red lights that signal vehicles to stop or go: φανάρι. *There are new traffic lights at the corner of the street so it is safer to drive there now.*

traffic warden (n) a person who makes sure cars are not parked illegally: τροχονόμος. *The traffic warden stopped drivers from parking illegally.*

vehicle (n) a machine with a motor such as a car, bus, motorcycle or van which you can travel in: όχημα. *His company is developing a vehicle that will run on electricity instead of petrol.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

know (v): γνωρίζω, ξέρω. *Do you know how to program a computer?*

find out (phr v): βρίσκω, ανακαλύπτω. *We found out about the new café entirely by chance.*

meet (v): συναντώ. *She met some interesting people on her trip.*

travel (n): ταξίδι. *Train travel can be very tiring.*

journey (n): ταξίδι, διαδρομή. *The journey from Madrid to Barcelona is very pleasant.*

voyage (n): μακρινό ταξίδι (συνήθως με πλοίο). *The ship set off on its long voyage.*

drive (n): βόλτα, διαδρομή με το αυτοκίνητο. *It is a long drive in a car from Lyons to Marseilles.*

flight (n): πτήση. *The flight from Athens to Thessaloniki takes about an hour.*

delay (v): καθυστερώ. *Our flight was delayed due to the snow.*

postpone (v): αναβάλλω. *She postponed her appointment till next week.*

cancel (v): ακυρώνω. *She cancelled her dentist appointment because her toothache went away.*

hire (v): νοικιάζω, προσλαμβάνω. *We hired a car during our stay in Greece and visited many sites of historical interest. (AmE: rent)*

rent (v): νοικιάζω (κτήριο). *David has decided to rent a flat of his own.*

borrow (v): δανειζομαι. *Can I borrow your car to travel north tomorrow?*

live (v): ζω, μένω. *She lives in a cottage on our street.*

remain (v): παραμένω. *His whole family moved to Athens except for his grandmother, who remained in the village.*

stay (v): μένω (συνήθως για μικρό χρονικό διάστημα). *He stayed overnight with his relatives.*

bring (v): φέρνω. *She brought back lots of souvenirs from her holiday.*

pack (v): ετοιμάζω αποσκευές. *Don't forget to pack a bathing suit.*

carry (v): κουβαλώ, μεταφέρω. *You will hurt your back if you carry those heavy bags and boxes.*

habit (n): συνήθεια. *Smoking is a bad habit.*

custom (n): έθιμο. *In Japan, the custom is to take off your shoes before you enter a house.*

behaviour (n): συμπεριφορά. *The children were on their best behaviour on the trip.*

expect (v): περιμένω, πιστεύω. *I expect to be home by 10 o'clock.*

look forward to (phr v): περιμένω με ανυπομονησία. *We all look forward to the Christmas holidays.*

wait (v): περιμένω. *They are waiting for news from their cousins in England.*

pick up (phr v): παραλαμβάνω, παίρνω κάποιον (με το αυτοκίνητο). *My brother picked me up at the bus stop.*

drop off (phr v): αφήνω κάποιον (κάπου με το αυτοκίνητο). *My mother dropped me off at the restaurant where I was meeting my friends.*

call for (phr v): περνώ να πάρω κάποιον (για να πάμε κάπου). *My friends called for me at seven o'clock, and we left to go to the theatre.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

set off – start a journey: ξεκινώ ταξίδι. *We need to set off by 6 p.m. if we want to get to London by midnight.*

take (a long time) – need (a long while) to do something: παίρνει (πολύ χρόνο). *It took us a long time to decide which car to buy.*

go camping – take a tent to the countryside or beach and stay in it for a short time: κατασκηνώνω. *In summer, we like to go camping near the beach.*

make a reservation – ask a hotel to keep a room for you: κάνω κράτηση. *Before we left on our holiday, we made a reservation at a hotel in Monaco.*

ahead of schedule – before the intended time: πριν από την προκαθορισμένη ώρα. *I arrived in Nice ahead of schedule and had to wait for my next flight.*

double room – a hotel room for two people: δίκλινο δωμάτιο. *We would like a double room with a double bed, please.*

single room – a hotel room for one person: μονόκλινο δωμάτιο. *I will be travelling alone so I only need a single room.*

make arrangements – plan what you will do: σχεδιάζω, κανονίζω. *Let's meet tonight to make arrangements for our holiday.*

go sightseeing – visit the tourist attractions in a place: επισκέπτομαι τα αξιοθέατα. *Let's go sightseeing when we are in Greece.*

first-class – (travelling) in the most luxurious part of a train, ship or plane: πρώτη θέση. *If you have the money, flying first-class is really comfortable.*

spend time – use your time doing something: περνώ το χρόνο μου. *You should be studying for your exams instead of spending time watching TV.*

single ticket – a ticket for a journey one way: απλό εισιτήριο. *Could I have a single ticket to Athens? (AmE: one-way ticket)*

return ticket – a ticket which is for a trip to the destination and back again: εισιτήριο με επιστροφή. *The travel agent said it is better to buy a return ticket because it is cheaper. (AmE: round-trip ticket)*

go on a day trip – make an excursion for one day: πηγαίνω μονοήμερη εκδρομή. *Let's go on a day trip to an island tomorrow.*

take a walk – journey on foot for pleasure or exercise: πηγαίνω περίπατο. *Would you like to take a long walk after lunch to visit the castle?*

PHRASAL VERBS

take after – behave like or look like: μοιάζω (σε κάποιον). *She takes after her mother – she has the same mannerisms and habits.*

take in – understand and remember what you hear and read: καταλαβαίνω, αντιλαμβάνομαι. *I was so tired that I couldn't take in what she was saying.*

take off – remove: βγάζω. *I don't want to take off my sweater because it's cold.*

take over – control by new management: αναλαμβάνω (επιχείρηση κ.λπ.). *Next month the hotel will be taken over by a new company.*

take up – become interested in a particular activity or subject and begin doing it: αρχίζω (χόμπι). *He said he is going to take up swimming.*

take down – take notes, write: σημειώνω, γράφω. *She tried to take down everything the teacher said.*

take on – accept work or responsibility: αναλαμβάνω. *I will take on your work while you are away.*

take to – like someone or something: μου αρέσει κάποιος ή κάτι. *The boys really took to their new school and made friends straight away.*

UNIT 18 Shopping, Consumer Goods and Money

TEST YOURSELF

SHOPPING AND CONSUMER GOODS

aisle (n) the space between the rows of shelves in a shop: διάδρομος (μεταξύ καθισμάτων, ραφιών κ.λπ.). *The aisles are crowded because there are a lot of people in the store.*

bargain (n) something which is cheaper than usual: φτηνή αγορά, ευκαιρία. *Her jeans were a real bargain; they were only €25.*

bargain (v) try to agree on a price that is better for you: παζαρεύω. *We tried to bargain for the old car, but they wouldn't accept less than €5,000.*

brand name (n) a well-known name: μάρκα. *When you think of a brand name for running shoes, it will probably be Reebok or Nike.*

cashier (n) the person in a store or restaurant to whom you give your money: ταμίας. *The cashier asked if we wanted to pay with our credit card.*

checkout (n) the place in a large store where you pay for what you have bought: ταμείο σε σουπερμάρκετ. *There is a long queue at the supermarket checkout.*

consumer (n) a person who buys things or uses services: καταναλωτής. *Consumers are delighted with the company's new product.*

counter (n) the place in a shop where you get service or pay for what you have bought: πάγκος ή ταμείο καταστήματος. *She works behind the counter.*

customer (n) a person who buys things from a shop or a salesperson: πελάτης. *I've been a regular customer at Martin's Food Market for years.*

deliver (v) take something to someone: διανέμω. *They will deliver his new TV on Monday.*

department store (n) a large shop which sells many different things: πολυκατάστημα. *We bought some furniture and some clothes at the department store.*

discount (n) a lower price than is usual: έκπτωση. *The shop is selling radios at a discount because the new manager wants to get rid of the stock.*

display (n) an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy: έκθεση (εμπορευμάτων κ.λπ.). *The display of children's toys caught her eye.*

display (v) put things in a place where people can look at them: εκθέτω, επιδεικνύω (εμπορεύματα). *The clothes store displays new products in the window every month.*

exchange (n) giving something back and getting something new: ανταλλαγή. *If you're not happy with the present, you can get an exchange at the shop.*

exchange (v) return something you have bought and be given something else: κάνω ανταλλαγή. *She exchanged the blue dress for a red one.*

luxury (n) something very expensive and pleasurable: πολυτέλεια. *Champagne and chocolates are luxuries, not necessities.*

product (n) something which is produced: προϊόν. *All milk products must be kept cold.*

purchase (n) something you buy: αγορά. *You can get a 10% discount for purchases over €150.*

purchase (v) buy: αγοράζω. *When did you purchase your new flat?*

receipt (n) a piece of paper showing proof of purchase: απόδειξη (αγοράς). *I'd like to take back this dress, but I can't find the receipt.*

reduction (n) a lower price: μείωση, έκπτωση. *The dealer gave us a reduction on the car we bought because it was an older model.*

refund (n) return of money: επιστροφή χρημάτων. *The shop assistant gave me a refund when I returned the faulty kettle.*

salesperson (n) a person who sells things: πωλητής. *He asked the salesperson about the price of chairs.*

shop assistant (n) a person who works in a shop: υπάλληλος καταστήματος. *The shop assistant helped the girl to choose a dress.*

shopkeeper (n) a person who owns a shop and helps customers: ιδιοκτήτης καταστήματος. *The shopkeeper has several boys working for him.*

shopper (n) a person who is shopping: αγοραστής. *The department store was crowded with shoppers.*

stall (n) a table or open shop where goods are sold: πάγκος πωλητή, κιάσκι. *There is a vegetable stall near the entrance to the market.*

MONEY

account (n) an arrangement in which the bank looks after your money: (τραπεζικός) λογαριασμός. *I put the money I got for my birthday in a savings account at the bank.*

afford (v) have enough money to buy something: έχω την οικονομική δυνατότητα. *Can you afford to pay for this expensive bicycle?*

bankrupt (adj) completely unable to pay what you owe: χρεοκοπημένος. *The shop had to close when the owner went bankrupt.*

budget (n) a plan of how to manage money: προϋπολογισμός. *We live on a tight budget.*

budget (v) carefully plan and control your spending: προϋπολογίζω (δαπάνη). *We are budgeting carefully in order to save enough money to buy a new car.*

cash (n) money, coins and notes: μετρητά. *I don't carry a lot of cash in my wallet.*

cheque (n) a printed slip of paper from a bank which can be used as money: επιταγή. *I don't have enough cash to pay for this, but I can give you a cheque.*

coin (n) a round piece of metal used as money: νόμισμα, κέρμα. *I put a coin into the coffee machine.*

credit card (n) a small plastic card that you use to buy things now and pay for them later: πιστωτική κάρτα. *We bought our computer with our credit card because we didn't have enough money to pay for it right now.*

debt (n) the money someone owes: χρέος. *He has many debts because he always overspends.*

deposit (n) an amount of money paid into a bank account: κατάθεση. *I'd like to make a deposit into my savings account.*

deposit (v) put money in a bank account: καταθέτω χρήματα. *I deposited the money in my account.*

donate (v) give something: κάνω δωρεά. *Every year we donate money to help people in poor countries.*

economic (adj) concerned with money or the economy of a country: οικονομικός (ο σχετικός με την οικονομία). *The economic situation of the country is bad at the moment.*

expense (n) the amount of money something costs you: έξοδο, δαπάνη. *Having a dog was a bigger expense than the family expected.*

financial (adj) connected to money: οικονομικός. *He enjoys reading the financial pages of the newspaper.*

fine (n) an amount of money you have to pay because you have broken the law: πρόστιμο. *Ted got a £100 fine for speeding.*

fine (v) to make someone pay an amount of money for breaking the law: επιβάλλω πρόστιμο. *Ted was fined £100 for speeding.*

invest (v) use money in a way which you hope will increase its value: επενδύω. *I decided to invest my money in a flat.*

loan (n) money given to you which you must pay back in the future: δάνειο. *The bank gave him a loan to buy a car.*

note (n) paper money: χαρτονόμισμα. *She doesn't have much money, only a 10 pound note.*

owe (v) have to pay money to someone: χρωστώ. *If you buy something and only pay a part of the money, you owe the rest.*

poverty (n) state of being very poor: φτώχεια. *In some places, people live in poverty with little food, money or shelter.*

savings (n) money you have kept aside to use later: οικονομίες. *We used our savings to buy a new car.*

value (n) how much money something is worth: αξία. *The value of the house is £75,000.*

wealthy (adj) rich, possessing a lot of money and valuable things: πλούσιος. *Only wealthy people can afford such an expensive car.*

withdraw (v) take out: αποσύρω, κάνω ανάληψη. *I am going to the bank today to withdraw some money.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

cost (n): κόστος. *The cost of living increases every year.*

price (n): τιμή. *The price of this car is £8,000.*

economical (adj): οικονομικός, φτηνός. *He decided it was more economical to travel by train because airfares are so expensive.*

get (v): παίρνω, αποκτώ. *She got some lovely presents for her birthday.*

take (v): παίρνω (κάτι μαζί μου). *Take an apple from the bowl on the table.*

recipe (n): συνταγή (μαγειρικής). *Could you please give me your recipe for chocolate cake?*

bill (n): λογαριασμός. *Our restaurant bill was very cheap.*

catalogue (n): κατάλογος. *We will order some books from the new book catalogue.*

prospectus (n): ενημερωτικό, διαφημιστικό φυλλάδιο. *We asked the technical college to send us their new prospectus.*

lend (v): δανειζώ. *The bank will not lend him money.*

borrow (v): δανειζομαι. *Can I borrow your bicycle?*

earn (v): κερδίζω (χρήματα). *My mother earns quite a lot of money in high-tech.*

gain (v): παίρνω, αποκτώ. *He gains weight every time he goes on holiday because he eats too much.*

expensive (adj): ακριβός. *They bought an expensive holiday home in Spain.*

valuable (adj): πολύτιμος. *This clock is quite valuable because it is very old.*

take care of: φροντίζω, προσέχω. *Who is going to take care of the garden while the family is away?*

care for (phr v): φροντίζω, περιποιούμαι. *Anne cared for her brother when he was ill.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

make a difference – have a positive effect on someone or something: έχω θετικό αποτέλεσμα. *Studying with Claire for the maths exam made a big difference in my mark.*

free of charge – without paying: χωρίς χρέωση, δωρεάν. *Parking is free of charge for our shoppers.*

cash a cheque – obtain money from the bank in return for a cheque: εξαργυρώνω επιταγή. *I just want to cash this cheque and then we can go shopping.*

make a complaint – tell someone you are dissatisfied: παραπονιέμαι. *We have been waiting for our food for an hour – I am going to make a complaint to the manager.*

worth a lot of money – having great financial value: μεγάλης αξίας. *This painting is worth a lot of money.*

get into debt – borrow or spend money which you do not have: χρεώνομαι. *He got into debt because he bought a new car even though he didn't have a job.*

do the shopping – go and buy things: ψωνίζω. *We have already done the shopping for the party.*

consumer society – society that enjoys buying: καταναλωτική κοινωνία. *In a consumer society, people buy things they may not need.*

out of stock – having no more products of a particular kind: εξαντλημένος, χωρίς απόθεμα. *Sorry, we have no toasters left; we are out of stock.*

make money – get money through work or business: βγάζω χρήματα. *I am trying to think of a way to make money to buy a car.*

be broke – have no money (colloquial): είμαι απένταρος. *Don't ask me for a loan – I'm broke!*

run out of money – have no money left: ξεμένω από χρήματα. *I can't buy anything more today; I've run out of money.*

PHRASAL VERBS

pay back – 1. return money which was borrowed: επιστρέφω χρήματα. *Next week I'll pay back the £10 I borrowed from you.* 2. do something in return when someone insults you: ανταποδίδω, εκδικούμαι. *I am not going to pay back the person who was so rude to me this morning; I am going to ignore him.*

give back – return something: επιστρέφω. *She borrowed my pen and forgot to give it back.*

pay out – to give money to someone: καταβάλλω μεγάλο χρηματικό ποσό. *The insurance company had to pay out a lot of money when the building collapsed.*

pay off – 1. finish paying for something: ξεπληρώνω. *I will be so happy when I've paid off my car.* 2. be rewarded for something positive: αποδίδω, αποφέρω κέρδη. *I think all my hard work in English will pay off when I sit the exam.*

give away – 1. tell information that should be kept secret: προδίδω, αποκαλύπτω. *Peter gave away the answer to the riddle.* 2. let you have something for free: παραχωρώ, χαρίζω. *The computer shop is giving away free software if you buy a new computer.*

give out – distribute something to people: μοιράζω. *The band gave out free tickets to its next concert.*

give up – stop doing something: σταματώ, κόβω (συνήθεια). *I'm giving up sweets because I want to lose some weight.*

UNIT 20 Food and Drink

TEST YOURSELF

EATING OUT

appetising (adj) describing food that looks and smells good: ορεκτικός. *Salads look very appetising when they are fresh and colourful.*

appetite (n) a desire to eat: όρεξη. *Exercise can give you a good appetite.*

beverage (n) a drink: ποτό, αφέψημα. *Lemonade is a refreshing beverage on a hot day.*

bill (n) a piece of paper stating how much money is owed for something supplied: λογαριασμός. *The bill for our dinner was much higher than we expected.*

bite (n) an amount of food that you cut with your teeth: δαγκωνιά. *She took a big bite out of the apple.*

bite (v) cut with your teeth: δαγκώνω. *It's great to bite into a crisp, sweet apple.*

chew (v) use your teeth to make food soft enough to swallow: μασάω. *The meat was tough and hard to chew.*

consume (v) eat: καταναλώνω. *Most dieticians advise you not to consume too much sugar.*

course (n) a part of a meal: πιάτο (φαγητό γεύματος). *The first course was soup and the second one was fish.*

cutlery (n) knives, forks and spoons: μαχαιροπίρουνα. *Please set the table with the fancy cutlery; we're having guests. (AmE: silverware)*

flavour (n) the taste of a food: γεύση. *Which flavour do you like best – vanilla or chocolate?*

inedible (adj) not able to be eaten: ακατάλληλος να φαγωθεί. *This meat is so tough that it's inedible.*

junk food (n) food which has little nutritional value: έτοιμο ανθυγιεινό φαγητό. *Junk food, like crisps and chocolate, is unhealthy.*

serve (v) provide food and drink: σερβίρω. *All the dishes are served with a salad and bread.*

soft drink (n) a sweet drink with no alcohol: αναψυκτικό. *They served wine to the adults and soft drinks to the children.*

speciality (n) a food for which a restaurant is well known: σπεσιαλιτέ. *The speciality of this restaurant is fresh fish. (AmE: specialty)*

swallow (v) move food from the mouth down the throat to the stomach: καταπίνω. *If you swallow very hot coffee, you will burn your mouth.*

taste (n) flavour: γεύση. *This hot chocolate has a very sweet taste.*

taste (v) 1. have a particular flavour: έχω γεύση. *This soup tastes very strange.* 2. try a small amount of food or drink on the tongue: δοκιμάζω (φαγητό, ποτό). *Would you like to taste this soup to see if you like it?*

tip (n) money given to the person who serves you: φιλοδώρημα. *The waiter is excellent; we should give him a good tip.*

tip (v) to give money to the person who serves you: δίνω φιλοδώρημα. *I tipped the waiter 20% because the service was excellent.*

vegetarian (n) someone who doesn't eat meat: χορτοφάγος. *Some vegetarians won't even eat eggs or cheese.*

vegetarian (adj) relating to vegetarians: για χορτοφάγους. *Janet doesn't eat meat, so let's go to a vegetarian restaurant.*

waiter (n) a person who serves food and drink in a restaurant: σερβιτόρος. *The waiter brought us our food very quickly.*

COOKING AND NUTRITION

additive (n) a chemical added to food to preserve it: πρόσθετη ουσία. *According to the label, this orange juice has no additives.*

bake (v) cook food in an oven: ψήνω (στο φούρνο). *On Friday, I will bake an orange cake.*

barbecue (n) 1. a metal frame for cooking food over a fire outdoors: ψησταριά, σχάρα. *Put the steaks on the barbecue when the coals are red hot.* 2. a party where food is cooked and eaten outdoors: υπαίθριο πάρτι με κατανάλωση ψητών. *We were invited to a barbecue on the beach.*

barbecue (v) cook food over a fire on a metal frame outdoors: ψήνω στη σχάρα. *Marge barbecued the chicken with a spicy sauce.*

boil (v) heat a liquid until it bubbles and starts to change into steam: βράζω. *Boil the water and then add the sugar and the chocolate.*

cookery (n) the skill of cooking: μαγειρική. *Jean is taking classes in Italian cookery. (AmE: cooking)*

dairy (adj) made from milk: γαλακτοκομικός. *My favourite dairy product is ice cream.*

defrost (v) allow frozen food to come to room temperature: ξεπαγώνω. *It is necessary to defrost a frozen chicken before you cook it.*

diet (n) a particular plan of eating: διαίτα, διατροφή. *His doctor told him to go on a diet to lose weight.*

diet (v) to eat small amounts of food in order to become thinner: κάνω διαίτα. *I don't think I'll have dessert – I'm dieting.*

dietician (n) a person who gives people advice about what kind of food they should eat: διαιτολόγος. *The dietician helped Rodney lose a lot of weight.*

fry (v) cook food in hot oil or fat: τηγανίζω. *She fried the eggs for breakfast in a big pan.*

groceries (n) food supplies, usually in packets and tins: ψώνια (τρόφιμα κ.λπ.). *My cousin went to the supermarket to buy groceries.*

herb (n) a plant used to add flavour to food or as a medicine: (φαρμακευτικό ή αρωματικό) βότανο. *This tomato sauce needs some more herbs, such as oregano and basil, to make it taste better.*

hunger (n) the feeling that comes from not having enough food: πείνα, ασιτία. *In some countries, children have so little to eat that they suffer from hunger.*

ingredient (n) a part of something, especially food: συστατικό. *Which ingredient did you forget to add to the cake?*

nourishment (n) foods or the substances in food that are necessary for life, growth and health: τροφή, διατροφή. *Fruits and vegetables provide nourishment.*

nutritious (adj) providing vitamins, minerals and proteins for the body: θρεπτικός. *If we want to be healthy, it is important to eat nutritious food.*

oven (n) a piece of kitchen equipment that you cook food in: φούρνος. *Make sure the oven is heated to the correct temperature before you put the cake in.*

pastry (n) the dough used in pies: ζύμη. *To make an apricot pie, you put pastry into the dish and fill it with fruit.*

pepper (n) a hot-tasting spice used to add flavour to food: πιπέρι. *This curry has a lot of pepper in it. It's very hot.*

salt (n) a white substance used to improve the flavour of food: αλάτι. *This soup needs more salt.*

spice (n) the part of a plant or a powder that you put in food to give it flavour: μπαχαρικό, καρύκευμα. *Paprika is a popular spice in Spain.*

thirst (n) the feeling of needing to drink: δίψα. *If you walk a long way on a hot day, you will develop a strong thirst.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

ADJECTIVES

stale – not fresh: μπαγιάτικος. *The bread has been in the cupboard for three days and now it is stale.*

raw – not cooked: ωμός, άψητος. *Vegetables which are cooked have fewer vitamins than raw vegetables.*

sour – having a sharp taste: ξινός. *Apple juice is sweet, but vinegar is sour.*

dry – not sweet (wine): ξηρός (για κρασί). *Jack likes to drink dry wine, but I prefer sweet white wine.*

rare – cooked lightly (meat): ελάχιστα ψημένος. *I don't like steak to be cooked too much; I like it to be rare.*

tough – difficult to cut or chew: σκληρός. *Trying to eat a tough steak is like trying to eat a shoe.*

underdone – not cooked enough: μισοψημένος. *This fish is underdone – we can't eat it.*

spicy – describing food with spices added to it: πικάντικος. *We really enjoy eating spicy Indian food.*

cooked – prepared using heat; not raw; μαγειρεμένος. *These cooked vegetables are made with butter.*

well done – cooked completely (meat): καλοψημένος. *I ordered my steak well done.*

overcooked – cooked for too long; παραψημένος. *The chicken was delicious, but the vegetables were overcooked and not tasty.*

fresh – new: φρέσκος. *Please buy some fresh milk.*

sweet – full of sugar: γλυκός. *Sweet grapes taste so much better than sour ones.*

tender – soft, easy to eat: τρυφερός, μαλακός. *This is the most tender beef I have ever had.*

bland – lacking in taste: άνοστος, άγευστος. *Plain rice without spices or vegetables is bland.*

tasteless – having very little or no flavour: άγευστος. *The boiled chicken was tasteless.*

furious – very angry: οργισμένος, εξαγριωμένος. *She was furious because the waiter spilled hot soup all over her dress.*

disgusting – absolutely horrible: απεχθιστικός. *The restaurant kitchen was dirty and in a complete mess; it was disgusting.*

enormous – extremely large: τεράστιος. *This dessert is enormous – let's share it.*

exhausted – very tired: εξαντλημένος. *They were exhausted in the morning because they had gone out to a late dinner after work.*

delicious – having a pleasant taste or smell: πολύ νόστιμος, γευστικός. *The chocolate cake with cream and nuts was just delicious.*

starving – extremely hungry: πάρα πολύ πεινασμένος, που λιμοκτονεί. *When children arrive home from school, they always say they are starving.*

tasty – describing something which tastes good: νόστιμος. *We tried the souvlaki last night, and it was really tasty.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

receipt (n): απόδειξη (πληρωμής κ.λπ.). *I'd like to take back this dress, but I can't find the receipt.*

recipe (n): συνταγή (μαγειρικής). *Could you please give me your recipe for chocolate cake?*

book (v): κάνω κράτηση. *This restaurant is very popular so you must book a table well in advance.*

hire (v): νοικιάζω, προσλαμβάνω. *We hired a car during our stay in Athens and visited many sites of historical interest.*

dish (n): 1. πιάτο, σκεύος σερβιρίσματος. *Our pasta was served in a deep dish.* 2. φαγητό. *The restaurant has added several new chicken dishes to their menu.*

plate (n): πιάτο (το σκεύος). *Our salads were served on beautiful blue plates.*

pour (v): χύνω, ρίχνω υγρό. *She poured water from the jug into the cup.*

spill (v): χύνω (κατά λάθος). *He slipped and spilled the soup all over the floor.*

catalogue (n): κατάλογος. *We will order some books from the new book catalogue.*

menu (n): μενού, κατάλογος. *There was no fish on the menu so I ordered pasta instead.*

cook (n): μάγειρας. *My dad is a great cook; he makes very elaborate meals.*

cooker (n): κουζίνα (συσκευή). *When the soup begins to boil, take it off the cooker and let it cool. (AmE: stove)*

roast (v): ψήνω (κυρίως κρέας). *I like meat and potatoes that have been roasted slowly.*

peel (v): ξεφλουδίζω. *I peeled lots of vegetables to make soup.*

clean (v): καθαρίζω. *The cook cleaned the kitchen because it was a mess after making dinner.*

chop (v): τεμαχίζω, ψιλοκόβω. *The cook chopped the onions into small pieces.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

go on a diet – eat less food in order to lose weight: κάνω δίαιτα. *My doctor told me it is time to go on a diet as I am too fat.*

cut down on – eat less of / do less often: μειώνω. *My husband is cutting down on junk food and cigarettes.*

help (myself) – take what you need without asking: *σερβίρομαι μόνος μου. There is plenty of food in the kitchen – please help yourself whenever you want.*

set the table – prepare the table for a meal: *στρώνω το τραπέζι. Please set the table with everything we need for lunch.*

clear away – remove something after it has been used: *μαζεύω (το τραπέζι μετά από γεύμα κ.λπ.). When we finish the meal, we'll clear away the dishes.*

follow the recipe – do what the instructions for cooking something tell you: *ακολουθώ τη συνταγή. If you follow the recipe carefully, this cake always turns out well.*

do the cooking – cook all the things necessary for a meal: *κάνω το μαγειρέμα. In our house, my father does all the cooking.*

do the dishes – wash the dishes after a meal: *πλένω τα πιάτα. She asked us to help clean up and so we did the dishes.*

for a change – in contrast to the usual way: *για αλλαγή. I'm always doing the dishes, so why don't you do them for a change?*

eat out – eat in a restaurant: *τρώω έξω (σε εστιατόριο). Our friends eat out a lot, but we prefer to eat at home.*

in season – a time of year when certain fruits or vegetables are available: *της εποχής. We love fruits when they are in season, especially watermelon.*

out of season – a time of year when certain fruits or vegetables are not available: *εκτός εποχής. It is almost impossible to find strawberries in winter when they are out of season.*

have a bite to eat – eat a small meal or snack: *τρώω κάτι στα γρήγορα. They didn't have much time so they just had a bite to eat.*

warm up – heat food: *ζεσταίνω. Would you like me to warm up some milk for your coffee?*

PHRASAL VERBS

run after – chase someone: *κυνηγώ (κάποιον). Quick! That man took my wallet; please run after him!*

run around – go quickly from place to place: *περιφέρομαι, τρέχω εδώ κι εκεί. They ran around from store to store, looking for Christmas presents.*

run away – leave someone or something to escape: *το σκάω, διαφεύγω. The boy decided to run away from home.*

run into – meet someone unexpectedly: *συναντώ τυχαία. I'm in a hurry, so I hope I don't run into anyone I know at the supermarket.*

run off with – take something which is not yours: *κλέβω, το σκάω (παιρνοντας κάτι). They couldn't believe that the clerk had run off with all the money from the office.*

run over – knock over with a vehicle: *χτυπώ (κάποιον / κάτι) με όχημα. The dog was run over by a speeding car.*

run out (of something) – to have nothing left of something: *ξεμένω (από κάτι). The car stopped because it ran out of petrol.*

run through (my mind) – have a particular thought or idea suddenly or continuously: *περνάει από (το μυαλό μου). The thought that they had been hurt in an accident kept running through my mind.*

UNIT 22 The Media and the News

TEST YOURSELF

THE MEDIA

broadcast (n) a programme on TV or radio: *εκπομπή (ραδιοφωνική ή τηλεοπτική). Millions of people watched the live broadcast of the game.*

broadcast (v) send messages or programmes on TV or radio: *εκπέμπω, μεταδίδω. The news is broadcast each night at seven o'clock.*

cable TV (n) a television service you pay for, which is sent by wires rather than radio waves: *καλωδιακή τηλεόραση. Cable TV gives you a wider choice of programmes.*

celebrity (n) someone who is very well known or famous: *διασημότητα. Lots of celebrities come to the Oscars.*

editor (n) someone who reviews programmes and removes unsuitable material: *λογοκριτής. The editor cut two minutes of the programme because they were offensive.*

editor (v) cut parts from a programme considered unsuitable for viewing: *λογοκρίνω. The programme was very racist so the television manager decided to censor it so as not to offend people.*

chat show (n) a TV show where people are invited to sit and talk with the host: *τηλεοπτική / ραδιοφωνική συζήτηση. I enjoy listening to the morning chat shows.*

commentator (n) a person who describes an event or sports competition on TV or radio: *σχολιαστής. After the football player retired from the game, he became a sports commentator.*

commercial (n) paid advertising: *διαφήμιση (τηλεοπτική, ραδιοφωνική). I find the commercials on TV very annoying.*

critic (n) someone who analyses or judges another's work: *κριτικός. The critic wrote some very unkind things about the film.*

current affairs (n) political events and news stories: *θέματα της επικαιρότητας. There are many good programmes on TV that deal with current affairs.*

documentary (n) a television programme or film that gives detailed information about a particular subject: *ντοκιμαντέρ. The documentary on TV about lions in the wild was very interesting.*

drama (n) a play performed by actors on TV, radio or in a theatre: *δράμα, θεατρικό έργο. I watched a drama on TV last night.*

feature (n) a special article or programme: *άρθρο (εφημερίδας, περιοδικού), αφιέρωμα. Today's newspaper has a feature about the Parthenon.*

feature (v) include something important: *προβάλλω, έχω ως πρωταγωνιστή. The circus show features a man who swallows fire.*

game show (n) a show on TV or radio in which participants win prizes: *τηλεοπτικό / ραδιοφωνικό παιχνίδι. People win nice prizes on game shows.*

gossip column (n) a feature in a newspaper which gives details of the private lives of celebrities: *κοσμική στήλη (εφημερίδας, περιοδικού). Film stars often appear in the gossip columns.*

horoscope (n) a prediction about the future based on the position of stars and planets at the time of one's birth: *ωροσκόπιο. His horoscope said to be careful of sharp objects, and today he cut his finger.*

presenter (n) someone who introduces a radio or TV show or talks between programmes: παρουσιαστής. *The presenter on Radio One has a pleasant voice.*

ratings (n) statistics showing the popularity of programmes on TV: ποσοστά ακροαματικότητας / τηλεθέασης. *The latest ratings show that reality TV programmes are the most popular programmes on TV.*

remote control (n) a hand-held control which allows someone to operate electrical equipment from a distance: τηλεχειριστήριο. *Our remote control must be broken; we can't turn on the TV.*

review (n) a critical evaluation of a film, play, book, etc.: κριτική (ταινίας, βιβλίου κ.λπ.). *After the first performance, we waited anxiously for the reviews.*

review (v) give a critical evaluation of a film, play, book, etc.: γράφω κριτική (ταινίας, βιβλίου κ.λπ.). *He is a literary critic and reviews novels.*

satellite TV (n) television signals sent by satellite to a dish receiver at a house: δορυφορική τηλεόραση. *They had satellite TV installed and can now watch 300 channels.*

series (n) a set of TV or radio programmes that tell a continuing story: (τηλεοπτική, ραδιοφωνική) σειρά. *Friends was a successful comedy series on TV.*

TV set (n) an appliance that receives TV signals: συσκευή τηλεόρασης. *We have just bought a new TV set for the children's room.*

viewer (n) someone who watches television: τηλεθεατής. *Some viewers watch TV all day.*

volume (n) the level of sound: ένταση ήχου. *Teenagers love to listen to music with the volume turned up as loud as possible.*

IN THE NEWS

burglary (n) the crime of breaking into a building and stealing things: διάρρηξη. *There have been several burglaries in this area recently.*

crime (n) an illegal activity: έγκλημα. *The detective interviewed the witnesses who were at the scene of the crime.*

editor (n) the person who decides which items will be included in a programme, magazine, etc.: συντάκτης, επιμελητής έκδοσης. *Jane is the editor of the school newspaper.*

evidence (n) proof that something is true: αποδεικτικά στοιχεία. *There was not enough evidence to prove that he had committed the crime.*

foreign correspondent (n) somebody who supplies news from another country: ξένος ανταποκριτής. *He is a foreign correspondent currently reporting from China.*

headline (n) a phrase in large bold letters above a story in a newspaper or magazine which gives an idea about the article: επικεφαλίδα, τίτλος (εφημερίδας κ.λπ.). *When the weather was hot last year, the headline said "Heatwave!"*

hijacking (n) illegally taking control of a plane or other vehicle: αεροπειρατεία. *The hijacking was prevented by the police at the airport.*

investigation (n) process of finding out reasons for something such as a crime or scientific problem: έρευνα. *The police have begun an investigation into the accident.*

journalist (n) a person who writes media articles and features: δημοσιογράφος. *His son loves writing and hopes to be a journalist after university.*

kidnapping (n) taking someone prisoner in order to get money for returning them: απαγωγή. *The kidnapping of the millionaire's son ended in tragedy.*

murder (n) the crime of killing someone: φόνος. *He is being charged with the murder of his partner.*

murder (v) to kill someone deliberately: δολοφονώ. *Her husband was murdered during the armed robbery.*

newsflash (n) important news which interrupts a TV or radio programme: έκτακτο δελτίο ειδήσεων. *Last night there was a newsflash to say that floods are expected in this region.*

(the) press (n) people who write or take photographs for newspapers: ο τύπος (δημοσιογράφοι, εφημερίδες κ.λπ.). *When the film star got married, hundreds of people from the press were there.*

press conference (n) a meeting of media people called together by a well-known person: συνέντευξη τύπου. *The prime minister has called a press conference to announce his plans for the country.*

reporter (n) someone who gathers news items and reports on what has been found: δημοσιογράφος, ρεπόρτερ. *The reporter interviewed the prime minister.*

violence (n) behaviour that is intended to physically harm other people: βία. *That film has too much violence in it; it's not suitable for children.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

PHRASAL VERBS

turn away – refuse permission to enter: διώχνω, δεν επιτρέπω την είσοδο. *The teenagers were turned away by the restaurant manager because they were not dressed properly.*

turn off – stop something working by pressing a button or switch: κλείνω (βρύση), σβήνω (συσκευή). *Please turn off the lights before you go to sleep.*

turn round – move to look behind you: γυρίζω, στρέφομαι. *Turn round and see who's behind you.*

turn up – 1. increase the amount of sound or noise: δυναμώνω την ένταση. *Can you turn up the TV please? I want to hear what the presenter is saying.* 2. arrive: φτάνω, εμφανίζομαι. *The guests did not turn up at the time they were expected.*

turn down – 1. refuse something or someone: απορρίπτω. *She turned down the position because it required too much travelling.* 2. reduce the amount of sound or noise: χαμηλώνω την ένταση. *The mother asked her son if he could please turn down the radio.*

turn into – change, develop: αλλάζω, μετατρέπομαι. *The sofa turns into a bed.*

turn out – result in something happening: καταλήγω, εξελίσσομαι. *My mother always says that everything will turn out for the best.*

turn to – get help from someone: καταφεύγω, απευθύνομαι. *If you are lost in a strange city, you can always turn to the police for help.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

call off – stop or cancel: ακυρώνω. *They will call off the football game if it continues to snow.*

show a film – screen a film: προβάλλω ταινία. *The cinema is showing a James Bond film.*

prime-time – the time with the most viewers / listeners: ζώνη μεγάλης ακροαματικότητας. *If you want to advertise on TV, about 8 p.m. is prime-time.*

TV addict – someone who cannot stop watching television: εθισμένος στην τηλεόραση. *Tom is a TV addict. He watches TV for at least eight hours a day.*

shoot a series – film episodes: γυρίζω σειρά. *The film company is going to shoot a series in Spain.*

broadcast live – transmit to radio or TV from where something is happening: μεταδίδω ζωντανή εκπομπή. *Channel One is broadcasting live from the stadium tonight.*

topical issue – interesting events which are happening right now: επίκαιρο θέμα. *Global warming is a topical issue.*

no comment – refusal to say anything: κανένα σχόλιο. *When reporters asked questions, the politician said, "No comment".*

on location – a place where a film is made outside the studio: τόπος εξωτερικών γυρισμάτων ταινίας. *The film about volcanoes is being shot on location near Mt Etna in Sicily.*

receive – be able to get a television or radio broadcast: λαμβάνω (σήμα κ.λπ.). *We don't receive a clear picture on all our TV channels.*

commit a crime – do something illegal: διαπράττω αδίκημα, έγκλημα. *He was accused of committing the crime of murder, but the police couldn't find enough evidence.*

wanted by the police – looked for by the police because someone is suspected of having committed a crime: καταζητούμενος. *He is wanted by the police in connection with the robbery.*

have an influence (on) – affect what a person does or what happens in a situation: έχω επιρροή (σε). *Barbara's new teacher has had a good influence on her; she's been studying harder.*

be concerned (about) – be worried about something: ανησυχώ (για). *His parents are concerned about his poor marks.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

last (adj): τελευταίος. *My house is the last one on the street.*

latest (adj): ο πιο πρόσφατος. *Her latest book is great!*

channel (n): τηλεοπτικό κανάλι. *How many TV channels do you get?*

canal (n): κανάλι, διώρυγα. *Amsterdam is known for its canals.*

voice (n): φωνή. *I enjoy listening to him sing – he has a relaxing voice.*

watch (v): βλέπω, παρακολουθώ. *The boys are watching the football match.*

see (v): βλέπω. *I didn't see her today.*

look at (v): κοιτάζω. *He looked at the picture for a long time.*

hear (v): ακούω. *Please don't shout. I can hear you.*

listen (v): ακούω (προσεκτικά). *The teacher told the pupils to listen.*

miss (v): χάνω (δεν προλαβαίνω). *I missed the news broadcast this evening. Did the prime minister speak?*

lose (v): χάνω (δε βρίσκω). *I think I've lost my keys. Have you seen them?*

PREFIXES

inaccurate – not correct: ανακριβής. *The reports of violence were inaccurate. There were only minor problems.*

unfavourable – not good: δυσμενής, αρνητικός. *Her new book received unfavourable reviews.*

misunderstood – not fully understood: παρεξηγημένος. *Her shyness is misunderstood as snobbishness.*

irresponsible – not caring about the results of one's actions: ανεύθυνος. *The journalist's irresponsible reporting caused a lot of problems.*

unacceptable – not suitable: απαράδεκτος. *Reporting stories that are not true is unacceptable.*

dissatisfied – not pleased: δυσαρεστημένος. *I was dissatisfied with the service I received so I complained to the manager.*

illiterate – unable to read or write: αναλφάβητος. *Some adults who were unable to attend school are illiterate.*

non-violent – peaceful: χωρίς βία, ειρηνικός. *Although trouble had been expected, the strike was non-violent.*

incomplete – not finished: ελλιπής, ανολοκλήρωτος. *I can't turn in my report yet because it is incomplete.*

illegal – not allowed by the law: παράνομος. *It is illegal to park your car here.*

unsuitable – not having the right qualities for a particular person or purpose: ακατάλληλος. *That beach is unsuitable for swimming.*

impractical – not realistic / sensible: μη πρακτικός, ανεφάρμοστος. *I'd like to meet you, but before 6.00 it is impractical.*

UNIT 24 The Weather and the Environment

TEST YOURSELF

THE WEATHER

breeze (n) a light wind: αύρα, αεράκι. *We sat on the balcony of the hotel and enjoyed the breeze.*

climate (n) the general weather conditions of a place: κλίμα. *The climate in parts of Africa is hot and dry.*

drought (n) a lack of rain for a long time: ξηρασία. *There was a severe drought in Australia; it didn't rain for months.*

earthquake (n) movement and shaking of the ground: σεισμός. *The earthquake in Japan caused damage to many buildings.*

flooding (n) large amounts of water covering areas which are usually dry: πλημμύρα. *There was flooding in the town because of all the rain.*

fog (n) thick clouds which descend to ground level: πυκνή ομίχλη. *It is dangerous to drive a car in fog, as it is difficult to see clearly.*

forecast (n) a statement about what is likely to happen (usually the weather): πρόβλεψη, πρόγνωση (καιρού). *According to the weather forecast, it is going to rain tomorrow.*

forecast (v) make a statement about what is likely to happen (usually the weather): προβλέπω. *Bad weather has been forecast for the weekend.*

heatwave (n) a short period of extremely hot weather: καύσωνας. *Athens often has a heatwave in summer.*

humidity (n) the amount of water in the air: υγρασία. *The humidity in summer makes most people feel very hot and uncomfortable.*

lightning (n) electrical flashes of light in the sky: αστραπή. *Lightning hit a tree during the storm.*

mist (n) a thin fog: αραιή ομίχλη. *An early morning mist in the mountains looks quite lovely.*

puddle (n) a small amount of water on the ground: λακκούβα με νερό, λιμνούλα. *Children love jumping in puddles.*

season (n) a specific period of the year: εποχή. *Spring is the best season to visit India.*

shower (n) a short period of rain: μπόρα, νεροποντή. *It's a good idea to take an umbrella as we expect a shower this afternoon.*

storm (n) heavy winds and rain, usually with thunder and lightning: καταιγίδα, θύελλα. *The children were afraid during the storm and ran to their mother.*

sunshine (n) the light from the sun:λιακάδα. *Tina enjoys taking long walks in the sunshine.*

temperature (n) a measure of how hot or cold a place or thing is: θερμοκρασία. *If the temperature goes below freezing tonight, the roads will be icy.*

thunder (n) a loud, sharp sound following lightning: βροντή. *The children were afraid of the loud thunder during the storm.*

THE ENVIRONMENT

acid rain (n) rain which contains pollutants: όξινη βροχή. *Acid rain is damaging ancient structures like the Acropolis.*

atmosphere (n) air and gases around the earth or other planets: ατμόσφαιρα. *Smoke from heavy traffic contributes to the pollution of the atmosphere.*

bottle bank (n) a place to collect bottles for recycling: κάδος ανακύκλωσης μπουκαλιών *Take the bottles to the bottle bank to be recycled.*

conservationist (n) a person who cares about the environment: οικολόγος. *A conservationist tries to protect the natural world.*

ecology (n) the study of environmental issues: οικολογία. *Many people study ecology to find ways to protect the environment.*

extinct (adj) no longer in existence: εξαφανισμένος (για ζώα). *Many animals such as dinosaurs are now extinct.*

famine (n) a lack of sufficient food: πείνα, λιμός. *There was a famine in Africa and thousands of people starved to death.*

fumes (n) the smell and smoke from chemicals or gases: καυσαέρια. *The fumes from the plastics factory were so bad that many children who lived nearby became ill.*

global warming (n) a rise in temperature around the world: σταδιακή αύξηση της θερμοκρασίας στη γη. *Scientists warn that global warming is damaging the atmosphere.*

greenhouse effect (n) a rise in the earth's temperature caused because heat cannot escape from the atmosphere: φαινόμενο του θερμοκηπίου. *Some scientists are worried that the greenhouse effect is going to cause a big change in the earth's weather.*

habitat (n) the natural home of a plant or animal: φυσικό περιβάλλον φυτών ή ζώων. *Pandas are in danger of extinction because of the loss of their natural habitat.*

industrial waste (n) useless substances and materials that are left over after products have been made: βιομηχανικά απόβλητα. *A new law will require factories to clean up their industrial waste.*

litter (n) waste items, usually paper, left on the ground: σκουπίδια, απορρίμματα. *After the football game, the ground was covered in litter.*

litter (v) to leave waste paper, bottles and tins on the ground in a public place: ρυπαίνω με απορρίμματα. *We were careful not to litter; we took all of our rubbish with us when we left the beach.*

nature (n) all plants and animals: φύση. *I enjoy taking walks, surrounded by nature.*

nuclear energy (n) the energy released during a nuclear reaction: πυρηνική ενέργεια. *Using nuclear energy can be dangerous because a nuclear reaction can cause an explosion.*

overpopulation (n) too many people living in a particular area: υπερπληθυσμός. *Hong Kong has a problem of overpopulation; millions of people live in a small space.*

ozone layer (n) a protective layer of the atmosphere: στρώμα του όζοντος. *The ozone layer protects the world from the heat of the sun.*

pollution (n) damage to the air and water caused by harmful chemicals: μόλυνση, ρύπανση. *People can't drink the water because of the pollution.*

protect (v) keep safe from harm: προστατεύω. *Eagles are protected by law and may not be hunted or killed.*

rainforest (n) a thick tropical forest area with high rainfall: τροπικό δάσος. *The rainforest is home to many different birds and reptiles.*

recycle (v) reuse items, possibly for a different purpose: ανακυκλώνω. *Instead of throwing away tins, it is better to recycle them.*

rubbish (n) waste products that have no use: σκουπίδια, απορρίμματα. *The rubbish is collected in bins outside our home.*

smog (n) air pollution caused by a mixture of smoke, gases, and chemicals: αιθαλομίχλη, νέφος. *Smog is unpleasant as it can cause people to have trouble breathing.*

solar energy (n) energy which comes from the sun: ηλιακή ενέργεια. *Our water heater uses solar energy.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

harm (v): βλάπτω. *Both too much water and not enough water can harm a plant.*

hurt (v): τραυματίζω, χτυπώ. *I hurt my leg playing football.*

cancel (v): ακυρώνω. *She cancelled our lunch date because she was ill.*

postpone (v): αναβάλλω. *She postponed her appointment till next week.*

past (n): παρελθόν. *I remember many happy things from my past.*

pass (v): περνώ. *We waited until the storm had passed before we went out.*

prediction (n): πρόβλεψη. *My prediction that our team would win the National Championship was correct.*

care (about) (v): ενδιαφέρομαι (για). *They care about recycling.*

care for (phr v): φροντίζω. *Your plants will die if you don't care for them properly.*

air (n): αέρας. *Mountain air is fresh and clean.*

wind (n): αέρας, άνεμος. *The winter wind is icy cold.*

raise (n): (AmE) increase in salary: αύξηση αποδοχών. *Workers got a raise at the end of the year. (BrE: rise)*

raise (v): σηκώνω, υψώνω. *If you want to say something in class, raise your hand.*

rise (n): αύξηση. *There will be a rise in temperature tomorrow.*

conserve (v): προστατεύω, διατηρώ. *You must conserve your energy if you are planning to run a marathon.*

preserve (v): συντηρώ, προστατεύω. *It is important to preserve places like the Acropolis so that we can learn about life in Ancient Greece.*

affect (v): επηρεάζω. *Destruction of the rainforest affects the animals that live there.*

effect (n): επίδραση, αποτέλεσμα. *One of the effects of pollution is that the air is not clean.*

damage (v): καταστρέφω, χαλάω. *His car was seriously damaged in the accident.*

injure (v): τραυματίζω, πληγώνω. *A number of people were injured in the car accident.*

reduce (v): μειώνω. *The price of bathing suits has been reduced now that the summer season is over.*

fall (v): πέφτω. *The price of a computer has fallen greatly in the last few years.*

shade (n): σκιερό μέρος, σκιά. *If you have to wait for a bus on a hot day, stand in the shade.*

shadow (n): σκιά (ανθρώπου, αντικειμένου). *I looked down at my shadow; it looked much bigger than I really am.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

endangered species – any group of animals or plants which is decreasing in number: είδος υπό εξαφάνιση. *Conservation groups work hard to try to protect endangered species.*

die out – become extinct: πεθαίνω, εξαφανίζομαι (για είδος). *Many species of animals are dying out because their habitats are being destroyed.*

natural disaster – destructive event which is not caused by people: φυσική καταστροφή. *Volcanoes and earthquakes are natural disasters which can cause great damage.*

keep out of the sun – stay away from the sun: αποφεύγω τον ήλιο. *In very hot weather it is best to be indoors and keep out of the sun.*

in danger of extinction – any group which is so small that there may not be enough numbers for the group to survive: σε κίνδυνο εξαφάνισης. *Pandas are in danger of extinction.*

below zero – temperature below freezing point: κάτω από το μηδέν (για θερμοκρασία). *Last night was very cold; the temperature dropped below zero.*

pour with rain – rain very heavily: βρέχει καταρρακτωδώς. *It was pouring with rain so we stayed indoors.*

strong wind – quickly moving air: δυνατός άνεμος. *The strong winds knocked down trees and electric lines.*

result in – cause something to happen: καταλήγω, έχω σαν αποτέλεσμα. *The sudden drop of temperature resulted in icy roads and dangerous driving conditions.*

flash of lightning – a sudden burst of lightning: αστραπή, λάμψη. *The flash of lightning lit up the dark sky during the storm.*

clap of thunder – loud noise heard during a storm: βροντή. *The clap of thunder was so loud that the woman jumped from her chair in fright.*

in captivity – keeping wild animals in enclosures: σε αιχμαλωσία. *Many species of animals once kept in captivity are no longer endangered.*

aware of – realise that a problem or situation exists: ενημερωμένος, πληροφορημένος. *Many teenagers are not aware of the long-term health problems caused by smoking.*

heavy rain – a lot of rain: δυνατή βροχή. *The heavy rain caused flooding, and some roads were closed.*

ADJECTIVES

chilly – quite cold: ψυχρός. *After the sun goes down, the air becomes chilly.*

humid – when the air holds a lot of moisture: υγρός. *When the weather is humid, the air feels damp.*

windy – with strong winds blowing: με αέρα. *It was a good day for sailing because it was so windy.*

cloudy – many clouds: συννεφιασμένος. *It is so cloudy today that there is very little sky visible.*

wet – (weather) when it rains: υγρός. *It has not stopped raining for hours – what a wet day!*

overcast – when the sky is covered with low clouds and the sun is not visible: σκοτεινισμένος, συννεφιασμένος. *The sky is very overcast – it looks like it will rain soon.*

cool – neither warm nor chilly: δροσερός. *In late summer the mornings begin to feel quite cool.*

icy – covered with ice: κρύος, παγωμένος. *Icy streets are very slippery to walk or drive on.*

foggy – with a lot of thick mist visible at ground level: με πυκνή ομίχλη. *Occasionally it is so foggy that aircraft are unable to take off or land.*

stormy – weather with rain, thunder and lightning: θυελλώδης. *Because of the stormy weather, we can't play tennis.*

sunny – when the sun is shining: ηλιόλουστος. *Majorca is a great place to visit, with sunny days and warm nights.*

misty – when the air is not clear because there is a thin fog: με αραιή ομίχλη. *Our photographs didn't turn out well because it was so misty that we couldn't see very far.*

frosty – covered with frost: παγωμένος, με παγετό. *Frosty ground crackles when you walk on it.*

muddy – with very wet earth: λασπωμένος. *The garden was very muddy from all the rain.*

boiling – extremely hot (weather): πολύ ζεστός. *It was boiling hot, so we decided to go for a swim.*

freezing – very cold (weather): πολύ κρύος, παγωμένος. *Make sure you wrap up warmly; it's freezing outside.*

extreme – very great, severe: ακραίος, υπερβολικός. *The extreme change in temperature killed the plants.*

mild – gentle, soft, not severe: ήπιος, μαλακός. *This mild weather is pleasant – not too hot and not too cold.*

PHRASAL VERBS

fall apart – break into pieces: γίνομαι κομμάτια, διαλύομαι. *The vase has a large crack in it. If you touch it, it will fall apart.*

fall behind – not keep up with: καθυστερώ, μένω πίσω. *If he does not attend the lectures, he will fall behind in his studies.*

fall for – fall in love with: ερωτεύομαι κάποιον. *He is so good-looking that women fall for him all the time.*

fall into – divide into categories: διαφαιρώ σε κατηγορίες. *Flowers fall into different categories.*

fall over – 1. fall to the ground: χάνω την ισορροπία μου, πέφτω. *The wind was so strong that she was afraid she would fall over.* 2. trip over: σκοντάφτω (επάνω σε κάτι). *I fell over your toys and hurt my leg.*

fall out – disagree strongly and remain angry with someone: διαφωνώ, μαλώνω. *He fell out with me because I wouldn't change my mind.*

fall through – fail: αποτυγχάνω. *They wanted to travel to Athens, but their plans fell through.*

UNIT 26 Science and Technology

TEST YOURSELF

SCIENCE

- achievement** (n) success after a lot of effort: επίτευγμα, κατόρθωμα. *Reaching the top of Mount Everest was a great achievement.*
- astronomy** (n) scientific study of stars and planets: αστρονομία. *A telescope is essential if you are interested in astronomy.*
- biologist** (n) a person who studies plants and animals: βιολόγος. *The biologist is working in the field of genetics.*
- breakthrough** (n) a new development / discovery: επίτευγμα, καινοτομία. *Scientists made a wonderful breakthrough when they discovered antibiotics to fight infections.*
- cell** (n) the smallest part of a living thing that can exist independently: κύτταρο. *The scientists looked at the blood cells under the microscope.*
- chemical** (n) a substance used in scientific procedures: χημική ουσία. *The chemicals used in this experiment are very dangerous.*
- cloning** (n) the creation of identical copies of another living creature or being: κλωνοποίηση. *Not everyone agrees that animal cloning is ethical.*
- experiment** (n) a test to see if something will work: πείραμα. *We have to wait to see if the experiment was successful.*
- gas** (n) a substance such as air that is neither solid nor liquid: αέριο. *It is extremely dangerous to store gases near a flame.*
- genetics** (n) the study of how characteristics are inherited: γενετική. *The study of genetics has revealed how some diseases are passed on from parent to child.*
- laboratory** (n) a place for scientific research: (επιστημονικό) εργαστήριο. *The scientist carried out his experiments in the laboratory.*
- liquid** (n) a substance which is not a solid or a gas; can be easily poured: υγρό. *Make sure you drink plenty of liquids in hot weather.*
- physicist** (n) a person who has studied physics: φυσικός (επιστήμονας). *Albert Einstein was a physicist who developed many important theories.*
- procedure** (n) correct or usual way of doing something: διαδικασία. *Scientists follow strict procedures when they conduct experiments.*
- progress** (n) improvement: πρόοδος. *There has been much progress in the area of cancer research.*
- progress** (v) to move forward: προοδεύω. *Cancer research is progressing.*
- research** (n) collection and investigation of information: έρευνα. *Research has led to the cure of many diseases.*
- research** (v) study a subject in detail in order to discover new facts or ideas: ερευνώ. *Scientists are researching the effects of the drug on elderly people.*
- scientific** (adj) relating to anything used in science: επιστημονικός. *Their approach to the subject was not a scientific one.*
- solid** (n) a substance which is neither liquid nor gas: στερεό (σώμα). *There are three types of matter – solids, liquids and gases.*
- telescope** (n) an instrument which makes distant objects appear to be closer: τηλεσκόπιο. *We used a telescope to observe the stars.*

theory (n) one or more ideas that attempt to explain something: θεωρία. *His theory was that the disease was caused by a poor diet.*

TECHNOLOGY

- appliance** (n) a machine, usually electrical, that you have in your home: οικιακή συσκευή, μηχάνημα. *A toaster is a useful appliance.*
- automation** (n) the production of goods by machinery: αυτοματισμός. *Automation means that there are fewer people working in factories.*
- computer chip** (n) a piece of silicon used to store and process information in a computer: μικροτσιπ υπολογιστή. *A computer chip is tiny but can perform complicated mathematical functions.*
- development** (n) 1. process of inventing or creating something: ανάπτυξη. *The company spends a large amount of money on research and development.* 2. how something changes: εξέλιξη. *We studied the development of frogs in biology.*
- device** (n) a tool or machine used to do something specific: μηχάνημα, συσκευή. *A robot was used to blow up the explosive device.*
- download** (v) move information to your computer from the Internet or another computer: μεταφέρω δεδομένα (από έναν υπολογιστή σε άλλο ή από το Ίντερνετ). *It took her hours to download all the information she needed.*
- faulty** (adj) not working properly: ελαττωματικός. *The radio didn't work because the battery was faulty.*
- gadget** (n) a small object, usually electrical or mechanical: εργαλείο, μικροσυσκευή. *This gadget for slicing vegetables is excellent.*
- hardware** (n) physical parts of a computer system: μηχανικός εξοπλισμός υπολογιστή. *Computer hardware used to be large and took up a lot of space.*
- install** (v) make equipment or a computer program ready for use: εγκαθιστώ. *They've installed a new printer in our office.*
- inventor** (n) a person who creates something new: εφευρέτης. *Alexander Graham Bell was the inventor of the telephone.*
- keyboard** (n) the part of a computer used for typing: πληκτρολόγιο. *The keyboard on my computer has letters in both the Greek and English alphabets.*
- laptop** (n) a small computer that you can carry with you: φορητός υπολογιστής. *She took her laptop to the library to finish her report.*
- mechanical** (adj) made or operated by a machine: μηχανικός, αυτόματος. *My brother is interested in mechanical gadgets.*
- monitor** (n) the part of a computer which holds the screen: οθόνη υπολογιστή, μόνιτορ. *We need to replace our monitor – the picture is not clear.*
- reliable** (adj) dependable: αξιόπιστος. *Peter is a reliable and honest employee.*
- robotics** (n) the science of working with robots: ρομποτική, η επιστήμη των ρομπότ. *I wish I could build a robot – perhaps I should study robotics.*
- service** (n) 1. help and support offered to customers: εξυπηρέτηση (πελατών). *She bought her computer from a company which offers reliable service.* 2. regular checking and repair of a machine: σέρβις, τακτικός έλεγχος μηχανημάτων. *I took my new car in for its first service.*
- software** (n) programs used with a computer system: λογισμικό, προγράμματα υπολογιστή. *Can you help me install this software on my computer?*

sophisticated (adj) complex: πολύπλοκος. *I don't understand this computer program – it is very sophisticated.*

surf (v) visit different sites on the Internet: επισκέπτομαι ιστοσελίδες στο Ίντερνετ, σερφάρω. *He's been surfing the Internet all evening.*

technician (n) a person who is trained to work with machines: τεχνικός. *Ask the technician to help you with your computer.*

user-friendly (adj) easy to understand and use: φιλικός για το χρήστη. *This computer program is easy to follow; it's really user-friendly.*

virtual reality an environment produced by a computer which seems very real: εικονική πραγματικότητα. *People can travel to different countries by using virtual reality programs.*

VOGABULARY PRACTICE

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

invent (v): επινοώ, εφευρίσκω. *Why hasn't someone invented a car that can park automatically?*

discover (v): ανακαλύπτω. *We discovered a quicker way to walk to work.*

evolution (n): εξέλιξη. *The process of evolution takes millions of years.*

one day: κάποια μέρα. *One day we will be able to go to the moon for our holidays.*

nowadays (adv): στην εποχή μας. *Nowadays, it's dangerous to walk alone at night.*

last (adj): ο τελευταίος. *My house is the last one on the street.*

latest (adj): ο πιο πρόσφατος. *Her latest book is great!*

up-to-date (adj): μοντέρνος, σύγχρονος. *Our new computer system is completely up-to-date.*

out-of-date (adj): σπαρχαιωμένος, παλιομοδίτικος. *This magazine is so out-of-date that the information in it is useless.*

reason (n): λόγος. *What was your reason for leaving the meeting so early?*

cause (n): αιτία. *What was the cause of their disagreement?*

repair (v): επιδιορθώνω, επισκευάζω. *Bill's computer broke down so he had to call a technician to repair it.*

alter (v): αλλάζω, μετατρέπω. *She was not happy with her dress so the dressmaker altered it.*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

carry out – perform: εκτελώ, διεκπεραιώνω. *Soldiers are expected to carry out their duties at all times.*

make progress – improve: βελτιώνομαι, προοδεύω. *They have made great progress with their language studies this year.*

press (a) button – push a part of a machine to cause something to happen: πατάω (ένα) κουμπί. *To start the machine, press this button.*

plug (something) in – connect a piece of equipment to an electricity supply: βάζω (κάτι) στην πρίζα. *The TV must be plugged in if you want it to work.*

out-of-order – not working: εκτός λειτουργίας. *We could not use the lift as it was out-of-order.*

artificial intelligence – technology which uses programmes to copy human mental processes: τεχνητή νοημοσύνη. *Artificial intelligence is used in the field of robotics.*

keep up with – continue to read and learn: παρακολουθώ, συμβαδίζω. *Many older people find it difficult to keep up with all the technological changes which have occurred in recent times.*

controversial issue – a subject people disagree about: επίμαχο θέμα. *Cloning is a controversial issue.*

power cut – loss of electricity: διακοπή ρεύματος. *A power cut for a few hours in winter means that it will be extremely cold indoors.*

cut off – stop something completely: διακόπτω, κόβω. *Our phone was cut off because we didn't pay our bill on time.*

PHRASAL VERBS

break into – enter a building by force: παραβιάζω (κτήριο). *A thief broke into Robert's flat and stole his TV.*

break down – 1. stop working: χαλάω (για μηχανές). *My washing machine broke down so I couldn't wash the clothes.* 2. start crying: βάζω τα κλάματα. *She broke down when her dog died.*

break up – 1. end a relationship: χαλάω μια σχέση. *Tom has just broken up with his girlfriend.* 2. end a meeting or other event: διακόπτω. *The party broke up after midnight.*

break out – start suddenly: ξεσπώ. *A fire broke out in the kitchen.*

UNIT 28 Health and Fitness

TEST YOURSELF

HEALTH

ache (n) a dull pain: πόνος. *After cleaning all day, I have an ache in my back.*

anaesthetic (n) a substance which causes you not to feel pain: αναισθητικό. *Before an operation, patients are given an anaesthetic.*

bleed (v) lose blood: αιμορραγώ. *If you cut yourself, you will bleed.*

clinic (n) a place where medical services are given: κλινική. *Six doctors work at the clinic near our office.*

consult (v) ask for information or advice from someone: συμβουλευόμαι. *If you don't feel well, you should consult a doctor.*

cough (n) a medical condition that causes you to make a noise from your throat or chest: βήχας. *His cough got better after he took medicine.*

cough (v) push air out of your throat with a noise: βήχω. *I couldn't sleep – I was coughing all night.*

cure (n) medicine or treatment that makes someone healthy: θεραπεία. *Doctors are making great progress in finding cures for most diseases.*

cure (v) heal: θεραπεύω. *It is wonderful that the doctors were able to cure that sick child.*

disease (n) a serious illness with specific symptoms: ασθένεια. *Cancer is a curable disease today.*

drug (n) a chemical substance used to treat disease: φάρμακο. *People who have cancer have to take many drugs as part of their treatment.*

epidemic (n) the rapid spread of a disease affecting many people: επιδημία. *There was an influenza epidemic in 1918.*

faint (adj) feeling dizzy or weak: αδύναμος, εξασθενημένος. *The old lady was feeling faint so we helped her sit down.*

faint (v) become unconscious suddenly: λιποθυμώ. *She fainted when she heard the bad news.*

fatal (adj) resulting in death: μοιραίος, θανατηφόρος. *During the earthquake, a number of people had fatal heart attacks.*

infectious (adj) able to be transmitted from one person to another: λοιμώδης, μεταδοτικός. *If one person in the office has an infectious illness, everyone else will probably catch it.*

injection (n) the process of putting a substance such as a drug into the body by using a needle: ένεση. *Many people are scared of having injections. (AmE: shot)*

operation (n) a surgical procedure on a part of the body: εγχείρηση. *My aunt had an operation on her nose to make it smaller.*

pain (n) a feeling of discomfort after being ill or injured: πόνος. *I felt a sharp pain in my back when I picked up the heavy suitcase.*

patient (n) a person receiving medical treatment: ασθενής. *The doctor examined the patient.*

prescribe (v) say what medicine or treatment a sick person should have: συνταγογραφώ. *The doctor prescribed antibiotics and several days of bed rest.*

recover (v) get better after an illness: αναρρώνω. *A child is usually able to recover quickly after being ill.*

sprain (v) injure by suddenly twisting: στραμπουλώ, εξάρθρωνώ. *If you jump from a high place, you may sprain your ankle.*

surgeon (n) a doctor who specialises in operations: χειρουργός. *My doctor said I needed an operation so he sent me to a surgeon.*

treatment (n) a course of medical action: θεραπευτική αγωγή. *If you follow the treatment the doctor has advised, your arm should feel much better.*

vaccination (n) a substance given, usually by injection, to prevent illness: εμβολιασμός. *The baby received a vaccination against chickenpox.*

virus (n) a very small living thing that causes illnesses: ιός. *Several people at work are out ill with a stomach virus.*

X-ray (n) a kind of photograph made with radiation which looks inside things: ακτινογραφία. *The X-ray showed that he had broken his leg.*

X-ray (v) take a picture using X-rays: βγάζω ακτινογραφία. *All the suitcases were X-rayed before they were put on the plane.*

FITNESS

aerobics (n) exercises which increase the oxygen level in your body: αεροβική γυμναστική. *We needed to improve our health so we started doing aerobics.*

bodybuilding (n) weightlifting and training to build larger muscles: άσκηση για την ανάπτυξη μυώδους σώματος. *He was very thin, so he decided to take up bodybuilding.*

coach (n) someone whose job is to teach people how to improve at a sport or school subject: προπονητής. *Our basketball team has a new coach.*

coach (v) teach someone to do something well, e.g., in a sport: προπονώ. *Their father has coached them to be world-class tennis players.*

energetic (adj) having a lot of energy: ενεργητικός, δραστήριος. *She runs three kilometres every day – she's the most energetic person I know.*

equipment (n) things used for a particular purpose: εξοπλισμός. *Jogging is a cheap sport because there's no equipment.*

exercise bike (n) a bicycle which stays in the same place: ποδήλατο γυμναστικής. *I watch TV while I ride my exercise bike.*

fit (adj) in good health: υγιής, σε φόρμα. *Exercise is the only way to stay fit.*

gym (n) gymnasium, a place in which to exercise using equipment: γυμναστήριο. *He used to go to the gym every night, but now he goes once a week.*

health club (n) a place for health activities: ινστιτούτο υγείας. *Our health club has a pool, a spa, a sauna and even a small café.*

instructor (n) a sports teacher: εκπαιδευτής (αθλημάτων). *The instructor taught the girls how to play volleyball.*

jogging (n) slow and regular running: τζόκινγκ. *I go jogging at weekends – it's good for my health.*

muscle (n) a part of the body which is used for movement: μύς. *Jogging strengthens your leg muscles.*

regime (n) a system: πρόγραμμα, σύστημα. *Athletes follow a strict training regime before competitions.*

stamina (n) the ability to continue working or exercising without tiring: αντοχή. *I was amazed by his stamina. He ran for an hour and then swam 10 kilometres!*

strenuous (adj) requiring great effort and energy: επίπονος, σκληρός. *The exercise programme was so strenuous that we were exhausted.*

tracksuit (n) loose-fitting trousers and top for use during exercise: φόρμα γυμναστικής. *The most comfortable thing to wear for training is a tracksuit.*

trainer (n) a person who supervises the physical exercise of others: προπονητής. *His personal trainer helps him exercise regularly and properly.*

vigorous (adj) energetic and strong: έντονος, δυνατός. *Our coach believes in a vigorous exercise routine.*

weightlifting (n) the sport of lifting heavy weights: άρση βαρών. *Many people enjoyed watching the weightlifting events during the Olympic Games.*

well equipped (adj) having a broad range of equipment: καλά εξοπλισμένος. *The gym we train at is very well equipped.*

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

PHRASAL VERBS

come across – find accidentally: βρίσκω, συναντώ τυχαία. *I was looking for my school reports when I came across an old photograph.*

come down with – become sick: αρρωσταίνω από. *Last week he came down with a stomach virus.*

come out – make public: εκδίδομαι, αποκαλύπτομαι δημόσια. *The company's annual report will come out next month.*

come round – 1. visit: επισκέπτομαι. *My parents asked me to come round this weekend.* 2. finally agree: συμφωνώ. *After a long discussion, my father finally came round and let me use the car.*

come to – add up to a total: ανέρχομαι σε (ποσό). *The cost of the car will come to £28,000, including extras.*

come up against – meet a difficulty: συναντώ δυσκολία. *They hadn't come up against that sort of problem before.*

come over – visit somebody: επισκέπτομαι. *Would you like to come over after the film?*

come up – be discussed: παρουσιάζομαι, προκύπτω. *If the topic of politics happens to come up, change the subject quickly!*

USEFUL COLLOCATIONS AND EXPRESSIONS

have a (high) temperature – feel hot and feverish: έχω (υψηλό) πυρετό. *If you have a high temperature, medication can lower it.*

heavy smoker – a person who smokes a lot of cigarettes: κάποιος που καπνίζει πολύ. *He developed lung cancer because he had been a heavy smoker.*

out of breath – finding it difficult to breathe: λαχανιασμένος. *After walking up six flights of stairs, she was out of breath.*

get fit – become physically stronger: αποκτώ καλή φυσική κατάσταση. *If he wants to play with the team this season, he will need to get fit.*

do (someone) good – be beneficial for someone: κάνω καλό (σε κάποιον). *If you feel sad, a long walk in the fresh air will do you good.*

do exercise – exercise often: κάνω γυμναστική. *My gym teacher is really fit because she does a lot of exercise.*

strict diet – limited food intake: αυστηρή διαίτα. *He is following a strict diet in order to lose weight.*

sore throat – a throat which hurts: ερεθισμένος λαιμός. *Ouch! I have a sore throat – every time I swallow, it hurts.*

feel dizzy – feel as if you are losing your balance: ζαλιζομαι. *She felt dizzy and had to sit down for a few minutes.*

make an appointment – arrange a time to see a professional person: κλείνω ραντεβού. *I made an appointment to speak with my lawyer.*

get better – recover: αναρρώνω. *We hope you will get better quickly after the operation.*

EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

recipe (n): συνταγή (μαγειρικής). *Could you please give me your recipe for chocolate cake?*

prescription (n): συνταγή (γιατρού). *The doctor gave him a prescription for antibiotics.*

reason (n): λόγος. *The reason I am smiling is because it's my birthday.*

cause (n): αιτία. *What was the cause of their disagreement?*

exercise (n): άσκηση. *You should get more exercise instead of sitting in front of the computer all day.*

gymnastics (n): γυμναστική. *In order to excel in gymnastics, you have to be strong and practise hours every day.*

(be) concerned about: νοιάζομαι για. *Your parents are concerned about your future happiness.*

(be) concerned with: ασχολούμαι με. *The book is concerned with the importance of nutrition.*

lay (v): βάζω, τοποθετώ. *Could you please lay these clothes on the chair in the corner?*

lie (v): ξαπλώνω. *It is not good to lie down immediately after eating.*

sick (adj): άρρωστος, αδιάθετος. *She stayed home from school today because she is sick.*

ill (adj): άρρωστος, ασθενής. *He has been ill for a long time.*

breathe (v): αναπνέω. *He finds it hard to breathe because he is a heavy smoker.*

breath (n): αναπνοή. *He took a huge breath before he swam underwater.*

remember (v): θυμάμαι. *I don't remember where I put my sunglasses.*

remind (v): υπενθυμίζω. *Every day she has to remind him to take his lunch with him.*

leg (n): πόδι. *If you have a broken leg, it is impossible to walk on it.*

foot (n): πόδι (κάτω από τον αστράγαλο). *He hurt his left foot when he kicked the ball.*

put on (phr v): παίρνω (βάρος). *I've put on five kilos since I began working at the bakery.*

take on (phr v): αναλαμβάνω. *I will take on your work while you are away.*

weight (n): βάρος. *I have started a diet because I want to lose some weight.*

kilo (n): κιλό. *How many kilos does a baby elephant weigh?*

Irregular Verbs

BARE INFINITIVE	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was / were	been
bear	bore	borne
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed

BARE INFINITIVE	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbad(e)	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung / hanged	hung / hanged
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
learn	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lie	lied	lied
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost

BARE INFINITIVE	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
smell	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow	sowed	sown
speak	spoke	spoken
speed	sped	sped

BARE INFINITIVE	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
spell	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spin	spun	spun
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spoil	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
strike	struck	struck
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
write	wrote	written

British and American English

BRITISH ENGLISH	AMERICAN ENGLISH
aerial	antenna
angry	mad
autumn	fall, autumn
barrister, solicitor	attorney, lawyer
biscuit	cookie
break (school)	recess
caravan	trailer
caretaker	janitor, custodian
car park	parking lot
chemist	drugstore, pharmacy
chips	French fries
city centre	downtown
clever	smart
consultant	specialist
cooker	stove
cookery	cooking
crisps	(potato) chips
crossroads	intersection
cupboard	closet
cutlery	silverware
dialling code (telephone)	area code
draw (in a game)	tie
dustbin, rubbish bin	garbage can, trash can
engaged (phone)	busy
estate agent	realtor
film	movie, film
flat	apartment
fortnight, two weeks	two weeks
garden	yard
handbag	pocketbook, purse
headmaster / mistress	principal
holiday(s)	vacation
injection, jab	shot
interval	intermission
jumper	sweater
lift	elevator
mad	crazy
main road, motorway	highway, freeway
mark	grade
mean (opposite of generous)	stingy
nappy	diaper
nasty	mean
nought	zero
pavement	sidewalk
pedestrian precinct	pedestrian mall
petrol	gas(oline)
post	mail

BRITISH ENGLISH	AMERICAN ENGLISH
postal code	zip code
primary school	elementary school
public toilet	restroom
queue	line
railway	railroad
return (journey / ticket)	round trip
rise (in salary)	raise
rubber	eraser
rubbish	garbage, trash
secondary school	high school
shop	store, shop
shop assistant	sales clerk
single (ticket)	one-way (ticket)
smart	fashionable
staff	faculty
state school	public school
sweets	candy
tap	faucet, tap
tell the time	tell time
tin	can
torch	flashlight
trousers	pants, trousers, slacks
underground	subway
van, lorry	truck

Spelling

BRITISH ENGLISH	AMERICAN ENGLISH
aeroplane	airplane
catalogue, dialogue	catalog, dialog
centre, theatre	center, theater
cheque	check
colour, humour	color, humor
counsellor	counselor
encyclopaedia	encyclopedia
jewellery	jewelry
licence, offence	license, offense
practise (v)	practice (v)
programme	program
pyjamas	pajamas
travelling, modelling	traveling, modeling

Prefixes and Suffixes

TIP! Try to learn words within word families.

Noun: action / activity / actor
Verb: act

Adjective: active / inactive
Adverb: actively / inactively

PREFIXES

A prefix is a group of letters added to the beginning of a word which changes the meaning of that word. Some common prefixes and their meanings are:

anti-	against: antisocial, antifreeze, antiseptic
auto-	of / by oneself: autobiography, autograph
bi-	twice / two: bilingual, biannual, biennial, bilateral
dis-	gives an adjective or verb a negative or opposite meaning: dishonest, disloyal, disappear, disqualify
ex-	out of / former: ex-wife, exclude
il-	before a word beginning with -l; usually gives an adjective a negative or opposite meaning: illegal, illiterate, illogical
im-	before a word beginning with -m or -p; usually gives an adjective a negative or opposite meaning: immature, immoral, immortal, impatient, impossible, improbable
in-	usually gives an adjective a negative or opposite meaning: independent, inconvenient, inedible, inability
inter-	between: international, intercontinental, intermarry
ir-	before a word beginning with -r; usually gives an adjective a negative or opposite meaning: irregular, irresponsible, irreversible
mal-	bad / wrong: malnutrition, malfunction, malpractice
micro-	small: microscope, microwave, microchip
mis-	bad / wrong: mislead, misinformation, misunderstand
multi-	many: multinational, multicoloured, multilingual
out-	1. outside: outdoors 2. be bigger / better than: outnumber, outdo, outgrow
over-	too much: oversleep, overeat, overreact
post-	after: postscript, postgraduate, postdated
pre-	before: premature, prehistoric
pro-	in favour of: pro-British, pro-democracy
re-	back / again: replace, reappear
semi-	half: semi-final, semi-circular, semi-detached
sub-	under: submarine, subway, subterranean
un-	gives an adjective or verb a negative or opposite meaning: unpopular, uncomfortable, unpack
under-	not enough: underpaid, undernourished, underfed
uni-	the same: uniform, unisex, unilateral

Note: The prefixes *dis-*, *il-*, *im-*, *in-*, *ir-*, *mal-*, *mis-* and *un-* give a negative or opposite meaning.

SUFFIXES

A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word which is often a different part of speech. Some common suffixes are:

-able	forms an adjective: understandable, recognisable, affordable, fashionable
-al	1. forms a noun: arrival, survival, refusal 2. forms an adjective: verbal, magical, topical
-ance	forms a noun: performance, entrance
-ee	person affected by an action: employee, refugee
-ence	forms a noun: confidence, difference, conference
-er / -or	person or thing which carries out an action: performer, employer, user, photocopier, actor, inventor
-ful	forms an adjective: hopeful, careful, useful
-hood	forms an abstract noun: fatherhood, childhood
-ible	forms an adjective: flexible, comprehensible, edible
-ify	forms a verb: classify, terrify, identify
-ise (-ize)	forms a verb: modernise, legalise, commercialise, computerize, criticise
-ism	forms a noun: socialism, Buddhism, patriotism, heroism, nationalism
-ist	person who does a specific activity: journalist, chemist, motorist, pianist, violinist
-ity	forms a noun: humidity, popularity
-ive	forms an adjective: active, creative, explosive
-less	forms a negative adjective: hopeless, careless, useless, harmless
-ment	forms a noun: development, employment
-ness	forms a noun: happiness, thoughtfulness
-ous	forms an adjective: poisonous, dangerous, furious
-ship	forms an abstract noun: friendship, membership
-(s)ion	forms a noun: confession, possession
-tion	forms a noun: prediction, pollution, competition

Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

able to	at the concert	convinced of	full of
absent from	at the corner of	(a) course on	get rid of
absorbed in	at the end of	(a) cure for	good at
account for	at the front of	cure someone of	good for (you)
accuse someone of	at the last minute	date from	grumble at
accustomed to	at the moment	deal in / with	guilty of
across the road	at the party	delay in	hard up
addicted to	at the same time	delighted with	harmful to
advise about	at the scene of	depend on	have in common
afraid of	at the side of the road	develop into	have the right to
after dinner	at the start of	die of	hear about / of
against the law	at the time	different from / to	hope for
agree to / with	at the top of	difficulty in	identical to
aim at	at the weekend(s)	disagree with	impressed by / with
allergic to	at university	disappointed in / with	in 1963
all over the world	at work	discourage from	in a bad mood
amount to	attached to	disgusted by	in a day
an alternative to	attracted to	disqualify from	in addition (to)
angry with	bad at (maths)	dissatisfied with	in advance
apologise for	bad for (you)	divide into	in a few years
apply for	believe in	dream of	in a good mood
approve of	benefit from	dressed in	in a minute
argue about / against / for	blame for	effect on	in an hour
arrest for	borrow from	encourage someone to	in any case
arrive at / in	by 7.30	enthusiastic about	in a straight line
ashamed of	by bus / car / taxi, etc.	entitled to	in a year's time
ask for	by chance	envious of	in bad condition
associated with	by cheque / credit card	escape from	in captivity
astonished at	by law	excited about	in case
at 10 o'clock	by lunchtime	expel from	in cash
at a desk	by myself	experience of	in charge of
at a price	by now	experiment on	in comparison to
at a reasonable price	by phone	exposed to	in conclusion
at bedtime	by post	faced with	in contrast to
at both ends	by profession	familiar with	in court
at Christmas	by then	famous for	in danger of
at college	by the sea	fascinated by	in debt
at ease	by the time	fluent in	in detail
at fault	capable of	fond of	in diameter
at first	care about	for €2, etc.	in existence
at home	care for	for a change	in fact
at last	cater for	for a long time / while	in fashion
at least	come down	for enjoyment	in favour of
at lunchtime	compared to	for example	in front (of)
at night	compensate for	for instance	in general
at present	complain about / of	for sale	in good condition
at school	concentrate on	for the better	in good shape
at the age of	confess to	for this reason	in heavy traffic
at the airport	congratulate on	forgive (someone) for	in his / her late / early 20s
at the back of	connected to	from morning to night	in hospital
at the beginning (of)	considerate of	from place to place	in instalments
at the bus stop	consist of	from then on	in love

in March, etc.	interested in	on the island	rise in
in my free time	involved in	on the left / right	run the risk of
in need of	jealous of	on the one hand	satisfied with
in operation	join in	on the other hand	search for
in order that / to	(just) in time	on the other side	sentence someone to
in prison	keen on	on the radio	serve as
in Roman times	know about	on the tip of my tongue	shocked by
in season	lacking in	on the way	shortage of
in short	laugh at	on time	speak about something
in / into space	lead to	on trial	speak to someone
in spite of	leave for	on TV	spend time / money on
in the 1990s	listen to	opportunity to	steal from
in the 21st century	look out of	opposition to	stop someone from
in the afternoon	made of	out of breath	stop work on
in the back row	made up of	out of doors	succeed in
in the beginning	make an impression on	out of fashion	suffer from
in the business	make fun of	out of order	suitable for
in the centre of	name after	out of season	sure of / about
in the corner	no point in	out of stock	surprised at / by
in the country	of all ages	out of the window	suspect someone of
in the countryside	of all times	out of tune	suspicious of
in the distance	(off) by heart	out of work	take advantage of
in the end	off school	over the years	take back
in the evening	off work	participate in	take care of
in the first place	on account of	part with	take part in
in the fresh air	on a diet	patient with	talk about / on
in the front row	on 12th April / Monday, etc.	pay attention to	test for
in the future	on arrival	pay for	thanks to
in the house	on a tour / trip / journey	play a part in	think about
in the media	on Christmas Day	play a trick on	think of
in the middle of	on condition that	pleased with	(be) thoughtful of
in the mirror	on display	point to / at	tired of
in the morning	on earth	popular with	translate into
in the news	on foot	prepared to	tremble with
in the open air	on his own	pressed for (time)	under pressure
in the past	on holiday	prevent from	until / till 10.30
in the process of	on land	protect from	wait for
in the sales	on location	protest against	way of (doing)
in the shade	on my birthday	proud of	without any problem
in the way	on sale	provide with	without doubt
in those days	on stage	punish someone for	work for
in trouble	on strike	read about	worry about
in use	on the beach	ready to	write about
incapable of	on the coast	recover from	
include in	on the contrary	refer to	
influence on	on the corner of	rely on	
information about	on the edge	reputation for	
inform on	on the first floor	research into / on	
innocent of	on the floor	responsible for	
insist on	on the ground	result in	
intention of	on the increase	retire from	

REVISED **Mastering Use of English – B2 Exams Edition** has been updated to reflect the latest changes in B2-level exams. This book contains:

- 28 alternating grammar and vocabulary units featuring a wide range of B2-level practice exercises and exam strategy tips
- a comprehensive grammar syllabus covering structures tested in B2 exams
- vocabulary topics appropriate for B2-level exams
- an opening diagnostic test page in each unit
- detailed grammar rules and a *Common Mistakes* feature
- reviews after every two units including exercises in B2-exam formats
- a glossary with easily confused words, useful collocations and phrasal verbs presented by unit
- appendices: irregular verbs, comparison of British and American English, prefixes and suffixes, and prepositions and prepositional phrases

The **Teacher's Edition** contains overprinted answers, photocopiable progress tests and review tests in B2-exam formats.

Other titles available in the Burlington Mastering series

REVISED Towards Mastering Use of English

REVISED Mastering Use of English for FCE

Mastering Reading

Mastering Writing

Mastering Speaking and Listening

REVISED Mastering the FCE Examination

Mastering the State Exam (КПГ) – B2 Level

Mastering the Edexcel – Level 3

~~€ 30.00~~
€ 29.10

B Burlington Books

ISBN 978-9963-47-891-0



9 789963 478910